

©

A

HANDBOOK FOR TRAVELLERS

IN

NEW ZEALAND.

AUCKLAND, THE HOT LAKE DISTRICT, NAPIER, WANGANUI,
WELLINGTON, NELSON, THE BULLER, THE WEST COAST ROAD,
CHRISTCHURCH, MOUNT COOK, DUNEDIN, OTAGO,
THE SOUTHERN LAKES, THE SOUNDS, ETC.

BY

F. W. PENNEFATHER, LL.D.

WITH NUMEROUS MAPS AND PLANS.

LONDON:

JOHN MURRAY, ALBEMARLE STREET.

1893.

1.3245



Geog 1828.1



Duplicate map

P R E F A C E.

A FEW years ago, tourists were almost unknown in New Zealand. This is now changed; every summer brings many travellers in search of health and pleasure both from Europe and Australia; and as the beauty and interest of the country becomes more widely known, a steady increase in their numbers may be expected. It seems therefore that the time has come when a guide to New Zealand should be added to Mr. Murray's list.

There are, however, special difficulties in compiling a Handbook to New Zealand. It is a country of great variety, both in natural features and history. To describe it fully, and to enumerate all the possible excursions which a traveller might wish to make, would require many volumes. The aim of the present work is merely to select the best routes, and those which possess the greatest attractions for tourists, to point out how they can most conveniently be followed by those who have a limited time at their disposal, and to draw attention to the various objects of interest which may be seen on the way. For this purpose, a brief account of the geology, botany, and history of the country has been included in the Introduction. Following on the Introduction are the most popular Routes, in detail, with a selection of some which, though even more beautiful, are less accessible. It must be remembered that the country is constantly changing; new Routes are being opened, new beauties

discovered, new settlements formed. Maps and guide-books become out of date more rapidly than in an older country.

In the Hot Lake district, the activity of certain geysers so frequently varies that travellers should make enquiries on arrival at each spot.

On the other hand, the amount of information that has already been collected about New Zealand by scientific and literary men is enormous. English travellers will probably be astonished to find the care and ability which have been expended in geological, zoological, and botanical research; and not only the colony as a whole, but almost every separate district, has found its historian.

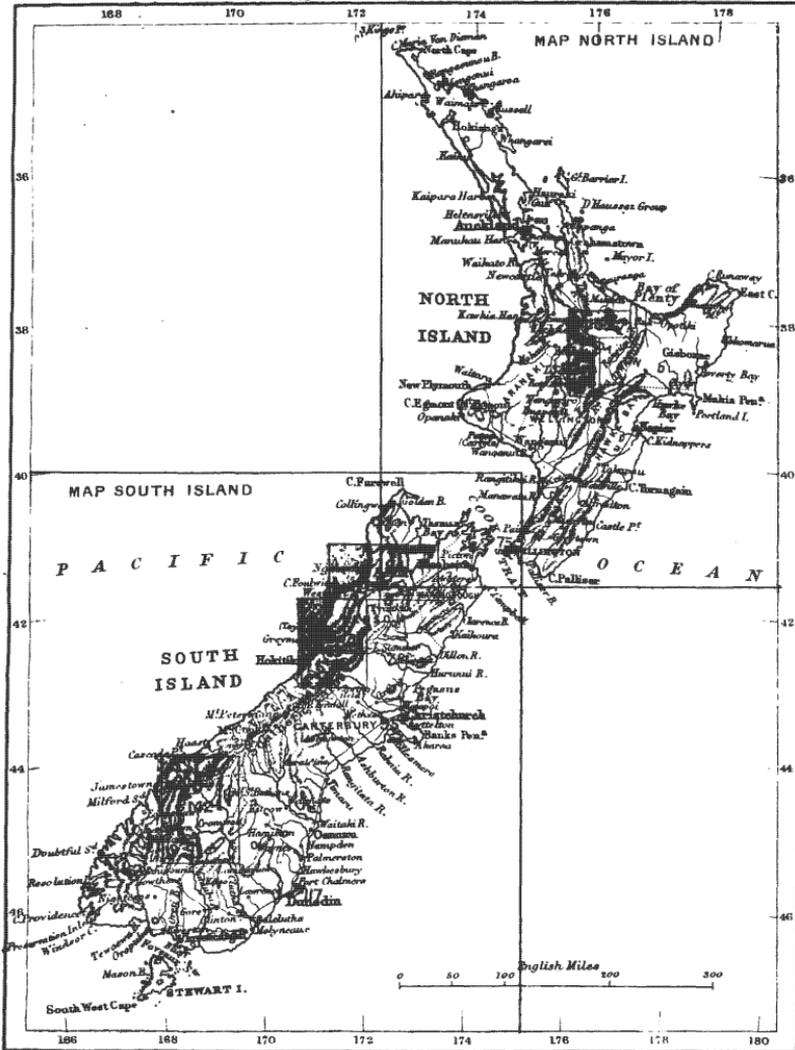
In order to make the book still more complete, a section has been added to the Introduction relating to the climate, the best season of the year for travelling in the Colony, and the best means of reaching it; and this is accompanied by some useful information regarding the steamship lines between England and New Zealand, supplied by Mr. Philip Menzell.

The editor takes this opportunity of expressing his sincere thanks to the many friends in all parts of the Colony who have kindly allowed him to make use of their labours. Amongst these must be mentioned especially Sir G. Grey, K.C.B.; Sir J. Hector, K.C.M.G.; the Hon. C. C. Bowen; Dr. Hocken; Mr. Percy Smith; Mr. F. Chapman; and Mr. H. Brett.

As it is inevitable that inaccuracies and omissions must occur in the first edition of a volume like the present, it is earnestly hoped that all travellers who make use of the guidebook will kindly send a note of any errors which they may discover to Mr. Murray, 50 Albemarle Street, London, W.

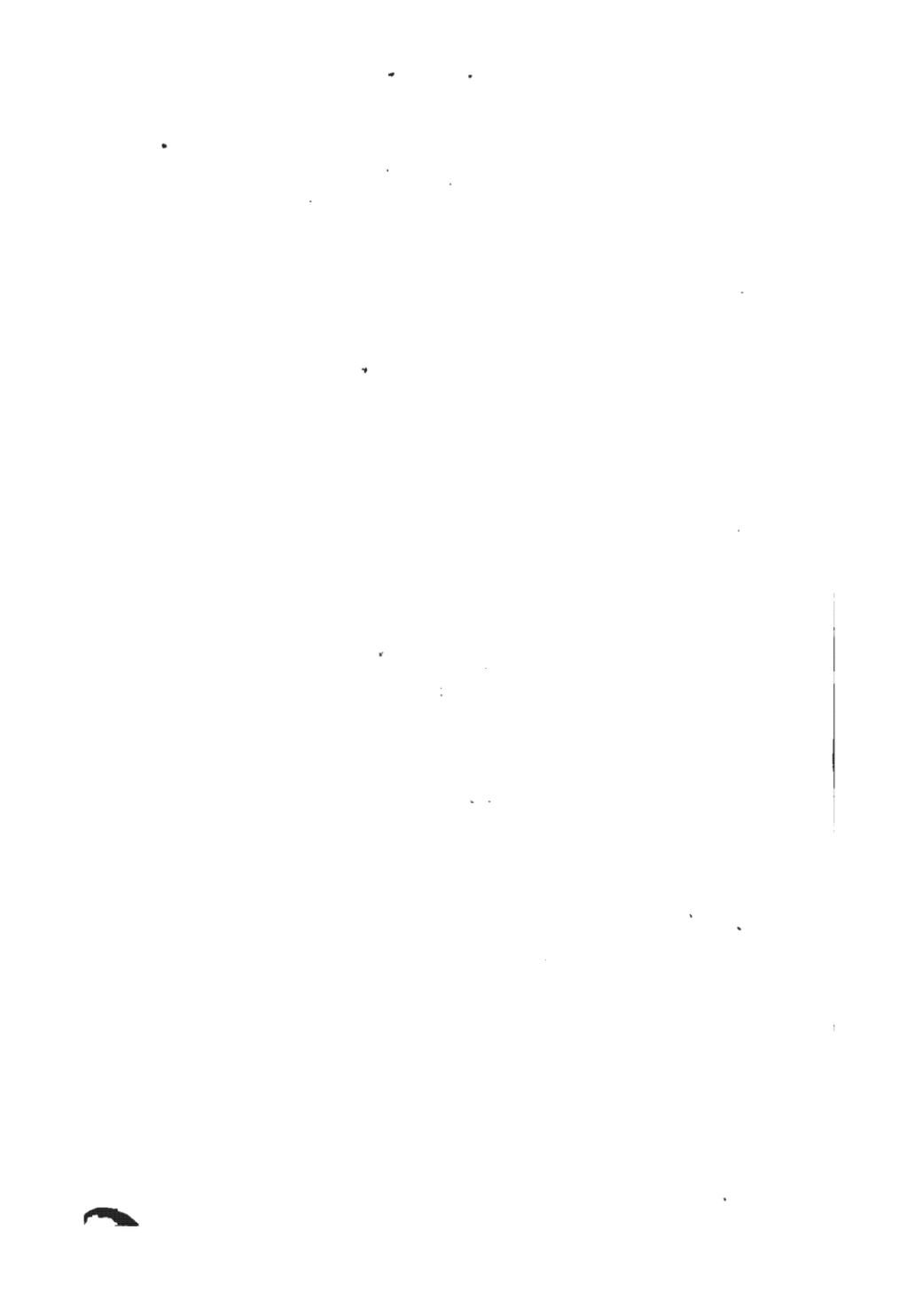
INDEX MAP

SHOWING THE SECTION MAPS IN THE GUIDE
 The figures (p15) indicate the pages where they are to be found.



J. Bartholomew, Edin.

London, John Murray, Albemarle Street.



CONTENTS.



INTRODUCTION [i]

ROUTES.

*. The names of places are printed in **thick type** only in those routes where the *places* are described.

NORTH ISLAND.

ROUTE	PAGE	ROUTE	PAGE
1 Auckland and Neighbourhood	1	9 Napier by Woodville and Masterton to Wellington	44
2 The Far North; Auckland to Whangarei, The Bay of Islands, Hokianga, and Kaipara	6	10 Taupo to Wanganui	48
3 Auckland to Rotorua	10	11 Auckland by Frankton and Te Kuiti to Wanganui	53
4 Rotorua and Neighbourhood	15	12 Auckland to New Plymouth	56
5 Rotorua to Taupo	28	13 New Plymouth to Wanganui	67
6 Taupo to Napier	36	14 Wanganui and Neighbourhood	70
7 Tauranga to Gisborne and Napier by land	38	15 Wanganui to Wellington	72
8 Napier and Neighbourhood	42	16 Wellington and Neighbourhood	75

SOUTH ISLAND.

17 Wellington to Picton, Blenheim and Nelson	78	22 Christchurch and Neighbourhood	95
18 Nelson and Neighbourhood	81	23 Christchurch to Dunedin	104
19 Nelson to Westport, Grey-mouth and Hokitika	84	24 Timaru by Tekapo and Pukaki to The Hermitage (Mount Cook); and thence by Pukaki, Omarama and Kurow to Oamaru	110
20 Hokitika, by Kumara, the Otira Gorge and Springfield to Christchurch	89	25 Dunedin and Neighbourhood	117
21 Blenheim by Kaikoura, Waiau and Culverden to Christchurch	92	26 Dunedin by Balclutha and Gore to Invercargill	124

ROUTE	PAGE	ROUTE	PAGE
27 Dunedin by Lawrence and Clyde to Lakes Wanaka and Wakatipu	127	80 Invercargill and Neigh- hood	138
28 The Hermitage (Mount Cook) to Lakes Pukaki, Wanaka, Hawea and Wakatipu	128	81 Invercargill to Lake Wakatipu	142
29 Hokitika by the Haast Pass to Lake Wanaka	131	82 Lumsden to Lakes Te Anau and Manapouri	148
		83 The West Coast Sounds	153
INDEX			159

LIST OF MAPS AND PLANS.

General Map of the North Island	<i>at the beginning</i>
Index Map showing the position of plans, the limits of sectional maps, giving references to the pages at which they occur in the book, and to the Routes or pages where districts are described	<i>to face p. vi</i>
Map—Mercator's Projection showing SS. routes from England	,, ,, [2]
,, New Zealand and part of Australia, showing the Union SS. routes	,, ,, [5]
Geological Map of New Zealand	,, ,, [20]
Plan of Auckland	,, ,, 2
Map of Rotorua, Tarawera, &c.	,, ,, 22
,, Rotomahana	,, ,, 26
,, Wairakei, Taupo, &c.	,, ,, 36
Plan of Wellington (city)	,, ,, 75
,, ,, and suburbs	,, ,, 78
Map of Nelson, Westport, and intervening country	,, ,, 86
,, Greymouth and West coast road	,, ,, 90
Plan of Christchurch	,, ,, 100
Panorama of the Mountains from Burke's Pass	<i>page 113</i>
Plan of Dunedin	<i>to face p. 120.</i>
Map of the Otago Lakes	,, ,, 128.
,, the South Island and Stewart Island	<i>at the end</i>

INTRODUCTION.

	Page		Page
SECTION I.		SECTION II. (continued)	
Routes to N. Z.	[1]	Animal Life	[44]
Time for travel and routes through the Colony	[6]	SECTION III.	
Coach Services	[8]	The Native Race	[46]
Outfit and expenses	[11]	SECTION IV.	
Objects of travel	[11]	Abstract of N. Z. history	[54]
SECTION II.		SECTION V.	
General description of N. Z.	[12]	Government, Population, Re- ligion, and Education	[58]
Geology	[15]	Industries of the Colony	[60]
Mineral Waters	[21]	Literature	[63]
Vegetation	[28]		

SECTION I.

ROUTES FROM ENGLAND TO NEW ZEALAND.

There are three principal routes from England to N. Z.

1. BY AMERICA. Passengers by this route embark at Liverpool, Queenstown or Southampton, and cross to New York by one of the Atlantic lines; thence go by rail to San Francisco.

From San Francisco there are steamers every four weeks to Sydney, touching at Honolulu and Auckland. From San Francisco to Honolulu is 2,100 m.; and from Honolulu to Auckland, 3,810 m. From San Francisco to Auckland takes about 19 days. The fares to Auckland are as follows:—

From London, £64 8s. to £67 8s. (according to choice of steam line to New York); Steerage, £30 18s. 9d.

From San Francisco, £40; Steerage, £20.

From Honolulu, £30; Steerage, £15.

This route, though somewhat more expensive than the direct sea route, is convenient for tourists who intend to visit America and the Sandwich Islands en route.

In former times the journey between San Francisco and N. Z. was performed by old American paddle-wheel steamers, passengers often having to tranship at Honolulu. After various temporary contracts, all more or less unfortunate, the N. Z. Government succeeded in making

* [New Zealand.]

a satisfactory arrangement with the Union Steamship Company of N. Z. Since 1886 this has been the only route subsidized by the N. Z. Government for postal purposes. The Union SS. Co. have made a sub-arrangement with Messrs. Spreckels, the American shipowners. The vessels now in use are the *Monowai* (belonging to the Union Co.), and the *Alameda* and the *Mariposa* (belonging to Messrs. Spreckels); they all exceed 3,000 tons.

It is possible also to go by the Canadian Pacific Railway from Montreal to Vancouver in 6½ days; and to proceed thence by the N. Z. and Australian SS. Co.'s line; but as their vessels do not call at Auckland, passengers have either to change at Honolulu or go on to Brisbane and Sydney; and to go from Honolulu or Sydney in one of the Union SS. Co.'s steamers. The vessels of the N. Z. and Australian SS. Co. now in use are the *Warrimoo* and the *Miwera* (each 5,000 tons); they leave Vancouver monthly, and average 15 knots across the Pacific, reaching Sydney in about 20 days.

2. BY THE SUEZ CANAL AND AUSTRALIA. (Persons intending to go to N. Z. viâ Australia should be careful to book in London for some port in N. Z., as in that case there is no extra charge for the ticket from Australia to N. Z.)

The route viâ Suez and Australia is an interesting one, the monotony of being long out of sight of land being avoided, whilst the drawback is that in the summer months the heat of the S. end of the Red Sea is somewhat trying. Passengers wishing to avoid the Bay of Biscay can send their luggage by sea from London and proceed themselves overland across Europe and join the steamer at Brindisi or Naples.

The voyage from London to Adelaide takes about 38 to 40 days; and that from Brindisi or Naples about 29 to 30 days. At Adelaide travellers can, if they prefer it, land, and proceed by rail to Melbourne or Sydney.

The principal lines of steamers to Australia are the Peninsular and Oriental, the Orient (both carrying English Mails), and the Messageries Maritimes.

(1) The vessels of the **P. and O. Company** start from London fortnightly on Friday, and call at Gibraltar, Malta, Brindisi, Port Said, Aden, Colombo, Albany, Melbourne and Sydney.

The P. and O. Co. run the *Australia* (6,901 tons); *Oceana* (6,362 tons); *Britannia* (6,257 tons); *Massilia* (4,918 tons); *Parramatta* (4,771 tons) and *Ballarat* (4,748 tons).

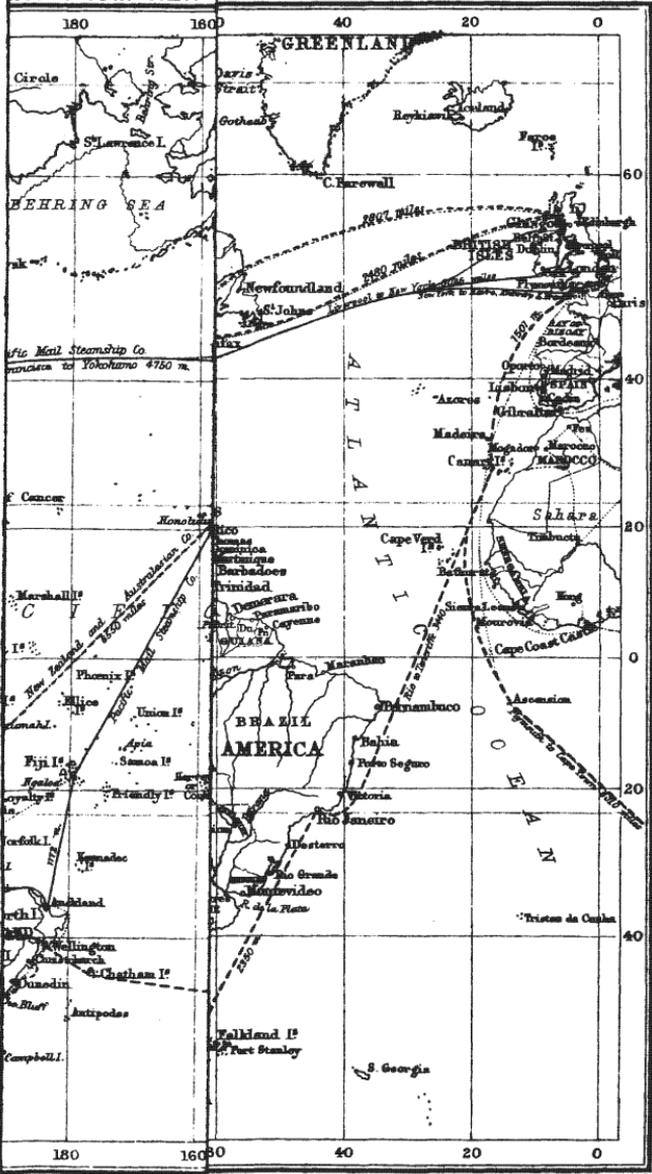
Fares from London:—1st Saloon, £63 to £73; 2nd Saloon, £37 to £42.

Return Tickets: 1st Saloon, £105 (available for nine months), and £115 (available for twelve months); 2nd Saloon, £65 (available for twelve months).

(2) The vessels of the **Orient Line** also leave London fortnightly; thus alternating with those of the P. and O. Company. They touch at Plymouth, Gibraltar, Naples (where overland passengers are embarked), Port Said, Suez, Colombo, Albany, Adelaide, Melbourne and Sydney.

The Orient Co. run the *Ophir* (twin screw, 6,910 tons), *Orizaba*

ND FROM NEW



ey, Albemarle Street.

J. Bartholomew, Edin.



(6,077 tons), *Oroya* (6,057 tons), *Ormuz* (6,031 tons), *Oruba* (5,552 tons), *Oratava* (5,552 tons), *Austral* (5,524 tons), and *Orient* (5,365 tons).

Fares from London:—1st Class, £63 to £73; 2nd Class, £37 to £42; 3rd Class, £17 17s. to £22.

Return: 1st Class, £105 (available for nine months); £115 (available for twelve months): 2nd Class, £65 (available for twelve months).

Round-the-world tickets outward by the Suez Canal and home by San Francisco and vice versa are also granted.

(3) The vessels of the **Messageries Maritimes Cie.** leave Marseilles on the 1st or 3rd of each month. Luggage can be sent from London by sea.

These steamers call at Mahé (Seychelles), Albany, Adelaide, Melbourne, Sydney and Nouméa.

The M. M. Cie. run the *Armand Behic*, *Australien*, *Polynésien*, and *Ville de la Ciotat*, all of 6,500 tons, in this service.

Fares from Marseilles to Sydney: 1st Class £65, 2nd Class £40, 3rd Class £20.

Return: 1st Class £105, 2nd Class £64, 3rd Class £34.

There are also several other lines, English and German.

3. BY THE CAPE OF GOOD HOPE AND HOBART, RETURNING BY CAPE HORN AND RIO.—This (which is commonly spoken of as the 'Direct' Route) is not so interesting as that by the Suez Canal; on the other hand, it does not necessitate transhipping, it avoids the Red Sea, and entails as little of the tropics as possible. The steamers start from London, and touch at Plymouth, where the mails are embarked. From thence it takes about five days to Teneriffe, where a halt of nearly a day is made. About a fortnight later the steamer reaches Cape Town, and here passengers usually have time to visit some of the vineyards. From Cape Town to Hobart (Tasmania) takes sixteen or seventeen days; after a short halt at Hobart the steamer proceeds across what is now called the 'Tasman Sea' to N. Z. in about four days.

On the homeward route, the voyage from N. Z. to Cape Horn takes about a fortnight. Vessels usually pass round the Horn, very few now going through the Straits of Magellan. Eight days from the Straits brings the steamer to the lovely harbour of Rio de Janeiro, where a halt of about twenty-four hours is made, which enables the passengers to visit the famous Botanical Gardens, and to ascend some of the mountains by rail. After leaving Rio, the steamer rounds Cape Frio, and makes a straight course thence for Teneriffe (which is reached in about twelve days), and so proceeds to Plymouth and London.

The outward voyage is 13,013 m. in length, and takes from forty-three to forty-five days; the homeward is 11,946 m., and takes from forty to forty-two days. Two companies take the direct route—the 'N. Z. Shipping Co.' and the 'Shaw Savill and Albion Co.'

The **N. Z. Shipping Co.** commenced with a fleet of iron sailing ships of about 1000 tons register; they were named after the N. Z. rivers—

e.g. the *Waikato*, *Hurunui*, &c. In 1882, however, the Company decided to inaugurate a direct steam service. They chartered two 3,000 ton Liverpool steamers belonging to the British line, the *British King* and the *British Queen*; these made the passage in forty-seven days. They next arranged with the owners of the White Star liners to place two of their vessels, the *Ionic* and the *Doric* (4,750 tons each), in the N.Z. trade under the N.Z. Shipping Co.'s flag. This having been successful, the company resolved in 1884 to have steamers specially built for them by Messrs. John Elder and Co.; these have been named after N.Z. mountains. Their present fleet consists of the *Ruahine* (6,127 tons), the *Kaikoura* (4,474), the *Rimutaka* (4,473), and the *Tongariro*, the *Aorangi* and the *Ruapehu* (each 4,163); besides three cargo vessels, the *Waikato* (4,766 tons), the *Tekoa* and the *Otarama* (about 4,000). The vessels designed for carrying passengers are all constructed on the most approved principles of the day, and are fitted up with every luxury. The *Ruahine* is rigged as a brig, and has her first saloon amid-ships; the others are barque-rigged, with the first saloon aft and the second amid-ships. All can when required attain a speed of 15 knots; the *Rimutaka* on one occasion landed her mails in 39 days and 3 hours, including stoppages, but not calling at Hobart, her average speed being $13\frac{1}{2}$ knots for the entire passage.

The vessels of the N. Z. Shipping Co. leave London every fourth Thursday and Plymouth two days later.

Fares from London to N. Z. ports: 1st Saloon, 60 to 70 guineas; 2nd Saloon, 35 to 40 guineas; 3rd Class, 16 to 20 guineas.

Return Tickets are issued on the following terms:—1st Saloon £105, if the return is completed within nine months from departure, and £115 if completed within twelve months; 2nd Saloon £65; 3rd Class £31, £35, and £39, according to berthing; Return to be completed within twelve months. Passengers who have paid the full fares to or from the Colony, and return by the Line of Steamers within six months of landing, will be allowed a reduction of 20 per cent. off their fare, or 10 per cent. if they re-embark not more than twelve months after arrival. These abatements must be claimed at the time of re-booking.

The Shaw Savill firm (now the **Shaw Savill and Albion Company**) has been engaged in the N. Z. trade since 1858, and has for a long time possessed a magnificent fleet of sailing vessels, but did not inaugurate a steam service until 1883. As soon, however, as the contract between the N. Z. Shipping Co. and the owners of the White Star liners terminated, the Shaw Savill and Albion Co. chartered the *Doric* and the *Ionic* to run under their flag. Since that they have also chartered a third vessel, the *Coptic* (4,448 tons), belonging to the same line, and have had two vessels, each of over 5,000 tons, built for them by Messrs. Denny, Bros. of Dumbarton; these have been named the *Arawa* and the *Tainui*, after two of the canoes in which the Maoris went from Hawaiki to N. Z. The model of the *Arawa*, shown at the Inventions Exhibition of 1885, gained the gold medal as the best of the year; she was the first ocean steamer to work with a pressure of 160 lbs. to the sq. inch, her engines being on

—

—

N. Z. UNION STEAMSH

150



150

Copyright

J. Bartholomew, Edin.

the triple expansion system, then in its infancy. The *Arawa* left England on her first voyage in 1884, and made the outward trip to N. Z. in 38 days 30 min., and the homeward in 35 days 3½ hrs.; thus going round the world in 73 days 4 hrs.; in 1889 she made the homeward voyage in 34 days 23 hrs. steaming. The *Tainui* is identical with the *Arawa* in almost every respect. All the steamers owned or chartered by the Shaw Savill and Albion Co. have the first saloon amid-ships and the second saloon aft.

The vessels of the Shaw Savill and Albion Co. leave London every fourth Thursday, and alternate with the N. Z. Shipping Co.'s steamers to form a fortnightly service by the direct route.

Fares:—1st Saloon, £63 to £73 10s.; return £105 (available for nine months), £115 (available for twelve months).

2nd Saloon, £36 15s. to £42; return £65 (available for twelve months).

3rd Class and Steerage, £16 16s. to £21; return £31 to £39 (available for twelve months).

(Special arrangements are made in particular cases.)

STEAM COMMUNICATION BETWEEN AUSTRALIA AND N. Z. AND BETWEEN N. Z. PORTS.—This is chiefly in the hands of the Union S.S. Company. The rise and progress of the **Union Steamship Company** is an important chapter in the history of N. Z. They commenced as the owners of three harbour steamers at Dunedin. In 1874-5, they procured from Messrs. Denny of Dumbarton two steamers, the *Hawea* (800 tons) and the *Taupo* (737 tons). These, like all vessels since then built for the Company, are named after N. Z. lakes. The Company has gone on increasing the fleet steadily; they now possess 52 steamers in all, varying from the *Monowai* (3,433 tons) to the *Waihi* (92 tons). The *Tarawera* (2,003 tons) is the vessel usually selected for the excursions to the West Coast Sounds (see Rte. 33). Several of the vessels can attain a rate of 16 knots.

A traveller arriving at an Australian or N. Z. port should at once go to the office of the U. S.S. Co. and obtain a copy of their monthly guide, which contains their programme for the month and a timetable of the principal trains in N. Z. One of the U. S.S. Co.'s steamers leaves Sydney about once a week, and proceeds to Auckland (about five days) and then down the E. Coast, touching at Gisborne, Napier, Wellington, Lyttelton, Dunedin, and the Bluff; and thence going to Hobart (four days) and Melbourne. Another weekly steamer performs the same journey the opposite way. The Company have also a line of steamers plying between Onehunga, New Plymouth, Nelson, and Wellington, and back; and another plying about once a fortnight between Sydney and Wellington direct.

Besides these lines, communication between Auckland and the ports in the north of N. Z. is chiefly in the hands of the **Northern Steam Ship Co.**; and there are various steamers belonging to different owners plying between the smaller ports and on the lakes.

BEST SEASON FOR TRAVEL AND ROUTES THROUGH THE COLONY.

The summer—that is, between October and March—is the best time for touring in N. Z. It is in the early part of the summer when there is much snow on the mountains that the country looks most beautiful. On the other hand, those who wish to do much climbing had better wait until the snow has melted.

It is impossible to see anything of the two islands in less than two months; indeed, a very much longer time would be necessary to exhaust the beauties of N. Z. scenery. 'If one had a dozen summers to spend in New Zealand I believe they could all be passed in breaking new ground, and in the enjoyment of scenery of the most varied beauty' (W. S. Green).

Those who have less than two months at their disposal had better content themselves with seeing one island only. Persons who wish to avoid the severity of an English winter can best do so by leaving England early in September, and arriving at Hobart in the middle of October. A pleasant detour may be made by landing at Hobart, proceeding by rail to Launceston, and crossing thence to Melbourne. After spending the first week of November at Melbourne, so as to see the Races (the great annual gathering of Victoria), the traveller can proceed by rail to Sydney, spend the second week of November there, and then go on by the Union SS. Co.'s steamer to Auckland.

The route through N.Z. may be from N. to S. or vice versa. The former is preferable, especially if the tour is made at the beginning of the summer, for the climate of the North Island is warmer and earlier than that of the South.

Travelling through the country is performed partly by rail (of which there are now upwards of 2,000 miles open) and partly by coach (for the list of Coach Services see p. [8]). Nearly all the railways belong to the Government. The usual charges are as follows:—

M.	1st Cl.	2nd Cl.	1st Ret.	2nd Ret.
10	2/1	1/5	2/9	1/11
50	10/5	7/-	13/11	9/4
100	20/10	13/11	27/9	18/7
200	41/8	27/10	55/7	37/1

Season ticket for the whole Colony for six weeks, £8.

Trains are not remarkable for speed; few exceed twenty miles an hour; the ordinary rate is about fifteen. Private vehicles (generally 'buggies') may be hired; and should the tourist extend his travels into the less frequented parts of the country, it will be necessary to go on horseback. All travellers are recommended on landing to consult Messrs. Thomas Cook and Son's agents, who are to be found in every town and who will readily make every possible arrangement. In this way much trouble and some expense may be avoided. The N.Z. Railway guide, which is issued monthly by the Government, contains full information as to trains, coaches and steamers.

Supposing the traveller to land at Auckland he may commence by the tour through the far north; but this must be omitted if he is going to devote only a month to the N. island. Leaving Auckland

he will proceed to Rotorua; thence to Taupo. On leaving Taupo he must choose between the Wanganui and the Napier routes; the former is more beautiful and interesting, but at the same time more tiring and expensive. The other routes—viz. that by Te Kuiti and the King country; and that by New Plymouth—are only recommended to those who have already seen the Hot Lakes district. In any case the tour of the N. island ends at Wellington.

Travellers who land at Wellington should go to Auckland by one route and return by the other; for instance they may go by Wanganui and New Plymouth, and return by Rotorua, Taupo, Napier and Masterton; thus seeing much of the country and never retracing their steps.

Leaving Wellington at the end of the year, the traveller should go to Nelson either altogether by steamer or by coach from Picton; thence by the Gorge of the Buller to Greymouth on the W. Coast, and over the mountains to Christchurch; the E. Coast route via Kaikoura is less beautiful; and to go from Wellington to Lyttelton by sea is a mistake for any traveller who has the opportunity of seeing the W. Coast.

From Christchurch the traveller goes S. by train as far as Timaru. After leaving Timaru, he must be entirely guided by the amount of time at his disposal, and his peculiar tastes. If he has at least five weeks left, and wishes to see as much as possible of the works of God and man, he can go by Fairlie and Pukaki to the Hermitage; thence by Pukaki, Omarama, Kurow and Oamaru to Dunedin; thence by Lawrence, Roxborough and Cromwell to Lakes Wanaka and Hawea; thence to Queenstown, for the excursion to the head of Lake Wakatipu and back; thence by Kingston and Lumsden to Lakes Manapouri and Te Anau; thence return to Lumsden, and down to Invercargill. If he has only three or four weeks, he must decide whether he will sacrifice cities and settled districts, or some of the mountains and lakes. If the former, he will proceed as above as far as Omarama, but thence go direct to Lake Wanaka, omitting Dunedin. If the latter, he may follow the first route as far as Cromwell and go thence to Queenstown, omitting Wanaka, and Hawea; also (if necessary) omitting Manapouri and Te Anau. If his time is still shorter he can follow the first route as far as Dunedin; thence go by rail via Gore and Lumsden to Kingston; by steamer to the head of Lake Wakatipu and back, and thence rail down to Invercargill. As the route is thus intricate and the time uncertain (the days on which the coaches run being occasionally altered) all travellers should discuss the matter fully with Cook's agent before leaving Christchurch.

One important consideration in fixing the time will be the date of the Union S.S. Co.'s excursion to The Sounds. All travellers should manage this, if possible; less adventurous tourists should take it as their final trip (as almost any scenery looks poor after Milford Sound); but those who are able to walk from the Sutherland Falls to Lake Te Anau should conclude their Sounds trip by leaving the steamer at Milford Sound and going thence by Te Anau and Manapouri to Lumsden.

A traveller who has but one month to spend in N.Z. and is determined to see as much as he can of all parts of the country (including the Hot Lakes, forest, lake and mountain scenery, and cities) regardless of fatigue, may adopt the following programme:—

At Auckland, 1 day. To Rotorua, 1 day; at Rotorua, 1 day. To Taupo, 1 day; at Taupo, 1 day. To Napier, 2 days; at Napier, 1 day. To Wellington, 1 day; at Wellington, 1 day. To Nelson, 2 days. To Kumara, the Otira Gorge and Christchurch, 6 days; at Christchurch, 1 day. To the Hermitage (Mt. Cook) and back to Timaru, 5 days. To Dunedin, 1 day; at Dunedin, 1 day. To Wakatipu, 1 day; at Wakatipu, 2 days. To Invercargill, 1 day. Total, 30 days.

This is the programme now followed by many tourists; but it is making a toil of a pleasure. The reader, by consulting the various Routes given in this volume, will find out the additional time which should be given to each, and must decide for himself what part of the trip to omit.

After the tour is completed, the traveller will make his way to the port whence the direct steamer starts for London; and will thus reach England about the end of March or early in April.

COACH SERVICES IN NEW ZEALAND.

[NOTE.—As these occasionally change, travellers should make inquiries on arriving in the Colony.]

AUCKLAND AND HAWKE'S BAY PROVINCIAL DISTRICTS.

ROUTE.		COACH DEPARTS.	COACH RETURNS.	MILES.	FARES.	
FROM	TO				S.	R.
Kawakawa . .	Hokianga . .	Tues. 11 am .	Thurs. 6 am .	38	20/	30/
Kawakawa . .	Whangarei . .	Sun. 9 am . .	Sat. 8.30 am .	36	15/	20/
Te Aroha . .	Thames . . .	Mon. Thurs. 6 am ; Tues. Wed. Fri. Sat. 7.30 am	Daily, 7.30 am	36	12/	20/
Oxford . . .	Ohinemutu . .	Tues. Thurs. 7.30am; Sat. 7.20 am, 2pm	Mon. 8.30 am ; 12.30 pm ; Wed. Fri. 12.30 pm	35	20/	30/
Ohinemutu . .	Tauranga . .	Tues. Sat. 7 am	Tues. Sat. . .	40	25/	40/
Ohinemutu . .	Taupo . . .	Wed. 7 am .	Thurs. 7 am .	56	30/	50/
Taupo . . .	Napier . . .	Thurs. 7 am .	Mon. 6.30 am .	98	50/	90/

TARANAKI AND WELLINGTON PROVINCIAL DISTRICTS.

New Plym'th	Opunaki . .	Mon. Wed. Fri. 9.30 am	Tues. Thurs. Sat. 9.30 am	38	10/	15/
Hawera . . .	Opunaki . .	Tues. Fri. noon; Mon. Wed. Thurs. Sat. 2 pm	Tues. Fri. 4.30 am; Mon. Wed. Thurs. Sat. 8 am	28	10/	17/6

COACH SERVICES.

[9]

TARANAKI AND WELLINGTON PROVINCIAL DISTRICTS (continued).

ROUTE		COACH DEPARTS.	COACH RETURNS.	MILES.	FARES.	
FROM	TO				S.	R.
Greatford	Bulls . . .	Daily, 8.27 am, 9.41 am, 1.5 pm, 3.15 pm, 7.21 pm	Daily, 7.45 am, 9 am, 12.30 pm, 2.40 pm, 6.30 pm.	4	1/6	3/
Kereru . .	Foxton . . .	Daily, 10.20 am	Daily, 6 am .	12	5/	8/6
Woodville .	Eketahuna .	Daily, 9.30 am	Daily, 1.15 pm	26	7/6	12/
Woodville .	Pahiatua . .	Daily, 1 pm, 4 pm	Daily, 8 am, 1.30 pm	10	3/0	5/
Woodville .	Kumeroa . .	Wed. Sat. 2.30 pm	Wed. Sat. 9 am	9	3/	5/
Eketahuna .	Pahiatua . .	Daily, 6 am .	Daily, 6 pm .	16	...	...
Masterton .	Castlepoint .	Tues. Fri. 7.30 am	Wed. Sat. 5.30 am	42	20/	30/
Martinboro'	Featherston .	Daily, 6.30 am	Daily, 10.35 am		2/6	5/

MARLBOROUGH, NELSON, CANTERBURY, AND WESTLAND PROVINCIAL DISTRICTS.

Blenheim .	Nelson . . .	Tues. Thurs. Sat. 7 am	Mon. Wed. Fri. 7 am	78	25/	40/
Blenheim .	Havelock . .	Ditto . . .	Ditto . . .	28	7/6	12/6
Blenheim .	Molesworth .	Wed. 11 am .	Mon.	71	20/	40/
Blenheim .	Kaikoura . .	Mon. 6 am .	Thurs. 6 am .	98	40/	60/
Belgrove .	Westport . .	Mon. Wed. Fri. 11.5 am	Mon. Wed. Fri. 7 am	108	60/	100/
Reefton . .	Westport . .	Daily, 7 am .	Daily, 7 am .	49	20/	...
Culverden .	Waiau . . .	Daily, 1 pm .	Daily, 11.45 am	16	5/	8/
Culverden .	Hammer Plains	Daily, 12.40 pm	Daily, 9 am .	24	7/6	14/
Culverden .	Kaikoura . .	Mon. 1 pm .	Thurs. 6 am .	65	25/	...
Springfield	Kumara, Hoki- tika	Tues. Fri. 12 noon	Tues. Fri. 6 am	100, 118	65/	100/
Springfield	Greymouth .	Ditto . . .	Ditto . . .	114	70/	110/
Springfield	Westport . .	Ditto . . .	Sun. Tues. Fri. 7 am	212	...	...
Glentunnel .	Windwhistle .	Fri. 11 am . .	Sat. 1 pm . .	14½	7/	12/
Glentunnel .	Lake Coleridge	Ditto	Sat. 9.30 am .	26	12/	20/
Little River .	Akaroa . . .	Mon. Wed. Sat. 11.30 am	Mon. Wed. Sat. 7.30 am	20	10/	15/
Rangitata .	Peel Forest .	Tues. Thurs. Sat. 1.35 pm	Tues. Thurs. Sat. 8.45 am	13	4/	11/
Orari . . .	Geraldine . .	Daily	Daily	5	1/6	2/6
Fairlie . .	Silverstream .	Tues. Sat. 5 am	Mon. Wed. . .	6	2/6	4/
Fairlie . .	Burke's Pass .	Ditto	Ditto	13	5/	9/
Fairlie . .	Tekapo . . .	Ditto	Ditto	26	10/	18/
Fairlie . .	Pukaki . . .	Ditto	Ditto	56	20/	35/
Pukaki . .	Pembroke . .	Fri. 7 am . .	Mon. 12.30 pm.	110	40/	75/
Fairlie . .	Mount Cook Hermitage	Tues. Sat. 5 am	Mon. Wed. 6 am	96	40/	70/

GENERAL INFORMATION.

OTAGO PROVINCIAL DISTRICT.

ROUTE.		COACH DEPARTS.	COACH RETURNS.	MILES.	FARES.	
FROM	TO				S.	R.
Kurow . .	Omarama . .	Mon. Fri. 9 am	Tues. Sat. 9 am	36	12/6	20/
Kurow . .	Ben Ohau . .	Thurs. 9 am . .	Fri. 9 am	54	17/6	30/
Palmerston .	Nenthorn . .	Mon. Wed. Fri. 11.15 am	Tues. Thurs. Sat. 12 noon	32	15/	30/
Palmerston .	Kyeburn . .	Mon. Fri. 8 am	Tues. Sat. 8.30 am	42	20	35/
Palmerston .	Naseby . . .	Ditto.	Tues. Sat. 7 am	54	25/	45/
Middlem'rch	Hyde	Mon. Wed. Fri. 11.15 am	Tues. Thurs. Sat. 11 am	20	10/	17/6
Middlem'rch	Kyeburn . .	Ditto.	Tues. Thurs. Sat. 9 am.	32	15/	27/6
Middlem'rch	Naseby . . .	Ditto.	Tues. Thurs. Sat. 7 am	44	20/	35/
Middlem'rch	Alexandra . .	Ditto.	Mon. Fri. 7 am	113	45/	85/
Middlem'rch	Clyde	Ditto.	Mon. Fri. 6 am	120	47/6	90/
Glenomaru	Catlin's River	Mon. 12.35 pm; Wed. Fri. 12.35 pm, 8.45 pm	Mon. 11 am; Wed. Fri. 11 am, 7 pm	9	2/6	5/
Lawrence . .	Roxburgh . .	Mon. Wed. Fri. 1 pm	Tues. Thurs. Sat. 8 am	40	12/6	20/
Lawrence . .	Alexandra . .	Ditto.	Mon. Wed. Fri. 3.15 pm	70	30/	55/
Lawrence . .	Clyde	Ditto.	Mon. Wed. Fri. 2.15 pm	75	32/6	60/
Lawrence . .	Cromwell . .	Ditto.	Mon. Wed. Fri. 12 noon	88	35/	65/
Lawrence . .	Arrowtown . .	Ditto.	Mon. Wed. Fri. 7 am	119	47/6	90/
Lawrence . .	Queenstown .	Ditto.	Mon. Wed. Fri. 5 am	131	50/	95/
Wyndham . .	Fortrose . .	Mon. Wed. Fri. 10.30 am	Tues. Thurs. Sat. 10 am	24	7/6	12/6
Wyndham . .	Edendale . .	Daily, 8.20 am, 12.5 pm, 2.10 pm, 4.10 pm	Daily, 9.10 am, 1.0 pm, 2.45 pm, 6 pm	4	1/6	2/6
Riversdale .	Waikaia . .	Mon. Wed. Fri. Sat. 3.20 pm; Tues. Thurs. 5.15 pm	Mon. Wed. Fri. Sat. 9.30 am; Tues. Thurs. 6.45 am	14	6/6	10/
Queenstown .	Pembroke . .	Sat. Tues. 8 am	Mon. Thurs. 8 am	42	20/	35/
Queenstown .	Arrowtown . .	Ditto.	Mon. 8 am . .	12	5/	...
Queenstown .	Cromwell . .	Mon. Wed. Fri. 5 am	Tues. Thurs. Sat. 12.30 pm	43	20/	35/
Arrowtown .	Queenstown .	Tues. Thurs. Sat. 5 pm; Mon. Thurs. 9 am	Mon. Wed. Fri. 10.30 pm	12	5/	10/
Pembroke . .	Cromwell . .	Mon. 5 am; Thurs. 10 am	Tues. Sat. 1 pm	37	15/	25/
Pembroke . .	Pukaki . . .	Mon. 12.30 pm	Fri. 7 am . .	110	40/	7/
Lumsden . .	Te Anau . . .	Tues. Sat. . . .	Mon. Thurs. . .	60	25/	40/

OUTFIT AND EXPENSES.

The only outfit required will be such clothing as would be worn in an English summer. All ordinary things can be purchased in any of the Colonial towns; the prices are however high in consequence of the enormous protective duties.

English money is of course in circulation, but a charge is made on cashing English banknotes. There are Banks in every village, at which circular notes may be cashed.

Letters of introduction to residents in the Colony are most valuable. A tour through N. Z. is not complete without seeing something of social life, especially in the country. Besides this, in every town there is a club, to which gentlemen travelling through the Colony can be introduced as honorary members. Living at a club is rather more expensive than at an hotel, but far preferable.

The general charge at an hotel in N. Z. is 10s. a day; 2s. 6d. for bed, breakfast, luncheon, or dinner. In some of the hotels in the larger towns the charge is 12s. a day, and in less frequented districts 8s. or even 6s. If the traveller stays more than one night, meals must be paid for, whether partaken of or not. The term 'hotel' is generally applied to any inn possessing a licence, irrespective of size; those which do not possess a licence being called 'accommodation houses.' Hotels are usually called by the name of the manager—e. g. *Jackson's*, *Coker's*—which is confusing on account of the frequent changes. Although there are but few hotels which can compare with those to be found in English or continental cities, it may safely be said that taking the Colony as a whole the hotel accommodation is quite equal to that of any European country. There are also many boarding and lodging houses.

As the wages in the Colony are very high, 'tipping' is not so universal as in Europe. It is much to be hoped that tourists will not extend this stupid and annoying custom.

The rate for coaches and guides differs in each district. Horses to hire are generally about 1cs. a day.

OBJECTS OF TRAVEL.

N. Z., as would be expected, possesses but little of interest in the way of architecture; but in its history and natural features—in geology, botany, ornithology, ethnology—there is enough to delight the most exacting of tourists. The scenery can only be compared to Switzerland, Norway, and Iceland put together; for the health-seeker no tour in the world can be more cordially recommended. Maori legends, tales of the old tribal raids, and incidents in the modern wars, to some extent supply the place of the historical associations of European

countries. No Englishman can fail to be interested in watching the progress and observing the institutions of this flourishing Colony; and the varied industries which have already sprung up will repay study.

Excellent trout fishing may be obtained, especially in the S. Island, from October to March; a licence costs £1. (For full information on this subject see '*Trout Fishing in N.Z.*' by Spackman.) In the autumn there is deer-stalking in the Wellington, Nelson and Otago districts, and some pheasant shooting in Auckland and Taranaki. Californian quail are to be found in fair quantities in the Wellington and Nelson districts; the shooting being during the months of May, June and July. A traveller who announces that he enjoys rabbit-shooting will probably receive many invitations to stations which are suffering from these pests. Enjoyable race meetings are held at all the principal towns during the summer; and should the tourist extend his visit to the winter, he will find several packs of harriers in different parts of the country. There is good sea-fishing, especially off the coast of the N. Island, all the year round.

The principal curios to be collected are:—Specimens of Maori work, including carvings in wood and greenstone, and mats woven in native flax (*Phormium tenax*); ornaments made of green-stone and of the beautiful amber-like kauri gum; inlaid wood-work; pressed ferns; and skins of native birds. These may be purchased in all the principal towns; but as a rule the Auckland shops are the best for the purpose.

SECTION II.

GENERAL DESCRIPTION OF NEW ZEALAND.

The Colony consists of two islands called the North and South Islands and a small island at the southern extremity called Stewart Island. The S. Island is officially termed the 'Middle Island,' but the more natural name is commonly used. There are also several small islets, such as the Kermadec, Chatham, and Auckland Isles, that are dependencies of the Colony. The entire group lies between 33° and 48° S. lat., and 166° and 179° E. long. The two principal islands, with Stewart Island, extend in length 1,100 m., but their breadth is extremely variable, ranging from 46 m. to 250 m., the average being

about 140 m., but no part is anywhere more distant than 75 m. from the coast.

	Sq. Miles.	Acres.
The total area of New Zealand is about	100,000	or 64,000,000
" " the N. Island being	44,000	" 28,160,000
" " " S. "	55,000	" 35,200,000
" " " Stewart "	1,000	" 640,000

It will thus be seen that the total area of N. Z. is somewhat less than that of Great Britain and Ireland. In shape, latitude and climate, it resembles Italy more than any other European country. The N. and S. Islands are separated by a strait only 13 m. across at the narrowest part, presenting a feature of the greatest importance from its facilitating intercommunication between the different coasts without the necessity of sailing round the extremities of the colony.

Both Islands are mountainous, with extensive plains, which in the S. Island lie principally on the E. side of the mountain range, while in the N. Island the most extensive lowlands lie on the W. side. In the N. Island the interior mountainous parts are covered with dense forest or low shrubby vegetation; while in the S. Island these parts are chiefly open and well grassed, and are used for pastoral purposes, the forest being chiefly on the broken ground to the W. of the mountains.

In the N. Island the mountains occupy one tenth of the surface, and do not exceed from 1,500 to 4,000 ft. in height, with the exception of a few volcanic mountains that are more lofty, one of which, Tongariro (6,500 ft.), is still occasionally active. Ruapehu (9,100 ft.) and Mount Egmont (8,300 ft.) are extinct volcanoes that reach above the limit of perpetual snow; the latter is surrounded by one of the most extensive and fertile districts in N. Z.

The mountain-range in the S. Island, known as the Southern Alps, is crossed at intervals by low passes, but its summits reach a height of from 10,000 to 12,000 ft., and it has extensive snowfields and glaciers. Flanking this mountain-range and occupying its greater valleys are extensive areas of arable land, which are successfully cultivated from the sea-level to an attitude of over 2,000 ft.

The Climate is more equable than that of Great Britain, the extremes of daily temperature only varying throughout the year by an average of 20°, whilst London is 7° colder than the N. and 4° colder than the S. Island. The mean annual temperature of the N. Island is 57° and of the S. Island 52°, that of London and New York being 51°. The mean annual temperature of the different seasons for the whole colony is, in spring 55°, in summer 63°, in autumn 57°, and in winter 48°.

To the N. of Auckland oranges grow splendidly; lemons ripen as far S. as Wellington. English fruits abound all over the S. Island.

COMPARATIVE TEMPERATURES OF NEW ZEALAND.

Stations.	S. Lat.		Long E. from Greenwich.	Number of years of Observation.	Years.	Winter.	Spring.	Summer.	Autumn.	Difference of the Coldest and Warmest Months.	Yearly Means.		Yearly Fluctuation.	
	°	'									°	'		Max.	Min.
<i>North Island.</i>														
Mongonui	35	1	173	28	10	59-90	53-06	58-28	66-56	61-52	15-12	89-10	31-82	57-28
Auckland	36	50	174	51	20	59-54	52-34	57-56	66-92	61-16	16-02	88-52	33-26	55-26
Taranaki	39	4	174	5	14	57-56	50-90	55-94	64-58	58-82	15-66	86-90	30-02	56-88
Napier	39	29	176	55	10	57-56	49-10	57-74	66-20	57-02	19-26	90-00	32-10	59-90
Wellington	41	16	174	47	14	55-58	48-74	54-50	62-24	56-66	14-76	78-44	32-18	46-26
Wanganui	39	56	175	6	3	55-90	48-71	53-31	63-31	57-12	16-70	86-00	29-00	55-00
<i>South Island.</i>														
Nelson	41	16	173	19	11	54-86	46-58	54-50	62-78	55-76	17-10	82-04	27-32	54-72
Hokitika	42	42	170	59	10	52-34	45-50	51-62	59-18	53-06	14-76	74-12	28-22	45-90
Bealey*	43	2	171	31	9	46-76	37-40	46-04	54-86	48-56	18-18	78-08	12-38	65-70
Christchurch	42	33	172	39	12	52-88	43-52	53-24	61-52	53-60	18-72	88-16	25-16	63-00
Dunedin†	45	52	170	31	17	50-72	43-52	50-54	57-20	51-80	15-30	84-74	29-84	54-90
Invercargill	46	17	168	20	14	50-36	42-26	51-26	58-10	50-00	16-92	83-84	20-12	63-72
Queenstown‡	45	2	165	39	3	51-01	40-01	50-92	64-02	52-31	21-25	84-60	23-21	61-39

* Height above sea, 2,104 ft. † Height above sea, 550 ft. ‡ Height above sea, 1,070 ft.

The climate on the W. coast of both Islands is more equable than on the E., the difference between the average summer and winter temperature being nearly 4 degrees greater on the S.E. portion of the N. Island and 7 degrees on that of the S. Island than on the N.W., on which the equatorial winds impinge. This constant wind is the most important feature in the meteorology of N. Z., and is rendered more striking by comparing the annual fluctuation of temperature on the opposite seaboard of the S. Island, which have a greater range of temperature by 18 degrees at Christchurch on the E. than at Hokitika on the W.

Mean Annual Rainfall.

N. Island.		S. Island.	
Auckland	45.306	Hokitika	112.156
Taranaki	58.084	Christchurch	25.774
Napier	37.260	Dunedin	32.019
Wellington	50.781	Southland	43.674

The observations that have been taken show that the northern part of N. Z. is within the influence of the subtropical winter rainfall, the probability of rainfall in winter in that part of the Colony being twice as large as in summer.

In the S., however, the rainfall, though irregular, is distributed more equally over the year. The chief difference to be observed is that on the W. coast spring rains prevail, and summer rains on the E. coast ;

while in the middle of the Colony the driest season is autumn, and in the S. it is the winter and spring.

The contrast between the rainfall on the E. and W. coasts, as with the temperature, is most striking. Thus, in the N. Island, Napier on the E. has only half the amount of rain that falls in Taranaki on the W. But the S. Island, with its longitudinal range of lofty mountains, exhibits this feature in a still more marked manner, for the rainfall on the W. is nearly five times greater than that on the E. The excess of precipitation on the coast is clearly illustrated by the distribution of the glaciers on the opposite side of the range. Those on the W. slope have an excessive supply of snow, and descend to a line where the mean annual temperature is 50° Fahr., while on the E. slope they descend only to the mean annual temperature of 37°. The winter snow-line on the Southern Alps on the E. side is 3,000 ft., and that on the W. side is 3,700 ft.

Very few of the rivers in the Colony are navigable; most of them, rushing down from the mountain sides, are subject to floods. The estimated discharge per minute of the Waikato is 839,168 cubic feet, and of the Clutha 1,088,736. In many places, especially on the Canterbury plains, the rivers have frequently shifted their courses, leaving dry beds of enormous width.

The prevailing winds are westerly, but they are much modified by the form of the land. When the centres pass to the N. of N. Z., the result is that N. E. winds impinge on the E. coast, bringing rain, followed by cold south-easters, with heavy storms of rain and snow during winter in the S.

The more common westerly winds begin in the NNW., with heavy rain on the W. coast, and gradually veer to S.W., when fair bright weather sets in on that coast; but the same southerly wind, sweeping along the E. side of the Islands, brings heavy strong weather, locally known as 'southerly bursters,' which, from the shape of the coast, reach the region of Cook Strait as S.E. storms. All the other winds are either land or sea draughts, with fine light weather, or are moderate winds produced by the circulation of the atmosphere round anticyclonic areas of high barometric pressure, that are far more persistent in their influence than the fast-moving cyclonic or low-pressure areas.

Thunderstorms are most frequent in the districts where the changes of wind are most suddenly felt, from the moist equatorial currents or the cold polar currents of the S.W. They are most frequent in spring on the W. coast, except in the extreme S.W. of Otago, where during winter thunderstorms are of almost daily occurrence.

GEOLOGY.

The Geological Survey of N. Z. has been carried out under the able direction of Sir James Hector, K.C.M.G., F.R.S.; but although it has been made with great care and skill, it must be recollected that it is necessarily not so minute as in better-known countries; Sir J. Hector

considers that in some respects the classification must be regarded as provisional.

The accompanying map gives a general idea of the structure of the Islands and the distribution of the chief groups of rock formation; but for further detail the traveller must consult the larger maps which are to be found in all public libraries in N. Z.

1 (a). **POST-TERTIARY (RECENT).**—The deposits belonging to this period have accumulated with greater rapidity in N. Z., owing to the mountainous character of the country giving to the rivers, even when of large size, the character of torrents, which are liable to occasional floods of extreme violence. To some extent, also, the remarkable indications of change which are everywhere manifest must be attributed to alterations of relative level which have affected the surface, some of which have occurred during the present century. Such changes are more easily detected on the sea-coast, where they effect sudden alterations of the shore-line, but there is no doubt that they have been equally potent in inland districts, and have caused, for instance, marked alterations in the courses of some of the rivers.

The Maori race is considered, from the evidence afforded by their traditions, to have been established in N. Z. for little more than five hundred years before the first arrival of Europeans; but during that period, while the Islands were being explored in all parts by this intelligent and adventurous native race, the spread of fires, causing the destruction of the primaeval forests and rank vegetation, was the means of setting free vast accumulations of loose soil and disintegrated rock that were formerly retained on the mountain-slopes. The material thus displaced has accumulated in the river-courses, causing them to raise their beds above the adjacent lands, so that they have broken away from their channels in many places.

The race of gigantic Moa birds (*Dinornis*) had its maximum development in the N. Z. area, and only became extinct during the recent period, but their extermination must have commenced at an earlier date than the first human occupation, as their bones are found deeply embedded in the gravels and swamps, while the evidences of human occupation are confined to the surface-soil, shelter-caves, and sand-dunes.

1 (b). **PLIOCENE.**—This formation belongs to a period when N. Z. was the mountain-range of a greatly-extended land-area, and when, in the North Island, the volcanic forces had their greatest activity, attended with the rapid elevation of local areas of fossiliferous deposits that were at this period forming in adjacent seas. In the South Island no marine deposits of importance belonging to this period are present, but the great area of land above the shore-line intensified the erosive action of the glaciers radiating from the mountain-centres, and gave rise to enormous deposits of gravel, such, for instance, as compose the greater part of the Canterbury Plains, and the Moutere Hills in Nelson.

The economic importance of this formation is very considerable, from its containing the richest deposits of alluvial gold that form the support of the mining population. The beds cover a considerable surface-area, both in the North and also in the South Island.

2 (a). UPPER MIOCENE.—The marine beds of this age consist of a series of sandy, calcareous, and argillaceous strata, the distribution of which, and as a rule also the mineral character, indicate that they were related to a closely adjacent shore-line, as they often pass, almost suddenly, from coarse conglomerates into narrow strips of fine mud and clay, such as are deposited in the centres of deep channels and inlets.

2 (b). LOWER MIOCENE.—This formation, which is distinguished from the foregoing chiefly by its fossils, is a calcareous and argillaceous formation, widely spread over the E. and central part of the North Island and both sides of the South Island, and, when not removed by denudation, can be traced to an altitude of 2,500 ft. above the sea. It represents a period of great depression, and the deposits are remarkable for the absence of evidence of volcanic activity in any part of the region, and for the abundance of marine life.

2 (c). UPPER EOCENE.—This is a very marked formation of calcareous sandstone, composed of shell fragments, with corals and Bryozoa, and is a shallow-water and littoral deposit.

Intense volcanic activity prevailed during this period in both Islands, and the calcareous strata are frequently interbedded with contemporaneous igneous rocks and tufas, and in the North Island are often replaced by wide-spread trachyte flows and volcanic breccias.

The lower part of this formation passes at places into an imperfect nummulitic limestone, or a friable calcareous sandstone, evidently deposited in shallow seas, and forming the lowest member of the proper marine Tertiary series.

3 (a). CRETACEO-TERTIARY.—This constitutes the Cretaceo-tertiary group, being stratigraphically associated and containing many fossils in common throughout, while at the same time, though none are existing species, many from even the lowest beds present a strong Tertiary facies, and in the upper part only a few are decidedly Secondary forms.

The distribution of this formation shows that it was not like the foregoing formations of later date, deposited in relation to a form of the land like that at present obtaining in the N. Z. area, except in the vicinity of some of the oldest and most lofty land-masses in the south, which appeared to have remained above the water-line since the Lower Cretaceous period.

The upper part of this formation is a deep-sea deposit, but the lower subdivisions indicate the close vicinity of land, and are replaced in some areas by true estuarine and fluvial beds containing coal.

The most valuable coal deposits of N. Z. occur in the Cretaceo-tertiary formation, but always at the base of the marine beds of the formation, in every locality where they occur. The coal-bearing beds always rest upon the basement rock of the district, marking a great unconformity and the closing of a long-persistent land-area at the period to which they belong.

3 (b). LOWER GREENSAND.—This formation consists of green and grey incoherent sandstones, with hard concretions, and large masses of silicified wood.

It is confined to a few localities of limited extent, is very rich in

fossils of the genera *Belemnites* and *Trigonia*, with a few Saurian bones and large Chimaeroid fishes.

4 (a). JURASSIC.—These beds, which are the youngest of the Lower Secondary formation in N. Z., consist in the upper part of estuarine beds, marine fossils being absent or rare.

Following these are marlstones, represented in southern districts by coarse-grained sandstones, which pass near the base of the formation into conglomerates with bands of indurated shale, enclosing plant-remains and irregular coal-seams, which have been included in the next group as its upper member.

They are all of marine origin, and contain Middle and Lower Oolite fossils.

4 (b). LIAS.—This formation consists in its upper part of conglomerates and sandy grits, with plant-remains too indistinct for identification; and in the lower of marly sandstones in banded layers of different colours, at the base having a concretionary structure, which has led to their being termed 'the cannon-ball sandstone:' similar sandstones also occur in the Otapiri formation.

4 (c). TRIAS.—It has been found necessary to include in this formation a thickness of strata which is quite unusual in other parts of the world; but the close connexion which exists throughout, founded on both palaeontological and stratigraphical grounds, and the clearly-defined Permian character of the next underlying formation, renders this classification absolutely necessary.

4 (d). PERMIAN.—The mineral character of this formation is grey and green sandstone with breccia and heavy conglomerate beds. Marine fossils have only been found at 1,000 ft. below the great conglomerate that divides its two sections.

5 (a). LOWER CARBONIFEROUS AND UPPER DEVONIAN.—This formation is of considerable importance from the large share it takes in the structure of the great mountain-ranges, and from the occasionally great development in it of contemporaneous igneous rocks, with which are associated metalliferous deposits. In the upper part this formation consists of fine-grained argillaceous slates (Maitai slates of Hochstetter), becoming calcareous and passing into true limestones at their base. These limestones, which close the Maitai series, contain Lower Carboniferous fossils.

Succeeding these is an enormous thickness of greenstone breccias, aphanite slates, and diorite sandstones, with great contemporaneous fïões and dykes of diorite, serpentine, syenite, and felsite belonging to the Upper Devonian period.

5 (b). LOWER DEVONIAN.—These, as determined by their fossil contents, have only been distinguished in one locality, viz., Reefton, although from their mineral character they are evidently present in many other parts of the South Island.

5 (c). UPPER SILURIAN.—Many areas of metamorphic schists should probably be included in this formation, but it has only been distinguished by its fossil contents in the north-west district of Nelson, where both Upper and Lower Silurian rocks are present.

The Upper Silurian rocks consist of grey cherts, sandstones, and calcareous slates, with occasional beds of blue limestone.

In the Baton River they contain a great variety of fossils in the calcareous strata, and not infrequently in the sandstones and cherts, of which thirteen species have been determined, besides which a great variety of corals and corallines occur; crinoids also are very abundant.

5 (d). LOWER SILURIAN.—These rocks form the mass of Mount Arthur and the range to the north-east as far as Separation Point, and they consist chiefly of a dark bituminous slate, associated with a blue or grey submetamorphic limestone, which is in places developed to a very large extent. White crystalline limestones are also associated with these beds throughout the whole length of the district from Mount Owen to Motueka.

The whole series is disturbed by eruptive hornblendic and syenitic rocks, which are probably of Devonian age.

Fossils have been found in two localities only, and these consist entirely of encrinite remains; one species of coral not yet determined, and Graptolites which occur in the slates.

The central axis of these beds consists of true mica-schists, to the east and west of which the limestone and bituminous slates overlie.

6. FOLIATED SCHISTS.—The metamorphic rocks under this division have as yet been only subdivided according to their mineral character; but they probably consist chiefly of altered Silurian rocks, and even those of formations as young as the Maitai or Lower Carboniferous beds. The less metamorphosed areas of Lower Palaeozoic rocks in the South of N. Z. have yielded no fossils. They were formerly classed as the Kaihiku series, but this name has latterly been transferred to the Permian formation of which the Kaihiku Range is more largely composed.

7. CRYSTALLINE SCHISTS AND GRANITE.—The south-western portion of the district of Otago is composed of crystalline rocks, forming lofty and rugged mountains, of which the chief characteristic is their cubical form, due to their being intersected in all directions by profound but narrow valleys, with abrupt precipitous sides to three-fourths of the extreme height of the adjacent mountains. The valleys are occupied on the west by arms of the sea, and on the east by those of inland lakes that resemble the Norwegian fiords, and present most wonderful mountain scenery.

The base rock of this formation is foliated and contorted gneiss corresponding to Humboldt's gneiss-granite of South America, and associated with it are granite, syenite, and diorite, which belong to the next group.

Wrapping round these crystalline strata, and sometimes rising to an altitude of 5,000 ft. on its surface, is a series of hornblende schists, soft micaceous and amphibolic gneiss, clay-slate, and quartzites, associated with felstone dykes, serpentine, and granular limestone. I believe these latter to be metamorphic rocks of not very ancient date, probably of Devonian age.

Areas within the crystalline schists where true granite occurs, either metamorphosed or in the form of perfect dykes, have been distinguished under this group.

Granites of a light-grey colour and very fine grain are found in the Nelson and Westland districts, forming isolated hills along the

boundary of the Foliated Schists on the east and Lower Devonian beds on the west. In the south-western extremity of N. Z., at Preservation Inlet, coarsely crystalline granites, of white and flesh-colour, appear to break through and overlie the younger members of the crystalline schists.

Igneous Rocks.

8. BASIC VOLCANIC, PLUTONIC, AND DYKE ROCKS.

9. ACIDIC VOLCANIC ROCKS.

Or, if grouped according to age, as in the geological sections,—

A. Volcanic group. Recent and Post-tertiary.

a. Basaltic.

b. Rhyolitic.

B. Trachytic group. Eocene.

a. Trachyte-porphyrries.

b. Trachyte-breccias.

C. Dolerite group. Upper Cretaceous.

a. Trachy-dolerites.

b. Anamesites.

D. Propylite group. Lower Cretaceous.

E. Diabase group. Triassic.

F. Diorite group. Lower Carboniferous.

The igneous rocks have played an important part in almost every formation in N. Z., marking great movements of the earth's crust at the different geological periods, while the superficial and later-formed volcanic rocks occupy nearly one-third of the area of the North Island.

They are divided on the map into the above groups, of which the plutonic and dyke rocks include syenite and diorite, with associated breccias, serpentine, and olivine rocks (dunite), the eruption of which took place in the Upper Devonian period.

These rocks are found on a line which extends almost continuously through the South Island; but diorite rocks reappear in the extreme north of Auckland, and on the Cape Colville Peninsula and Great Barrier Island. They are generally more or less metalliferous, chrome and copper being the ores of most frequent occurrence.

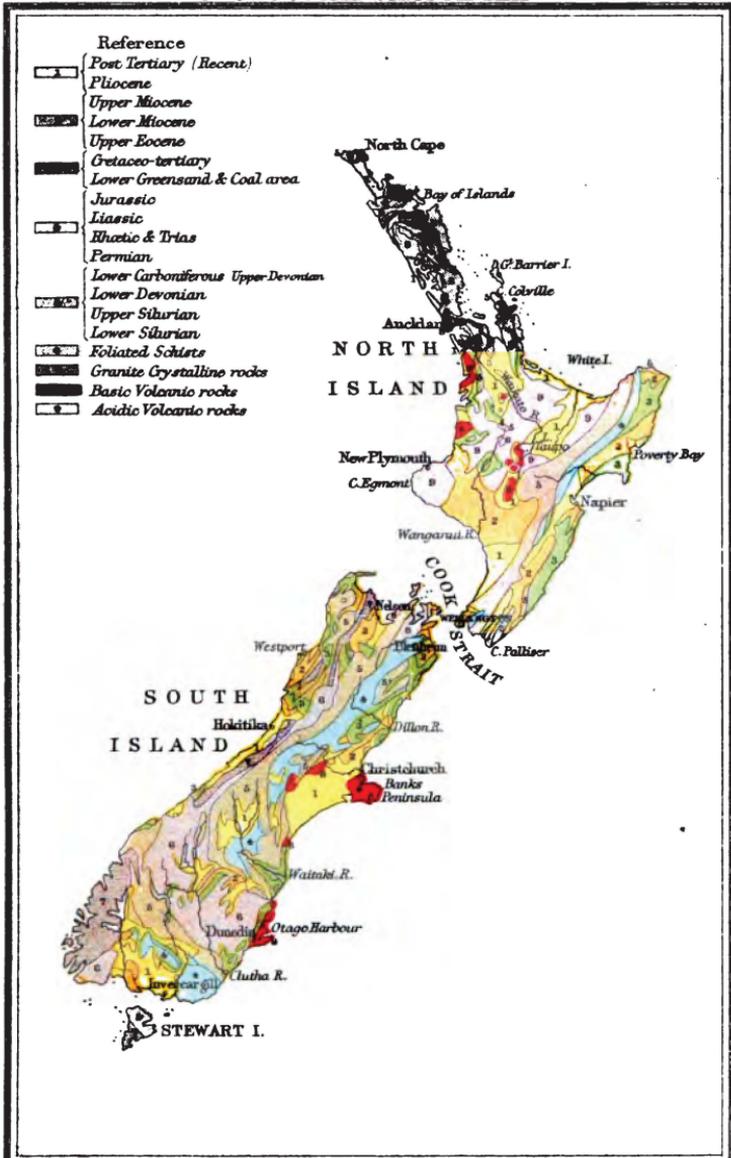
Basic Volcanic Rocks.—These belong to three different periods, when there were active eruptions, attended by the formation of fïões of both compact igneous rocks and tufaceous breccias.

The earliest of these occurred during the Triassic period, and consists chiefly of diabase and serpentinous breccias. The next eruptions took place about the close of the Jurassic period, along the eastern base of the Canterbury Alps, where the rocks occur in dome-shaped mountains as melaphyres associated with felsite (quartz) porphyries which belong to the next group.

In the Cretaceo-tertiary period are massive trappean eruptions of trachy-dolerite and dolerite, while in the same period must be placed the propylite group, consisting of greenstone-trachytes, and fine- and coarse-grained breccia rocks, which form the matrix of the auriferous reefs of the Thames goldfields.

In Eocene times dolerite fïões were contemporaneous with the limestones of the period of the Hutchinson's Quarry beds, while lastly

GEOLOGICAL SKETCH MAP



Copyright

London. John Murray, Albemarle Street.

J. Bartholomew, Edin.



in this group have been placed the basaltic lavas of Pliocene age in the northern parts of the colony, and also certain dykes of vesicular lava that cut through and alter the Upper Pliocene gold-drifts in the Maniototo Plain, in the interior of Otago.

Acidic Volcanic Rocks.—The rocks belonging to this group have a similar distribution in time to the foregoing, the earliest being the felsite (quartz) porphyries, while trachyte porphyries and breccias played an important part during Cretaceo-tertiary and older Tertiary periods, scoriaceous lavas and rhyolites being the characteristics of the later outbursts, which have continued down almost to the present time.

The geysers and boiling springs in the North Island give rise to the formation of siliceous sinter, which must be included as the most purely acidic products of volcanic action, and as due to the decomposition of the older rocks by the action upon them of fresh water; but in the case of White Island, and other localities where the decomposition is brought about by the agency of sea-water, the sinter deposits are formed chiefly of sulphate of lime, and not silica.

MINERAL WATERS.

PRINCIPAL MINERAL SPRINGS.

N. Z. is singularly rich in springs of water that hold mineral salts in solution, and some of these are already noted for their valuable medicinal properties.

Both hot and cold springs are found, the former being, with few exceptions, confined to the districts of the North Island where volcanic forces have been active during the latest Tertiary period, and are not yet altogether dormant. A few thermal springs are found to escape from the Upper Mesozoic rocks, in localities where the source of heat can only be attributed to chemical decomposition of bituminous matters and sulphides; and in a few instances warm waters spring from Palaeozoic rock-formations in the South Island. The cold mineral springs have a wider distribution, but have only as yet been examined from comparatively few localities.

The mineral waters of N. Z. are classified, from analyses that have been made in the Colonial Laboratory, under the following groups:—

Saline.—Containing chiefly chloride of sodium.

Alkaline.—Containing carbonates and bicarbonates of soda and potash.

Alkaline Siliceous.—Waters containing much silicic acid, but changing rapidly on exposure to the atmosphere, and becoming alkaline.

Hepatic or Sulphurous.—Waters the prominent character of which is the presence of sulphuretted hydrogen and sulphurous acid.

Acid Waters.—In which there is an excess of mineral acids, such as hydrochloric and sulphuric acid.

The following is a list of the best-known mineral springs, full details concerning which are to be found in the Official Laboratory Reports:—

No.	Name and Locality.	Temp. Fahr.	Grains per Pint.	Chemical Character of Water.
<i>Bay of Islands District.</i>				
1	Ohaeawai and Pakaraka	Deg. 60-116	16-8	Acid, aluminous; deposits mercury.
<i>Hawraiki District.</i>				
2	Waiwera	110	17-7	Alkaline, saline.
3	Puriri	60	67-1	Carbonated, alkaline.
<i>Bay of Plenty.</i>				
4	White Island Lake, Dry since 1886	97-212	1850-8	Strongly acid.
5	White Island Springs	210	26-1	"
<i>Rotomahana.</i>				
6	Pink Terrace Geyser } Destroyed	208	19-3	Sulphurous.
7	White Terrace Geyser } in 1886.	210	18-0	Alkaline.
<i>Whakarewarewa.</i>				
8	Turikore, or Spirit Bath	96-120	10-9	Sulphurous.
9	Koroteoteo, or Oil Bath	214	13-0	Caustic, alkaline.
10	Ngatarawa, Gas Pool	124	8-4	Sulphurous.
11	Papatangi, Lobster-pot	110	5-7	"
<i>Arikikapakapa.</i>				
12	Mud Bath	98	9-2	Saline, acidio.
13	Sulphur Pool	160	6-8	Acidic.
14	Sulphur Spring	73-98	10-0	"
15	Sulphur Stream	80	8-5	"
16	Mud Lake	65	6-8	"
<i>Rotorua.</i>				
17	Tapui te Koutou, Graham's Farm Bath	90-108	9-1	Alkaline.
18	Kuirau, Washing Spring	136-156	9-9	Alkaline, siliceous.
19	Waihunuhunukuri, Lake House Clear Bath	130-170	7-3	Alkaline.
20	Lake House Acid Bath	150	11-4	Acidic.
21	Waikite (a), Morrison's Hotel Bath	120	9-4	Alkaline.
22	Waikite (b), Scott's Bath	116	9-6	"
23	Hinemaru, Hughes's Baths	170	16-7	"
24	Te Kauwhanga (a), Cameron's Bath	115	10-1	Acidic.
25	Te Kauwhanga (b), Painkiller	204	13-8	Acidic and hepatic.
26	Perekari, Sulphur Point Boiling Pool	130-150	7-0	Acidic.
27	Mud Bath, Sulphur Point	120	7-8	Acidic and hepatic.
28	Hot Pool, Sulphur Point	200	12-1	Acid.
29	Whangapipiro, Madame Rachel's Bath	170-210	14-7	Alkaline and siliceous.
30	Otamawhata	144	11-4	Alkaline.
31	Hospital Lake	66	11-3	Acidic.
32	Te Pupunitanga, Priest's Bath	94-110	12-1	"
<i>Rototiti.</i>				
33	Te Kute, mud lake at Thitari	100-212	6-1	Acidic, hepatic.
34	Te Mimi, hot waterfall, from 33° C.	90-112	3-8	Acidic.

No.	Name and Locality.	Temp. Fahr.	Grains per Pint.	Chemical Character of Water.
<i>Tauapo District.</i>				
35	Rotokawa, Black Water	Deg. 192	17.8	Acidic.
36	" Yellow Water	152	22.0	"
37	Wairakei, Piroiroiri, or White Water	112	1.8	Alkaline.
38	Ruahine, Crow's Nest	180	19.2	"
39	" Witches' Cauldron	192	20.8	"
40	" Ohinekahoro	195	23.0	"
41	" spring on flat near track	132	2.2	Feebly saline.
42	Otumahike, Acacia	136	3.9	Feebly alkaline.
43	Lofley's Gully, McPherson's	96	1.9	"
44	" cold stream	76	1.3	"
45	" warm stream	114	2.8	"
46	" Sumach	106	3.0	"
47	" Source No. 1	106	3.0	Alkaline, siliceous.
48	" Source No. 2	136	19.0	Alkaline, saline.
49	" Kokowai	104	2.0	Feebly saline.
50	Waipahihi, A.C. Bath No. 1	110	4.7	Chlorinated saline.
51	" " No. 2	146	5.7	Saline.
52	" Tea-tree Spring	170	13.4	Alkaline, siliceous.
53	" Source No. 1	160	10.8	Alkaline.
54	" Source No. 2	166	13.0	"
55	" Waipahihi Stream	98	8.6	Saline.
56	Left bank, Waikato, Waiariki	125	10.8	Chlorinated saline.
<i>Waikato District.</i>				
57	Whangape	160-200	6.0	Alkaline.
<i>Ruapehu District.</i>				
58	Onetapu, Waikato	70	58.0	"
<i>East Cape District.</i>				
59	Roparoa, Waipapu	Cold	..	Saline, bituminous.
60	Manutahi	"	..	"
61	Pepoti	"	..	Hydrocarbon gas.
62	Waipaea, Poverty Bay	"	..	Bituminous.
63	Waipiro, Waipapu	144	..	Calcareous, bituminous.
<i>Wellington District.</i>				
64	Wallingford	60	10.4	Acid.
65	Pahua	Cold	184.2	Alkaline.
66	Burton's Spring	"	..	"
67	Akitekē (a)	"	62.4	Alkaline.
68	" (b)	"	4.8	Sulphurous.
<i>South Island.</i>				
69	Hanmer Plain Springs, Amuri	90-104	10.8	Alkaline.
70	Sumner Lake Springs "	93	2.3	Saline.
71	Amberley Spring, Canterbury	Cold	11.7	Chalybeate.
72	Wickliffe Bay Spring, Otago	"	34.6	Saline.
73	Gibson's Spring, Southland	Cold	2.3	Alkaline.

* * For the Waters of Te Aroha see p. 15, Route 3.

1. *Ohaeawai*, Auckland.—A group of springs used as baths, 17 m. from Bay of Islands, the waters of which are acidic, depositing sulphur and alum on cooling. Silica is only deposited as a granular sediment. These springs are chiefly interesting from their being accompanied by an escape of mercurial vapour, which deposits cinnabar and metallic mercury. Their medicinal action is tonic and chalybeate, and they have a specific alterative action in skin diseases.

2. *Waivera*, on the coast, 30 m. north of Auckland. A powerful escape of weakly alkaline and saline water, extensively used as baths for rheumatic and dyspeptic complaints; used internally it has also a mild antilithic action. This spring is largely resorted to, and most comfortable accommodation is provided for visitors.

	ANALYSIS.	Grains per Gallon.
Chloride of sodium	116.715
" potassium091
" lithium	traces
Iodide of magnesium	traces
Sulphate of soda383
Bicarbonate of soda	87.513
" lime	10.692
" magnesia954
" iron683
Alumina	traces
Silica	2.464
		<hr/>
		219.495

3. *Puriri*, about 10 m. from Grahamstown. A cold, effervescent water, having valuable properties from the presence of a large percentage of alkaline carbonates. It is bottled both as still and aerated water, and is coming into repute as an antilithic aperient, and would probably be useful in cases of acid dyspepsia and in disorders of the kidney and bladder. In chemical properties it approaches very closely to Fachingen and Ems waters of Nassau in Germany.

	Grains per Gallon.
Chloride of sodium	21.938
Iodide of magnesium	traces
Sulphate of soda . . . . .	.940
" potash	4.938
Carbonate of iron	traces
Bicarbonate of lime	28.506
" magnesia	25.625
" soda	452.393
" lithia	traces
Silica	2.772
Phosphoric acid	not determined

537-112

4-5. *White Island*.—A conical island in the Bay of Plenty, formed by the summit of an extinct volcanic mountain rising out of deep water. The crater is occupied by a lake of strong mineral water, which is fed by intermittent geysers and boiling springs which

surround it. All these waters are intensely acid, and deposit sulphate of lime; while the accompanying vapours form irregular deposits of pure sulphur. The first water is too powerful to be used medicinally in its natural state, but might be turned to valuable account in certain chemical manufactures.

6-34. Are associated geographically as all coming from the famous Rotorua and Rotomahana Districts. They, however, present considerable variety in quality, and may be classed as follows:—

6-17. *Alkaline and Siliceous Waters.*—These differ from the ordinary alkaline waters in the presence of silicic instead of carbonic acid as the combining agent. They are remarkable from their building extensive mounds and terraces composed of silica deposited by the cooling water, and involving as it solidifies a certain amount of granular silica, which is held in mechanical suspension; in this manner the wonderful pink and white terraces of Rotomahana and the domes of Whakarewarewa have been formed. This class of water invariably contains carbonic-acid gas, and in some cases also sulphuretted hydrogen in large quantity, the oxidation of which leads to the formation of sulphurous and sulphuric acid and the liberation of hydrochloric acid, and in this way gives rise to the acidic waters. When used as baths they have an undoubted alterative action, and are very useful in rheumatic affections, especially in gouty constitutions. This is probably due to the specific action of silicates in promoting the discharge of uric acid from the system, as has lately been pointed out by French chemists.

Acidic Waters.—In the case of these waters the carbonates have been wholly eliminated, and the alkaline salts are formed by a mineral acid, either sulphuric or hydrochloric. In some cases the acid is greatly in excess, forming a bath which has a powerful action upon the liver and upon diseases dependent on the derangement of that important organ. In some the presence of sulphurous and hydro-sulphuric acid in large quantities gives these baths great efficacy in cutaneous diseases.

The following are the analyses of four types of the mineral waters in the Rotorua District:—

32. Te Pupunitanga, commonly known as the 'Priest's Bath;' aluminous and strongly acid (reaction acid).

	Grains per Gallon.
Sulphate of soda	19.24
" potash	traces
" lime	7.41
" magnesia	3.03
" alumina	21.67
" iron	1.24
Sulphuric acid	22.12
Hydrochloric acid	3.65
Silica	18.41

Sulphuretted hydrogen	96.77
Carbonic-acid gas	2.98
	2.16

29. Whangapipiro, commonly known as 'Madame Rachel's Bath;' saline waters with silicates (reaction alkaline).

	Grains per Gallon.
Chloride of sodium	69.43
" potassium	3.41
" lithium	traces
Sulphate of soda	11.80
Silicate of soda	18.21
" lime	4.24
" magnesia	1.09
Iron and alumina oxides	2.41
Silica	5.87
	<hr/>
Carbonic-acid gas	116.46
	3.79

24. Te Kauwhanga (the Pain killer) (a), commonly known as 'Cameron's Bath;' hepatic, feebly saline, with excess of acid (reaction acid).

	Grains per Gallon.
Sulphate of soda	44.54
Chloride of potassium	1.67
" sodium	12.04
" calcium	5.22
" magnesia	1.28
" alumina	0.62
Silica	9.22
Hydrochloric acid	5.92
	<hr/>
Sulphuretted hydrogen	80.51
Carbonic-acid gas	4.42
	1.96

8. Turikore (Spout Bath). Faintly acid reaction, which turns to alkaline on boiling.

	Grains per Gallon.
Silicate of soda	16.32
" lime	1.61
" magnesia	1.14
" iron . . . . .	.39
Sulphate of soda	13.47
Chloride of potassium	1.24
" sodium	53.61
Phosphate of alumina	traces
	<hr/>
	87.78

An interesting paper, communicated to the *Australasian Medical Gazette* by Dr. Hope Lewis, and a pamphlet by Dr. A. Ginders¹, the

¹ The Thermal-Springs, Rotorua, New Zealand: Hints on cases likely to benefit by treatment thereof. Wellington. By authority: George Didsbury, Government Printer.

medical officer in charge, give full particulars of the medicinal advantages of the many springs.

35-56. With the exception of the first two their general characters are saline and faintly acid. They are reported to be suitable for internal and external use, as alteratives, in scorbutic and tubercular diseases, also in chronic nervous affections and cutaneous eruptions. The presence of iodine in these waters, which was formerly reported, has been disproved by recent analyses of authentic samples.

57. Whangape, Waikato, is a hot alkaline water, having a composition similar to those of Puriri and Waiwera.

58. Onetapu Desert, at the sources of the Waikato and Wangaeahu Rivers. This powerful spring, which issues at the base of Ruapehu, is so strongly charged with sulphates of iron and alumina as to taint the water of the latter river from its source to the sea, a distance of 70 m. It is only one of the many mineral springs which occur in the still active volcanic district of Tongariro.

59-62. In the East Cape and Poverty Bay District are four—out of some seventeen different springs which have been discovered—that yield hydrocarbons, either in the form of gas or oil, and associated with saline waters. The source of these springs is probably certain bituminous shales at the base of the Cretaceous formation.

63. Waipiro is interesting as being a hot spring in the same district (in which there is no evidence of any volcanic action), and as depositing immense quantities of carbonate of lime in acicular crystals. This lime-deposit is built up in the form of a wall, marking the line of fissure through which the water escapes.

64, 65. Are cold springs in the Wellington District, and belong to the class of saline waters, which are generally feebly acid. Springing from rocks of Lower Secondary formation, they are interesting from the large proportion of iodine and other exceptional elements which they contain. Pahua is the most notable in this respect, and has the following composition:—

	Grains per Gallon.
Chloride of sodium	1,303.329
" potassium . . . . .	.501
" magnesium	34.960
" calcium	120.885
Iodine of magnesium . . . . .	.582
Bromide of magnesium	traces
Sulphate of lime	3.062
Phosphate of alumina . . . . .	.641
" iron	traces
" lime . . . . .	.430
Bicarbonate of lime	6.451
Silica	1.696
Iodine, free	1.595
	1,474.096

Total quantity of iodine to the gallon (free and combined)
2.127 grains.

66. Burton's Taipo, in addition to iodine, contains traces of arsenic.

67, 68. Akiteo (*a*) is a strong saline water containing iodides and bromides, while Akiteo (*b*) is an aerated chalybeate water, and would be valuable as a tonic, being similar to the springs at Pymont, Waldeck, and Recoaro, Venetia. Aerated chalybeate waters of medicinal value are found in many other parts of N. Z.; among these may be mentioned a locality near Whangarei, in the N., and Chain Hills, near Dunedin, in the S.

69. The springs which occur at the Hanmer Plains, Amuri, are alkaline, with a strong escape of sulphuretted hydrogen, and would form useful baths in rheumatic and cutaneous diseases.

70. At the distance of a few miles from Sumner Lake water has a temperature of 93° Fahr., as it gushes from the sandstone rock, but it does not contain sufficient matters in solution to entitle it to rank as a mineral water.

71. Amberley. This was analysed and reported on by Professor Bickerton, of the Canterbury College, as a chalybeate water, but unfit for use on account of the organic matter present. The analysis gave the following quantitative results:—

	Grains per Gallon.
Total dissolved solids	37.6
Volatile	8.8
Fixed	28.8
Carbonate of lime	3.6
Carbonate of magnesia	2.2
Chlorine	10.5
Iron protoxide	2.3
Free ammonia . . . . .	.069
Albuminoid ammonia . . . . .	.034
Sediment	165.2

72. Wickliffe Bay, Otago. An analysis of this water is given by Professor Black, of Otago University. It appears to be a saline water:—

	Grains per Gallon.
Sulphuric acid (combined)	39.3
Chlorine	112.0
Magnesia	18.3
Lime	11.5
Alkalies	83.0
Carbonic acid (combined)	12.6

73. Gibson's Spring, Southland, is a water which is stated to be a specific in diarrhoea, and contains a large amount of organic matter, to some astringent quality of which its medicinal qualities are probably due.

VEGETATION.

The New Zealand forest (or 'bush' as it is irreverently and incorrectly called) is extremely beautiful. It is true that it presents little of the gorgeous splendour of tropical vegetation; but still, although the

trees are all evergreens, the tints of the dense undergrowth are so varied that it has none of the monotonous gloom of the forests of Northern Europe, whilst its density and the wealth of creepers and parasitic growth remind one of far hotter latitudes. There are but few wild flowers which the traveller would compare to those familiar to him in England; but in the mountains splendid ranunculi ('mountain lilies'), white gentians, giant daisies or asters, and edelweiss flourish in rich profusion; and in the forests and glens below the want of small flowers is more than supplied by masses of ferns (of which there are some 150 varieties, from the tree-fern 40 ft. in height to tiny plants which can hardly be seen without a microscope), and flowering trees and shrubs. Many of these blossom nearly the whole year round; but the traveller will specially notice in autumn the delicate lacebark, in appearance and scent not unlike orange-blossom; the koromiko (veronica), of which about eighty varieties may be found; and the green blossoms of the tutu (strangers must bear in mind that the seeds of the tutu are poisonous, although the juice of the berries may be sucked with impunity). In the early spring the wineberry (makomako), which seems to start up spontaneously wherever the bush is cleared, reminds one somewhat of the rhybis of English cottage gardens; the forest trees are tied together by great festoons of white clematis; here and there may be found the scarlet kowhai (which tradition says the Maoris brought with them from Hawaiki), and more frequently the yellow variety, not unlike a laburnum; in the northern forests the puriri is covered with pink blossoms. Then come the kokutukutu, or native fuchsias of every sort, with blossoms red, purple, and green, some standing 45 ft. high, others delicate creepers. In summer, however, the flowers are richest; the swamps are covered with the waving toitoi, which resembles the American pampas grass, but is more graceful, and the so-called native flax (*phormium tenax*); for many miles the country is white with the manuka, or tea tree, on the black birch trees are masses of brilliant crimson—the N. Z. mistletoe. But the greatest glory of N. Z. flowers is the Rata. The most striking variety of this is the Northern (Robusta), which grows to about 100 ft. in height and 20 in diameter. The seeds are often carried by the wind into the forks of lofty trees, where they readily germinate in the vegetable mould formed by the decaying leaves of orchids and other epiphytes. The seedling grows freely until the limited supply of nutriment at its high level is exhausted, when it boldly stretches one or more aerial roots down the trunk of the supporting tree, until they reach the earth, in quest of an increased food-supply; as increased nourishment is thus drawn directly from the soil, the aerial roots gradually assume the appearance of stems, and present one or two features of great interest. If, during the progress of growth, a single root-stem becomes forced away from the supporting trunk for a portion of its length, a lateral root is given off at right angles, and grows horizontally around the supporting trunk until it returns to the opposite side of the main root-stem; sometimes several lateral arms are given off in this way. When two or more root-stems are developed, they are frequently connected by laterals, and in many cases they give off oblique laterals, which usually become

united by a process of natural grafting, and the supporting tree is sooner or later killed by their iron embrace. A rata tree thus frequently has the appearance of a single standard tree; and yet when it is cut down, the remains of another tree is found inside. In the height of summer the rata is covered with crimson blossoms of almost dazzling brilliancy. Tourists should make their plans so as to enable them to see some of these in their full beauty. The Southern Rata is a smaller plant, but the blossoms are almost the same; it is found even in the Auckland Islands. In the N., near the sea and some of the lakes, a specially beautiful variety of the same order is found—the Pohutakawa; the name literally means 'washed by the sea.'

There are a large number of native grasses in N. Z., which, if less profitable to the settlers than the English varieties which are now rapidly supplanting them, are of more interest to the botanist.

THE FERN VEGETATION.

The abundance and diversity of ferns in the vegetation of New Zealand attracted the attention and excited the admiration of the early explorers of the country; and even so competent an observer as Dieffenbach, writing some fifty years ago, expatiated on their beauty and variety, and declared that they took the place of the grasses and other herbaceous plants constituting the carpet of northern countries. His is a somewhat exaggerated description, yet it is very near the truth, except that the great predominance of ferns is no longer so striking a feature in the vicinity of the towns and other settlements, where cultivation and introduced plants have so altered the face of the country as to give it an almost European aspect. Still one has not to penetrate far into the interior to become impressed by the fact that ferns abound to an extent unknown in similar northern climes. It is not merely the large number of species, as compared with the flowering plants with which they are associated, but also the astonishing development of individuals. With regard to the actual number of different species, there is perhaps no better means of conveying an idea than by comparisons. In the British Islands, of somewhat greater extent than New Zealand, there are about forty species of ferns belonging to seventeen genera, against about 1,500 species of flowering plants; and only one of these British ferns, the common bracken, covers large areas, whereas in New Zealand there are about 140 species belonging to thirty-five genera, associated with only about 1,000 species of flowering plants. This comparison extended to the whole of Europe gives about seventy-five species of ferns to 10,000 species of flowering plants. These very diverse proportions are due to a variety of causes which we have no space to discuss here; but a humid, equable climate in the first instance, and the ease with which the microscopic germinative spores of ferns are

conveyed long distances by winds, may largely account for the great preponderance of ferns in a remote insular country such as New Zealand. Mere number of species, however, can give only a very faint conception of the actual condition of things. Ferns abound from the sea-coast, within the influence of the salt spray of the ocean, up to the snow-line on the lofty mountains of the interior; but it is in the deep glens and gorges and dark dripping forests where they appear in their full glory and beauty. Some species, like the common bracken and *Alsophila Colensoi*, a fern with a trailing stem, cover hundreds of square miles of the open plains, but they are among the least elegant and delicate. Moreover ferns are not only almost ubiquitous in New Zealand, they also exhibit nearly the whole range of diversity in habit and size, rigidity and grace, contour and cutting displayed elsewhere in the whole world by this favourite family of plants. In the deep recesses of the mountains there are groves of tree-ferns, southward even to the beautiful Stewart Island, whose columnar trunks, often clothed with the delicate transparent fronds of filmy ferns (*Hymenophyllum* and *Trichomanes*), commonly rise to a height of 25 to 50 feet, occasionally even more, terminating in a crown of ample, often graceful, fronds of varied hues. Remarkable among these is the 'Silver Tree-fern,' *Cyathea dealbata*, readily distinguished from all others by the dazzling white under-surface of the fronds. It is a favourite fern of the Maoris, who prefer its fronds to all others for bedding. In contrast to this is the 'Black Tree-fern,' *Cyathea medullaris*, the tallest of all the New Zealand tree-ferns, occasionally attaining a height of 70 feet, and remarkable for the black colour of the leaf-scars on the trunks and of the chaff-like scales with which the fronds are beset. The veteran W. Colenso, who has botanized New Zealand for upwards of sixty years, thus describes a tree-fern grove in the forest of the Seventy-mile Bush: 'On a flat, in the heart of the forest, in a deep hollow, lying between steep hills, the bottom of which for want of drainage was very wet and uneven, and contained much deep vegetable mould, even in the driest summer season, I found a large and continuous grove or thicket of very tall tree-ferns, chiefly *Dicksonia squarrosa* and *D. fibrosa*, with a few of *Cyathea dealbata* intermixed, and a few forest trees and shrubs growing scattered among them. I estimated their number at 800 to 1000, and they were from 25 to 35 feet high, and in many places growing so close together that it was impossible to force one's way through them. Their trunks were most profusely covered with the smaller epiphytal ferns, conspicuous among them the rare *Hymenophyllum subtilissimum*, which literally clothed their trunks from top to base.'

Climbing ferns are nowhere numerous, but the climbing genus *Lygodium* is very widely spread in warm countries, and the peculiar New Zealand *L. articulatum* is one of the characteristic types of the forests of the northern half of North Island, where it festoons the loftiest trees, its thin wire-like stems closely coiling round the branches for support. These stems are so tough that the Maoris use them for cordage and other purposes, and the early settlers made substitutes for spring-mattresses of the dense coils of the stems.

This is one of the few ferns that may easily be identified without a technical description, and there are excellent illustrated books¹ by which almost any of them may be determined with a little patience. To attempt to particularize the numerous species of the various genera in the little space here allotted to the subject would be useless, but a few words concerning some of the other marked genera may not be out of place. Foremost among these is *Gleichenia*, of which there are three species; one of them is specially abundant in North Island. It grows in the scrub, forming dense tangled bushes of slender stems and very small ultimate divisions of the fronds, sometimes as much as 8 or 10 feet high. All three species occur in Stewart Island. The Filmy Ferns number at least twenty-five species, including the British *H. tunbridgensis*, and no fewer than twenty of them have been found in Stewart Island. Maiden-hair ferns are represented by six species, yet the almost cosmopolitan *Adiantum capillus-veneris* is not among them. *Hypolepis millefolium* is a most elegant plant having very finely-divided fronds, recorded only from Alpine localities on the margins of rivulets formed by the melting snow. *Lomaria procera*, the Korokio of the Maoris, is one of the very commonest ferns throughout the colony, but as there are at least fifteen species of the genus in New Zealand it is needless to say more than that it belongs to the group having simply pinnate fronds of two kinds, sterile and fertile. *Asplenium* numbers about a dozen species, several of which inhabit the rocks of the sea-shore. *Todea superba*, the 'Crape Fern,' peculiar to New Zealand and the adjacent islands, and one of the most lovely members of the family, having finely divided transparent fronds, often two or three feet in length, is exceedingly common in moist, bushy situations, chiefly in mountainous districts up to 3,000 feet, but descending almost to sea-level in the south. *Schizaea* is a curious genus having quite small fan-shaped fronds borne on relatively long slender stalks and tipped with the spore-cases. Allusion has already been made to the common bracken. Formerly the Maoris used the rootstocks as food, and, as prepared by them, the early voyagers found it quite palatable, and not unlike English gingerbread.

Stewart Island is a veritable natural fernery, such as exists perhaps in no other part of the world outside tropical limits: it has an estimated area of only about 650 square miles, or less than half that of the county of Sussex; yet no fewer than seventy species of ferns and lycopods have already been discovered there! The surface is undulating and hilly, and even rugged in the north, where the hills attain an elevation of upwards of 3,000 feet. Much of it is covered with dense forest, composed of a greater variety of trees than we are accustomed to see in England. Nearly 400 species of flowering plants are recorded from the island, and some of them have very brilliantly coloured flowers, in striking contrast to the fern and coniferous elements. In December and January, the summer of the antipodes, the Rata, *Metrosideros lucida*, is one

¹ e. g. 'The Ferns of New Zealand and its immediate dependencies, by H. C. Field, C.E. (Griffith, Farran and Co.)'

blaze of crimson. Thomas Kirk, who writes with more authority than any other person on this subject, is eloquent on the beauties of this small island, the southern termination of New Zealand. *Lycopodium* is represented by six species, and *L. ramulosum* covers acres of the open ground. In conclusion, it may be mentioned that ferns generally have a much wider geographical distribution than flowering plants, and at least half a dozen British species extend to New Zealand. Nevertheless, many species are local, and about one-third of the New Zealand species have not hitherto been found elsewhere.

LIST OF NEW ZEALAND FERNS.

Prepared from Hooker and Baker's *Synopsis Filicum*, 1868; showing changes from the nomenclature adopted by Dr. J. D. Hooker in the *Handbook of New Zealand Flora*; and including new species.

- | | |
|---|--|
| Adiantum Æthiopicum. | Asplenium obtusatum. |
| — affine. | — obtusatum, var. <i>b</i> . |
| — diaphanum. | — obtusatum, var. <i>g</i> . |
| — formosum. <i>Plumed Maidenhair.</i> | — Richardi. |
| — fulvum. | — Trichomanes. |
| — hispidulum. | — umbrosum. |
| Alsophila Colensoi. | Azolla rubra. |
| Aspidium aculeatum. <i>Prickly Shield Fern.</i> | Botrychium ternatum. <i>Rattlemake Fern.</i> |
| — aristatum. | — Lunaria. |
| — capense. | Cheilanthes tenuifolia. |
| — cystostegium. <i>Egmont Fern.</i> | Cyathea dealbata. <i>Silver Tree Fern.</i> |
| — Richardi. | — medullaris. <i>Black Tree Fern.</i> |
| — Richardi, var. <i>a</i> . | — Cunninghamii. |
| — Richardi, var. <i>b</i> . | Cystopteris fragilis. <i>Brittle Bladder Fern.</i> |
| Asplenium bulbiferum. | Davallia Forsteri. |
| — bulbiferum, var. <i>b</i> . | — Novae Zelandiae. |
| — caudatum. | — Tasmani. |
| — Colensoi. | Dicksonia fibrosa. |
| — falcatum. | — lanata. |
| — flabellifolium. | — squarrosa. <i>Slender Tree Fern.</i> |
| — flaccidum. | Doodia candata. <i>Sacred Fern of the Maoris.</i> |
| — flaccidum, var. <i>a</i> . | — media. |
| — flaccidum, var. <i>b</i> . | — media, var. <i>b</i> . |
| — flaccidum, var. <i>d</i> . | Gleichenia circinata. |
| — flaccidum, var. <i>e</i> . | — dicarpa. <i>Swamp Fern.</i> |
| — flaccidum, var. <i>f</i> . | — dicarpa, var. <i>b. alpina.</i> |
| — flaccidum, var. <i>g</i> . | |
| — Hookerianum. | |

- Gleichenia Cunninghamii*. *Umbrella Fern*.
 — *dichotoma*.
 — *flabellata*. *Fan Fern*.
Gymnogramme leptophylla.
 — *Pozoi*, var. *b*.
Hemitelia Smithii. *The Soft Tree Fern*.
Hymenophyllum bivalve
 — *Cheesemani*,
 — *ciliatum*.
 — *demissum*.
 — *dilatatum*.
 — *flabellatum*.
 — *infescens*.
 — *Javanicum*.
 — *Malingii*.
 — *multifidum*.
 — *polyanthos*.
 — *pulcherrimum*.
 — *rarum*.
 — *scabrum*.
 — *subtilissimum*.
 — *tunbridgensis*.
 — *tunbridgensis*, var. *b*.
Hypolepis distans.
 — *Millefolium*.
 — *tenuifolia*.
Lindsaya linearis.
 — *microphylla*.
 — *trichomanoides*.
 — *trichomanoides*, var. *b*.
 — *viridis*.
Lomaria alpina.
 — *attenuata*.
 — *Banksii*.
 — *discolor*.
 — *dura*.
 — *filiformis*.
 — *fluviatilis*.
 — *Fraseri*.
 — *lanceolata*.
 — *membranacea*.
 — *nigra*.
 — *Patersoni*.
 — *procera*.
 — *procera*, var. *a*.
 — *procera*, var. *b*.
 — *procera*, var. *d*.
 — *procera*, var. *g*.
 — *pumila*.
 — *vulcanica*.
Loxosoma Cunninghamii.
Lycopodium Billardieri.
 — *Carolinianum*.
 — *cernuum*.
 — *clavatum*.
 — *densum*.
 — *laterale*.
Lycopodium scariosum.
 — *selago*.
 — *varium*.
 — *volubile*.
Lygodium articulatum.
Marattia fraxinea. *Horsehoe Fern*.
Nephrodium decompositum.
 — *decompositum*, var. *b*.
 — *hispidum*. *Hairy Fern*.
 — *molle*.
 — *thelypteris*, var. *b*. *squamulosum*.
Marah Buckler Fern.
 — *unitum*.
 — *velutinum*. *Dirty Fern*.
Nephrolepis cordifolia.
Nothochlaena distans.
Ophioglossum Luscitanicum. *Little Adder-tongue Fern*.
 — *vulgatum*. *Adder-tongue Fern*.
Pellaea falcata.
 — *rotundifolia*.
Phylloglossum Drummondii.
Polypodium australe.
 — *Billardieri*.
 — *Cunninghamii*.
 — *Grammitidis*.
 — *Novae Zelandiae*.
 — *pennigerum*.
 — *punctatum*, var. *b*.
 — *pustulatum*.
 — *serpens*.
 — *tenellum*.
Psilotum triquetrum.
Pteris aquilina, var. *g*. *esculenta*.
Bracken.
 — *cretica*.
 — *comans*.
 — *incisa*.
 — *macilentia*.
 — *scaberula*.
 — *tremula*. *Scented Fern*.
Schizaea australis.
 — *bifida*.
 — *dichotoma*.
 — *filulosa*.
Tmesipteris Forsteri.
Todea barbara.
 — *hymenophylloides*.
 — *superba*. *Prince of Wales Feathers*.
Trichomanes Armstrongii (n. sp.).
 — *Colensoi*.
 — *humile*.
 — *Lyallii*.
 — *reniforme*. *Kidney Fern*.
 — *rigidum*.
 — *rigidum*, var. *b*.
 — *venosum*.

For the *Flora* of N.Z. see the books mentioned on p. [64] and for fuller information concerning the Alpine Flora see Rte 24.

FOREST TREES.—The principal native trees are the following:—

Order—CONIFERÆ.

Genus—*Dammara*, L'Héritier.

Dammara australis, Lambert.

Kauri.—The kauri is the finest forest tree in N.Z., and attains a height of 120 ft. to 160 ft. The trunk is sometimes 80 ft. to 100 ft. high before branching, and attains a diameter at the base of 10 ft. to 20 ft.

The timber is in high repute for masts and spars, deck and other planking of vessels, and is largely used for house finishings. There is abundant evidence of its durability for more than sixty years in some of the old mission-buildings at the Bay of Islands. The buried logs of an ancient kauri forest near Papakura have been excavated and found to be in perfectly sound condition, and were used for sleepers on the Auckland and Waikato Railway. On the Thames goldfield kauri is used for mine-props, struts, and cap-pieces. It forms the bulk of the timber exported from N. Z.

Some of the largest and soundest kauri timber has richly mottled shading, which appears to be an abnormal growth, due to the bark being entangled in the ligneous growth, causing shaded parts, broad and narrow, according as the timber is cut relative to their planes. This makes a rich and valuable furniture wood, and in the market is known as 'mottled kauri.'

The kauri pine occurs only in the North Island and north of Mercury Bay, and grows best near the sea on wet clay land. The kauri forests are largely composed of other trees as well as their characteristic tree.

The turpentine of this tree forms the celebrated kauri gum, which is extensively excavated from the sites of old forests as far south as Taranaki.

Genus—*Libocedrus*, Endl.

Libocedrus doniana, Endl.

Kawaka, Cypress, Cedar.—This handsome tree attains a height of 60 ft. to 100 ft., and a diameter of 3 ft. to 5 ft. Wood reddish, fine-grained and heavy; used by the Maoris for carving, and said to be excellent for planks and spars; grows in the North Island, being abundant in the forests near the Bay of Islands and to the north of Auckland.

Libocedrus Biduillii, Hook.

Pahautea, Cedar.—A handsome conical tree 60 ft. to 80 ft. high, 2 ft. to 3 ft. in diameter. In Otago, it produces a dark-red free-working timber, rather brittle, chiefly adapted for inside work. Found on the central ranges of the North Island, and common throughout the forests of the South Island, growing at altitudes of 500 ft. to 4,000 ft. This timber has been used for sleepers on the Otago railways of late years, is largely employed in that district for fencing purposes, and is frequently mistaken for totara. In former years it was believed to be suitable only for inside work.

Genus—*Podocarpus*, L'Héritier.

Podocarpus ferruginea, Don.

Miro, Bastard Black-pine of Otago.—A large ornamental and useful

timber tree; attains a height of 40 ft. to 60 ft., trunk 2 ft. to 3 ft. in diameter. A useful wood, but not so durable as the matai or true black-pine wood; reddish, close-grained, and brittle; the cross section of the timber shows the heartwood star-shaped and irregular. The timber is generally thought to be unfitted for piles and marine works, except when only partially exposed to the influence of sea-water, as shown in the railway embankment at Bluff Harbour, where it is reported to have been durable. Grows in the North and South Islands at altitudes below 1,000 ft.

Podocarpus totara, A. Cunn.

Totara.—A lofty and spreading tree, 60 ft. to 120 ft. high, 4 ft. to 10 ft. in diameter. Wood very durable and clean-grained, in appearance like cedar, and works with equal freedom; it is adapted for every kind of carpenter's work. It is used extensively in Wellington for house-building and piles of marine wharves and bridges, and railway sleepers, and is one of the most valuable timbers known. The wood, if felled during the growing season, resists for a long time the attacks of toredo worms. It splits freely, and is durable as fencing and shingles. Totara post-and-rail fences are expected to last from forty to fifty years. The Maoris made their largest canoes from this tree, and the palisading of their pas consisted almost entirely of this wood. Grows throughout the North and South Islands upon both flat and hilly ground; the timber from trees grown on hills is found to be the most durable.

Podocarpus spicata, Br.

Matai, Mai, Black-pine of Otago.—A large tree, 80 ft. high, trunk 2 ft. to 4 ft. in diameter. Wood yellowish; close-grained, and durable; used for a variety of purposes—piles for bridges, wharves, and jetties, bed-plates for machinery, millwright's work, flooring, house-blocks, railway-sleepers, and fencing. Bridges in various parts of the colony afford proof of its durability. Mr. Buchanan has described a log of matai that he found had been exposed for at least two hundred years in a dense damp bush in North-East Valley, Dunedin, as proved by its being enfolded by the roots of three large trees of *Griselinia littoralis*, 3 ft. 6 in. in diameter, with over 300 growth rings. Grows in both North and South Islands at altitudes under 1,500 ft.

Podocarpus dactyloides, A. Rich.

Kahikatea, White-pine.—A very fine tree, 100 ft. to 150 ft. high; trunk 4 ft. in diameter. Timber white and tough, soft, and well adapted for indoor work, but will not bear exposure. Abundant throughout the North and South Islands. When grown on dry soil it is good for the planks of small boats, but when from swamps it is almost useless. A variety of this tree, known as yellow-pine, is largely sawn in Nelson, and considered to be a durable building timber.

Genus—*Dacrydium*.

Dacrydium cupressinum, Soland.

Rimu, Red-pine.—Tree pyramidal, with weeping branches when young; 80 ft. to 130 ft. high, and 2 ft. to 6 ft. in diameter. An

ornamental and useful timber; wood red, clear-grained, heavy, and solid; much used for joisting and planking, and general building purposes, from Wellington southward. Its chief drawback is in being liable to decay under the influence of wet. It is largely used in the manufacture of furniture, the old wood being handsomely marked like rosewood, but of a lighter-brown hue. The juice of this pine is agreeable to drink, and was manufactured into spruce beer by Captain Cook. Grows throughout the North and South Islands, but is of best quality in the central district.

Dacrydium Colensoi, Hook.

Manoa, Yellow-pine.—A very ornamental tree, 20 ft. to 80 ft. high. Wood light yellow. It is the most durable and strongest timber in N.Z. Posts of this wood have been in use among the Maoris for several hundred years. Grows in the North and South Islands up to 4,000 ft. altitude. This tree is curious from having two kinds of leaves on the same branches. It is greatly valued for furniture.

Genus—*Phyllocladus*.

Phyllocladus trichomanoides, Don.

Tanekaha, Celery-leaved Pine.—A slender, handsome tree, 60 ft. high; trunk rarely exceeds 3 ft. in diameter; wood pale, close-grained, and excellent for planks and spars; resists decay in moist positions in a remarkable manner. Grows in the North Island, especially in the hilly districts.

Phyllocladus alpinus, Hook.

Toatoa.—A small ornamental and densely-branched tree, sometimes 2 ft. in diameter. Bark used for dyeing and making tar. Found in both North and South Islands.

Order—CUPULIFERAE.

Genus—*Fagus*, Linn.

Fagus Menziesii, Hook.

Tawhai, Red-birch (from the colour of the bark).—A handsome tree, 80 ft. to 100 ft. high; trunk 2 ft. to 3 ft. in diameter. The timber is chiefly used in the lake district in the South Island. Durable and adapted for masts and oars, and for cabinet and cooper's work. Grows in the North Island on the mountain-tops, but abundant in the South Island at all altitudes to 3,000 ft.

Fagus fusca, Hook.

Tawhai, Tawhairaunui, Black-birch of Auckland and Otago (from colour of bark), Red-birch of Wellington and Nelson (from colour of timber).—This is a noble tree, 60 ft. to 90 ft. high; the trunk 5 ft. to 8 ft. in diameter. The timber is excessively tough and hard to cut. It is highly valued in Nelson and Wellington as being both strong and durable for all purposes. It is found from Kaitaia in the North Island to Otago in the South Island, but is often locally absent from extensive districts, and grows at all heights up to 3,000 ft. altitude.

Fagus Solandri, Hook.

White-birch of Nelson and Otago (from colour of bark), Black-heart birch of Wellington.—A lofty, beautiful evergreen tree, 100 ft.

high; trunk 4 ft. to 5 ft. in diameter. The heart timber is darker than that of *Fagus fusca*, and is very durable. The wood is well adapted for fencing and bridge-piles, and the bark is useful as a tanning material. This tree occurs only in the southern part of the North Island, but is abundant in the South Island, at 3,000 ft. to 5,000 ft. altitude.

Order—MYRTACEAE.

Genus—*Leptospermum*, Forst.

Leptospermum scoparium, Forst.

Kahikatoa, Tea-tree of Cook.—It is ornamental, and useful for fuel and fencing; generally a small shrub, but occasionally 20 ft. in height in the South. Abundant throughout the Islands.

Leptospermum ericoides, A. Rich.

Manuka.—A slender tree, 10 ft. to 80 ft. high, highly ornamental, more especially when young. The timber can be had 28 ft. to 30 ft. long, 14 in. in diameter at the butt, and 10 in. at the small end. The wood is hard and dark-coloured, largely used at present for fuel and fencing, axe-handles and sheaves of blocks, and formerly by the natives for spears and paddles. The old timber, from its dark-coloured markings, might be used with advantage in cabinet-work, and its great durability might recommend it for many other purposes. Highly valued in Otago for jetty- and wharf-piles, as it resists the marine worm better than any other timber found in the district. It is extensively used for house-piles. The lightest-coloured wood, called 'white manuka,' is considered the toughest, and forms an excellent substitute for the 'hornbeam' in the cogs of large spur-wheels. It is abundant as a shrub, and is found usually on the poorest soils, but is rare as a tree in large tracts to the exclusion of other trees.

Genus—*Metrosideros*, Br.

Metrosideros lucida, Menzies.

Rata, Ironwood.—A very ornamental tree; attains a height of 30 ft. to 60 ft., and a diameter of 2 ft. to 10 ft. The timber of this tree forms a valuable cabinet wood; is of a dark-red colour; splits freely. It has been much used for knees and timbers in ship-building, and would probably answer well for cogs of spur-wheels. Grows rarely in the North Island, but is abundant in the South Island, especially on the West Coast.

Metrosideros robusta, A. Cunn.

Rata.—A tall erect tree, 50 ft. to 60 ft. high; diameter of trunk 4 ft., but the descending roots often form a hollow stem 12 ft. in diameter. Timber closely resembles the last-named species, and is equally dense and durable, while it can be obtained of much larger dimensions. It is used for ship-building, but for this purpose is inferior to the pohutukawa. On the tramways at the Thames it has been used for sleepers, which are perfectly sound after some years' use. Grows in the North Island; usually found in hilly situations from Cape Colville southwards.

Metrosideros tomentosa, A. Cunn.

Pohutukawa.—This tree has numerous massive arms; its height is 30 ft. to 60 ft.; trunk 2 ft. to 4 ft. in diameter. The timber is specially adapted for the purposes of the shipbuilder, and has usually formed the framework of the numerous vessels built in the northern districts. Grows on rocky coasts, and is almost confined to the Provincial District of Auckland.

Order—MELIACEAE.

Genus—*Dysoxylum*, Blum.*Dysoxylum spectabile*, Hook.

Kohekohe.—A large forest tree about 40 ft. to 50 ft. high. Its leaves are bitter, and used to make a stomachic infusion; wood tough, but splits freely, and is considered durable as piles under sea-water. Grows in the North Island.

Genus—*Eugenia*.*Eugenia maire*, A. Cunn.

Mairetawhake.—A small tree about 40 ft. high; trunk 1 ft. to 2 ft. in diameter. Timber compact, heavy, and durable. Used for mooring-posts and jetty-piles on the Waikato, where it has stood well for many years. It is highly valued for fencing. Common on swampy land in the North Island.

Order—ONAGRARIACEAE.

Genus—*Fuchsia*, Linn.*Fuchsia excorticata*, Linn.

Kotukutuku. The fruit is called Konini.—A small and ornamental tree, 10 ft. to 30 ft. high; trunk sometimes 3 ft. in diameter. It appears to furnish a durable timber. House-blocks of this wood, which had been in use in Dunedin for more than twenty years, were still sound and good. The wood might be used as dye-stuff, if rasped up and bled in the usual way, and, by mixing iron as a mordant, shades of purple may be produced even to a dense black, that makes good writing ink. The juice is astringent and agreeable, and yields a medical extract. Its fruit is pleasant, and forms the principal food of the wood-pigeon. Grows throughout the Islands.

Order—ARALIACEAE.

Genus—*Panax*, Linn.*Panax crassifolium*, Dcne. and Planch.

Horoeka, Ivy Tree.—An ornamental, slender, and sparingly-branched tree. It has a singularly graceful appearance in the young state, having long reflexed leaves. The wood is close-grained and tough. Common in forests throughout the Islands.

Order—CORNEAE.

Genus—*Griselinia*, Forst.*Griselinia littoralis*, Raoul.

Pukatea, Broadleaf.—An erect and thickly-branched bush-tree, 50 ft. to 60 ft. high; trunk 3 ft. to 10 ft. in diameter. Wood splits

freely, and is valuable for fencing and in shipbuilding; some portions make handsome veneers. Grows chiefly in the South Island and near the coast.

Order—COMPOSITÆ.

Genus—*Olearia*, Mœnch.*Olearia avicenniaefolia*, Hook.

Mingimingi, Yellow-wood.—An ornamental shrub-tree; flowers numerous; trunk 2 ft. in diameter. Wood close-grained, with yellow markings, which render it desirable for cabinet-work; good for veneers. Occurs in South Island.

Olearia nitida.

An ornamental shrub-tree, 20 ft. high and 2 ft. in diameter. Wood close-grained, with yellow markings; useful for cabinet-work. Found in the mountainous region of the North Island and throughout the South Island.

Olearia Cunninghamii.

An ornamental shrub-tree, 12 ft. to 20 ft. high, with very showy flowers. Found abundantly on west coast of South Island, and not uncommon in North Island.

Order—ERICÆÆ.

Genus—*Dracophyllum*, Lab.*Dracophyllum longifolium*, Br.

Neinei.—An ornamental shrub-tree with long grassy leaves. Wood white, marked with satin-like specks, and adapted for cabinet-work. Grows in South Island and in Lord Auckland's Group and Campbell Island; none of the South Island specimens are as large in the foliage as those in Auckland Islands. In the vicinity of Dunedin attains a diameter of 10 in. to 12 in.

Order—VERBENACEÆ.

Genus—*Vitex*.*Vitex littoralis*, A. Cunn.

Puriri.—A large tree, 50 ft. to 60 ft. high; trunk 20 ft. in girth. Wood hard, dark olive-brown, much used; said to be indestructible under all conditions. Grows in the northern parts of the North Island only. Considered very valuable for railway-sleepers.

Order—LAURINEÆ.

Genus—*Nesodaphne*, Hook.*Nesodaphne tarairi*, Hook.

Tarairi.—A lofty forest tree, 60 ft. to 80 ft. high, with stout branches. Wood white, splits freely, but not much valued. Grows in northern parts of North Island.

Nesodaphne tawa, Hook.

Tawa.—A lofty forest tree, 60 ft. to 70 ft. high, with slender branches. The wood is light and soft, and is much used for making butter-kegs. Grows in the northern parts of the South Island and also in the North Island, chiefly on low alluvial grounds; is commonly found forming large forests on river-flats.

Order—MONIMIACEAE.

Genus—*Atherosperma*, Lab.*Atherosperma novae-zealandiae*, Hook.

Pukatea.—Height 150 ft., with buttressed trunk 3 ft. to 7 ft. in diameter; buttresses 15 ft. deep at the base; wood soft and yellowish, used for small boat planks. A variety of this tree has dark-coloured wood that is very lasting in water, and greatly prized by the Maoris for making canoes. Grows in the North Island, and northern parts of the South Island.

Genus—*Hedycarya*, Forst.*Hedycarya dentata*, Forst.

Kaiwhiria.—A small evergreen tree, 20 ft. to 30 ft. high; the wood is finely marked and suitable for veneering. Grows in the North Island, and as far south as Akaroa in the South Island.

Order—PROTEACEAE.

Genus—*Knightia*, Br.*Knightia excelsa*, Br.

Rewarewa.—A lofty slender tree, 100 ft. high. Wood handsome, mottled red and brown, used for furniture and shingles, and for fencing, as it splits easily. It is a most valuable veneering wood. Common in the forests of the North Island, growing upon the hills in both rich and poor soils.

Order—MAGNOLIACEAE.

Genus—*Drimys*.*Drimys axillaris*, Forst.

Horopito, Pepper-tree, Winter's Bark.—A small slender evergreen tree, very handsome. Whole plant aromatic and stimulant; used by the Maoris for various diseases. Wood very ornamental in cabinet-work, making handsome veneers. Grows abundantly in forests throughout the Islands. At altitudes of 1,000 ft. the foliage becomes dense and reddish-coloured.

Drimys colorata, Raoul.

This is a very distinct species, very common near Dunedin; it is a very ornamental shrub-tree, with leaves blotched with red.

Order—VIOLARIACEAE.

Genus—*Melicytus*, Forst.*Melicytus ramiflorus*, Forst.

Mahoe, Hinahina.—A small tree, 20 ft. to 30 ft. high; trunk often angular, and 7 ft. in girth. The wood is soft and not in use. Abundant throughout the Islands as far south as Otago. Leaves greedily eaten by cattle.

Order—MALVACEAE.

Genus—*Hoheria*, A. Cunn.*Hoheria populnea*, A. Cunn.

Houhere, Ribbonwood of Dunedin.—An ornamental shrub-tree, 10 ft. to 30 ft. high. Bark fibrous and used for cordage, and affords

a demulcent drink. Wood splits freely for shingles, but is not durable. Grows abundantly throughout the Islands. Bark used for making a tapa cloth by the Maoris in olden times.

Order—TILIACEAE.

Genus—*Aristolelia*.

Aristolelia racemosa, Hook.

Mako.—A small handsome tree, 6 ft. to 20 ft. high, quick-growing, with large racemes of reddish nodding flowers. Wood very light, and white in colour, and might be applied to the same purposes as the lime-tree in Britain; it makes good veneers.

Genus—*Elaeocarpus*, Linn.

Elaeocarpus dentatus, Vahl.

Hinau.—A small tree, about 50 ft. high, and 18 in. thick in stem, with brown bark which yields a permanent blue-black dye, which is used for tanning; it is used by the Maoris for colouring mats and baskets. Wood a yellowish-brown colour and close-grained; very durable for fencing and piles. Common throughout the Islands.

Order—OLACINEAE.

Genus—*Pennantia*, Forst.

Pennantia corymbosa, Forst.

Kaikomako.—A small, very graceful tree, with white sweet-smelling flowers; height 20 ft. to 30 ft. Wood used by the Maoris for kindling fires by friction. Grows on the mountains of the North Island, and more abundantly throughout the South Island.

Order—RHAMNEAE.

Genus—*Discaria*, Hook.

Discaria toumatou, Raoul.

Tumatakuru, Wild Irishman.—A bush or small tree with spreading branches; if properly trained would form a handsome hedge that would be stronger than whitethorn. The spines were used by the Maoris for tattooing.

Order—SAPINDACEAE.

Genus—*Dodonaea*, Linn.

Dodonaea viscosa, Forst.

Ake.—A small tree, 6 ft. to 12 ft. high. Wood very hard, variegated black and white; used for Maori clubs; abundant in dry woods and forests.

Genus—*Alectryon*, Gærtner.

Alectryon excelsum, DC.

Titoki.—A beautiful tree with large panicles of reddish flowers. Trunk 15 ft. to 20 ft. high, and 12 in. to 20 in. in diameter. Wood has similar properties to ash, and is used for similar purposes. Its toughness makes it valuable for wheels, coach-building, &c.; the oil of the seeds was used for anointing the person. Grows in the North and South Islands; not uncommon in forests.

Order—CORIARIACEÆ.

Genus—*Coriaria*, Linn.*Coriaria ruscifolia*, Linn.

Tupakihi, Tree Tutu.—A perennial shrub 10 ft. to 18 ft. high; trunk 6 in. to 8 in. in diameter. The so-called berries (fleshy petals) vary very much in succulence, the less juicy bearing seeds which, according to Colenso, are not poisonous. The juice is purple, and affords a grateful beverage to the Maoris; and a wine, like elderberry wine, has been made from them. The seeds and leaves contain a poisonous alkaloid, and produce convulsions, delirium, and death, and are sometimes fatal to cattle and sheep. Abundant throughout the Islands.

Order—LEGUMINOSÆ.

Genus—*Sophora*, Linn.*Sophora tetraptera*, Aiton.

Kowhai.—A small or middling-sized tree. It has a splendid appearance, with large pendulous yellow flowers. Wood red; valuable for fencing, being highly durable; it is also adapted for cabinet-work. It is used for piles in bridges, wharves, &c. Abundant throughout the Islands.

Order—SAXIFRAGACEÆ.

Genus—*Carpodetus*, Forst.*Carpodetus serratus*, Forst.

Tawiri, White Mapau, White-birch (of Auckland).—A small tree, 10 ft. to 30 ft. high; trunk unusually slender; branches spreading in a fan-shaped manner, which makes it of very ornamental appearance; flower white, profusely produced. The wood is soft and tough, and might be used in the manufacture of handles for agricultural implements and axes. Grows in the North and South Islands; frequent by the banks of rivers.

Genus—*Weinmannia*, Linn.*Weinmannia racemosa*, Forst.

Towhai, Kamahi.—A large tree; trunk 2 ft. to 4 ft. in diameter, and 50 ft. high. Wood close-grained and heavy, but rather brittle; might be used for plane-making and other joiner's tools, block-cutting for paper and calico printing, besides various kinds of turnery and wood-engraving. The bark of this tree is largely used for tanning. The extract of bark is chemically allied to the gum kino of commerce, their value being about equal. Grows in the middle and southern parts of the North Island and throughout the South Island.

Order—RUBIACEÆ.

Genus—*Coprosma*, Forst.*Coprosma linariifolia*, Hook.

Karamu.—An ornamental shrub-tree; wood close-grained and yellow; might be used for turnery. Grows in mountain localities of the North and South Islands.

Several other species of this genus grow to a considerable size, and

have ornamental timber. It has been proposed to use the berries of *C. baueriana* as a substitute for coffee.

Order—**JASMINACEÆ.**

Genus—*Olea*, Linn.

Olea Cunninghamii, Hook, fl.

Black Maire.—40 ft. to 50 ft. high, 3 ft. to 4 ft. in diameter; timber close-grained, heavy, and very durable. Much of this very valuable timber is being destroyed in clearing the land.

Order—**SANTALACEÆ.**

Genus—*Santalum*, Linn.

Santalum Cunninghamii, Hook, fl.

Maire.—A small tree 10 ft. to 15 ft. high, 6 in. to 8 in. in diameter; wood hard, close-grained, heavy. Used by the Maoris in the manufacture of war implements. Has been used as a substitute for box by wood-engravers.

ANIMAL LIFE.

Until the colonization of N. Z., the country was strangely devoid of animal life. The only mammals known to have been there before the time of Captain Cook were a small brown rat (which had probably been brought in some chance vessel); a tiny bat, which is very rare; and the dogs which the Maoris had brought with them from Hawaiki. Snakes are unknown; reptiles are uncommon; the most interesting being the tuatara or native lizard (*sphenodon punctatum*), which is found on a few small islands and, though certainly not beautiful, is of special interest to zoologists as being the type of a distinct genus, differing in important structural characteristics from every other known saurian, partly resembling a lizard, partly a crocodile. In the centre of the head is a third eye, which is clearly visible through the skin of the young animal, but becomes more thickly covered as it attains maturity.

Coming to birds, however, there is a different story to tell. There is no hope now of a live moa being found; but many complete skeletons may be seen in the Museum at Christchurch and elsewhere. It was a wingless bird, standing 12 or 15 ft. high, stalking on legs as long and strong as a camel's, laying eggs a foot in length, and swallowing handfulls of pebbles to aid its digestion. Judging from the recent appearance of the bones, feathers, and other relics, which are found in caves or close to the surface of the ground, it might be supposed to have died out, like other native birds, within the memory of man. Some old Maoris have been heard to declare that they hunted and ate the moa in their youth. Yet the fact that no allusion to the moa has ever been found in any Maori legend or genealogy, whereas these records abound in allusions to all other natural objects, seems a strong argument against the bird having existed since a remote

antiquity. That the moa was at one time hunted and eaten in enormous numbers is proved beyond question by the evidence of cooked bones found among burnt stones in ancient ovens, with stone implements. But when the time was, or who the moa hunters were, none can say.

In 1838 a man brought to the late Professor Sir Richard Owen a bone which a Maori had told him belonged to a bird. The Professor deduced from it a correct idea of a Moa. (See *Transactions of the Zoological Society*, 1839.) Searches were made by the Missionaries and by Sir William Martin, then Chief Justice of N. Z. Before long Professor Owen had completely restored 15 species of the *Dinornis*. (*Royal Colonial Institute Proceedings*, 1878-9.)

Some of the poor relations of the great moa family still survive—three wingless birds of comparatively small size; the two varieties of the kiwi; and the weka. The weka may often be seen by travellers when they camp out or coach through the less frequented parts of the country. There are several kinds of parrots, amongst which the most destructive is the kea (*nestor notabilis*). It descends upon the flocks, and, fastening itself upon the back of a sheep, tears away the wool, skin and flesh with its powerful beak, and makes with unerring instinct for the kidney fat, which it greedily devours, leaving the sheep to die in agony. How a bird which must have been in the country for centuries has acquired the habit, must for ever remain a mystery.

In the forests, travellers will notice specially the tui, which somewhat resembles a blackbird, and the huia, the royal bird of the Maoris. Wearing a bunch of its white-tipped feathers was with them an invariable emblem of chieftainship.

Native fresh-water fish are rare, but the streams and lakes abound with koras (crayfish).

The insects which make life unbearable in hotter countries are unknown in N. Z. In some parts indeed mosquitos and sandflies are annoying. The most extraordinary of native insects is the aweto, or vegetable caterpillar. It is a perfect caterpillar, and usually grows to about 2 inches in length. It is only found in the ground, and usually near a rata tree. When full grown, the spore of a vegetable fungus fixes itself upon its neck, and takes root. The plant grows vigorously to a height of about 8 inches, with a single stem and no leaves, but a dark-brown head like that of a diminutive bulrush, which stands a few inches above the ground; the root simultaneously grows into the body of the caterpillar, and fills it in every part. When both the caterpillar and the fungus die, the animal or vegetable (for it seems hard to know which to call it) becomes dry and hard, and may be kept for any length of time. How the species is propagated, none can say.

Of European animals and fishes which have been imported, it is unnecessary to speak here. With the sole exception of the salmon all have thriven—some only too well.

SECTION III.

THE NATIVE RACE.

The early history of N.Z. is shrouded in hopeless mystery. Some writers contend that there was an aboriginal race of whom nothing is known except that they hunted the moa, but who are now absolutely extinct, unless indeed the Morioris of the Chatham Islands are descended from them. Others believe that the Maoris were themselves the moa hunters, and that the Morioris are a branch of the same race. As no one can say when the moas became extinct, or when the Maoris arrived in N.Z., the problem is insoluble.

That the Maoris belong to the great Polynesian family is certain; colour, language, traditions and customs are practically identical; but beyond that nothing can be said with certainty. Innumerable theories have been propounded; they have been identified with the Toltecs of Central America; the Egyptians; the Ten Lost Tribes; the race which peopled Java before the invasion of the Malays; the Malays themselves; and even the Anglo-Saxons! Some have argued that they are a cross between the Negro and Mongolian races; others (notably Mr. E. Tregear) that they are Aryans, and came from India.

Their own traditions, so far as they go, are perfectly clear. They tell us how their ancestors once lived in a place called Hawaiki. Driven thence by civil war, they took refuge in their canoes and steered towards the rising of the Southern Cross until they landed at various points in the N. part of N.Z. There they drew up their canoes on the beach, let loose the dogs and rats, and planted the sweet-potatoes and seeds they had brought with them. From the party who came in each canoe the various tribes who peopled the country were descended. (See Rte. 7.) The genealogical sticks, which were carved by the tohungas or priests for the Chiefs, show that the immigration took place at least fourteen generations ago.

Unfortunately, this goes but a little way towards clearing up the mystery. Some writers have attempted to identify Hawaiki with Hawaii, others with Savaii; but the natives of Hawaii have a similar legend of how they came from Hawaii and called their new home after the old one; and the natives of Savaii tell the same story. In other words, they are all various forms of the same legend. The utmost that can be said is that they may have stopped at some island on the way, but we have no evidence as to their original starting-point. Nor can anything more definite be decided as to the date. The genealogical sticks may be imperfect or incorrect. Hence various dates between B.C. 2000 and A.D. 1450 have been suggested.

Nearly all the Maoris settled in the N. Island; very few (and those probably only the remnants of conquered tribes) penetrating further South. The state of Maoriland must have been not unlike that of

Ireland before the English invasion, or Germany in prehistorical times. The fortified pas or villages bear some resemblance to the raths with which travellers in Ireland are so familiar, although of course they contained no places for keeping cattle. Each tribe was independent; tribal wars were incessant. Cultivation was rude in the extreme—fern-root, rats, birds and shellfish being their ordinary food. Metals were unknown, but the art of carving in wood was carried to a high state of perfection. Weapons and ornaments were made from the native greenstone—a variety of jade; they were sometimes merely chipped into shape, but more often beautifully finished by polishing. Stone adzes were fastened to sticks as handles; the fibres of the native flax being used to tie them fast, just as gut was used by the Irish. Great canoes were hollowed out of the trunks of trees by burning and cutting, and then most elaborately carved and decked with feather ornaments. The glory of each tribe was its whare-pune, or Meeting House, with panels fantastically carved, representing the ancestors and geni of the house. In the strange interlacing in some of these, we are again reminded of the Irish carvings. The native dress was composed of flax mats, beautifully woven, sometimes ornamented with coloured feathers, sometimes with dog-skin.

Their religion was curiously like the mythology of ancient Greece. There were families of gods and giants; trees, fishes, birds—every object in nature—having its presiding spirit. There was Ra, the god of day and light; and Po, of night and death; Maui, whose strength had drawn up the N. Island from the bottom of the sea, but who had vainly striven to win immortality for man by a struggle with the goddess of death; and gods of every wind. The most powerful was Tu, the lord of strength and war, who was worshipped in various aspects, like the Egyptian sun-god. In the name of Tu, children were baptized; in the case of a boy, the prayer running thus:—

Baptized in the waters of Tu
 Be thou strong
 By the strength of the heel of Tu
 To catch men,
 To climb the mountain ranges.
 May the power of Tu be given to this boy.
 Be thou strong
 To overcome in the battle,
 To enter the breach,
 To grapple with the foe.
 Be thou strong by the power of Tu
 To pass over the lofty mountains,
 To ascend the mighty trees,
 To brave the billows of the ocean,
 To battle with its might.
 Be strong to cultivate thy food,
 To build great houses,
 To make war canoes,
 To welcome visitors,
 To complete all thy work.
 There comes the strength from the land of Death
 To bear me to the northern Strand,
 To the place where Spirits depart into night.—
 Ah! what know I further?

Over a girl, the words were as follows:—

Baptized in the waters of Tu
 Be thou strong by the strength of Tu
 To get food for thyself,
 To make clothing,
 To weave flaxen mats,
 To welcome strangers,
 To carry firewood,
 To gather shellfish.
 May the strength of Tu be given to this daughter.

Some of the Maori myths were not devoid of poetry; for instance, when they told of how the Heaven was separated from his spouse, the Earth; how he still sheds tears for her, which we call rain, and she in answer sends back sighs to him, which to men appear as mists. Strange to say, idolatry was hardly known; but prayer—at least in the form of incantations—was offered by the tohunga at every solemn moment of life. Marriage was not a religious ceremony. They professed a belief in a life after death—the spirit being sometimes spoken of as passing northwards to its old home in Hawaiki; but it was a life of continual decay, the soul ending at last in becoming a worm, and dying. The great institution of the religion was *tapu*; perhaps *sanctity* is the nearest equivalent in English. This power of *tapu* must have made life a chronic burden to half the nation. A new-born child was *tapu* until it was baptized. Chiefs were so remarkably sacred that the houses where they slept, the food they touched, even the articles of property they laid claim to, were *tapu*. Witchcraft, the evil eye, and such-like superstitions, were as universal amongst the Maoris as amongst other uneducated races; the power of the tohungas being strengthened by what doubtless was in reality ventriloquism.

One of the duties of the tohunga was to tattoo the young people. Girls were tattooed only on the lips; boys all over the face. The instrument used was a small stone adze; blue paint, made out of the pulverized charcoal of the veronica, being rubbed into the wound. The agony was intense; but what race is there who will not submit to any pain rather than be out of the fashion?

The slightest insult was enough to light the spark of war; and when once it was kindled, it was kept alive for generations, by the 'utu' or family vengeance. Fighting was considered the profession of a gentleman, weaving and cultivation being left to slaves and women. But the native character was not devoid of beauty. Even their communistic manner of life had its advantages. Hospitality was universal; the greatest reproach to a man was to call him a miser. The passion of love was strong; many of their favourite poems were love-songs and laments. The following may be taken as a specimen; it was composed by the brother of the great chief Te Heu Heu, who had been killed in a landslip at Tokaano in 1847 (see Rte. 6).

LAMENT FOR TE HEU HEU.

See, o'er the heights of dark Tauhara's peak
 The infant morning wakes. Perchance my friend
 Returns to me, clad in that lightsome cloud.—
 Alas! I toil alone in this cold world. For thou art gone!

Go, thou mighty one! Go thou hero!
 Go, thou that wert as spreading trees to shelter
 Thy people, when evil hovered round.
 Ah! what strange God has caused so dread a death
 To thee and thy companions!

Father, sleep on within that dark abode!
 And hold within thy grasp that weapon rare
 Bequeathed to thee by thy renowned ancestor
 Ngahue, when he left the world.

Turn yet this once thy bold majestic form!
 And let me see thy skin carved o'er with lines
 Of blue, and let me see thy face
 So beautifully chiselled into various forms!
 Ah! the people now are comfortless and sad.

The stars are faintly shining in the heavens,
 For 'Atatahi' and 'Renua-kai-tangata'
 Have disappeared, and those bright stars that shone
 Beneath the Southern Cross—Emblems too true
 Of thee, oh friend beloved.

The Mount of Tongariro rises lonely in the South,
 While the rich feathers that adorned thy great canoe 'Arawa'
 Float upon the wave. And women from the West look on and weep.
 Why hast thou left behind the valued treasures
 Of thy famed ancestor Rongomaihua
 And wrapped thyself in night?

Cease thy slumbers, Oh thou son of Rangi!
 Wake up and take thy battleaxe, and tell thy people
 Of the coming signs, and what will now befall them,
 How the foe tumultuous as the waves will rush with spears uplifted,
 And how thy people will avenge their wrongs, nor shrink at danger.
 But let the warriors breathe awhile, nor madly covet death.

But thou art fallen, and the earth receives thee as its prey,
 But thy wond'rous fame shall soar on high, resounding o'er the heavens!

The Maori language is very simple. It possesses but fourteen letters, A, E, I, O, U, H, K, M, N, P, R, T, W, Ng. (This last is a nasal sound, not very unlike the Spanish ñ. Indeed, the number of vowels, and the absence of closed syllables, make the language sound not unlike Spanish). The language was put into writing by the missionaries; according to the system they wisely selected, the vowels are pronounced as in French. The construction of sentences is as simple as in Hebrew. Most of the Maori names of places are mere descriptions of some natural object, and should be written as separate words. Hence, throughout N. Z. we have the same names occurring again and again; for instance, *Wai-tangi*, weeping water, a name common to many waterfalls; *Wai-roa*, long water: *roto-mahana*, warm lake; *roto-iti*, little lake: *Totara-nui*, great totara tree; *ti-nui*, great ti tree; *Whanga-nui*, great mouth; *Whanga-roa*, long mouth. Unfortunately, in many instances, the settlers have abolished the soft-sounding native words, in order to call the lands after their own names; and in others, from inability or vulgar laziness, have so mispronounced them as to make them hideous.

The intricacies of native law as regards the tenure of land are terrible. All land was held by a tribe or branch of a tribe; there

was no such thing as individual ownership, in either chiefs or others. The boundaries were rivers, mountains or, in some cases, piles of stones. The right to share in the tribal estate depended on an infinite variety of circumstances — occupation, descent, conquest (where one tribe actually seized and held as their own the land of another), intermarriages, and a number of reasons depending on the peculiarities of native customs. A slight acquaintance with the subject will show that a settler could no more extinguish native title by buying from a single native than an Englishman could purchase a high road by giving a bribe to a county surveyor. This is the key to the land question, which has been the cause of most of the wars between the colonists and the natives.

Such was the state of the Maoris down to the beginning of this century. In the year 1814 Anglican Missionaries began to labour amongst them; a few years later they were followed by Wesleyans and Roman Catholics. The work of the missionaries was most arduous, but they were indefatigable. Under their influence slavery and cannibalism were abolished; agriculture improved, and education was introduced; a large number of the natives became Christians. At the same time, however, other Europeans were coming to N. Z.; by 1835 they were arriving in such numbers that the country was rapidly becoming the Alsatia of the Pacific. The natives, too, were acquiring firearms, and tribal squabbles which had hitherto been comparatively harmless were becoming wars of extermination. To avoid anarchy, the missionaries urged the chiefs to agree to the Treaty of Waitangi, which was done on February 5, 1840. The words of the Treaty were as follows:—

1. The Chiefs of the Confederation of the United Tribes of N. Z., and the separate and independent chiefs who have not become members of the confederation, cede to Her Majesty the Queen of England, absolutely and without reservation, all the rights and powers of sovereignty which the said confederation of independent chiefs respectively exercise or possess, or may be supposed to exercise or possess, over their respective territories, as the sole sovereigns thereof.

2. Her Majesty the Queen of England confirms and guarantees to the chiefs and tribes of N. Z., and to the respective families and individuals thereof, the full, exclusive and undisturbed possession of their lands and estates, forests, fisheries, and other properties which they may collectively or individually possess, so long as it is their wish and desire to retain the same in their possession. But the chiefs of the united tribes and the individual chiefs yield to Her Majesty the exclusive right of preemption over such lands as the proprietors thereof may be disposed to alienate, at such prices as may be agreed upon between the respective proprietors and persons appointed by Her Majesty to treat with them in that behalf.

3. In consideration thereof, Her Majesty the Queen of England extends to the Natives of N. Z. her Royal protection, and imparts to them all the rights and privileges of British subjects.

It would be beyond the limits of this work to give any detailed account of the wars which have arisen in N. Z. They are referred to in the synopsis of events, and in the notices of the various places.

In 1857 a large number of natives (prompted, it is said, by their studies of the Books of Samuel) resolved to unite the strength of the tribes by electing a king. They chose a prominent chief, Te Whero Whero, and hailed him as 'Potatau, King of N. Z.' He died in 1860, and his

son Tawhiao was chosen as his successor. His authority, however, has only been recognized by a portion of the native population. In 1885 he visited England, and in 1891 accepted a seat in the Legislative Council.

In 1864 some of the natives adopted a new religion, a strange medley of heathenism and certain portions of the Scriptures. Their worship consisted in dancing round a pole and uttering wild ejaculations, from which they were called Hauhaus. The religion may be now said to be extinct.

In numbers the Maoris are steadily decreasing. In 1800 there must have been at least 100,000 in the N. island alone, the population in the S. island being much smaller. The census of 1891 showed only 39,800 in the N. island and 2,200 in the S.

Many Maoris are wealthy men, possessing large estates (which are frequently let to Europeans). Schools are established in various districts, Maori children being quick learners. (See pp. 4, 39, 43, 45.)

There are four Maori members in the House of Representatives, and two in the Legislative Council.

Even in the briefest account of the Maori race, it would be impossible not to mention the names of two great chiefs, who flourished during the most exciting part of N. Z. history—Hongi and Te Rauparaha.

Hongi was born about 1770. He belonged to the Ngapuhi tribe, of which his ancestors had been chiefs ever since their arrival from Hawaiki. In 1814 he went to Sydney in the brig *Active*, which had been despatched to N. Z. by the Rev. Samuel Marsden to make preparations for the establishment of a mission. At Sydney Hongi stayed as a guest at Mr. Marsden's house. A few months afterwards he returned to N. Z. by the same vessel, which also brought Mr. Marsden, who in turn became the guest of Hongi. A commission had been granted to Hongi and two other native chiefs, by the Governor of New South Wales, empowering them to give or withhold permission to white men to remove natives from N. Z.—for even then the 'labour traffic,' with its attendant abuses, had begun. Hongi, dressed in his regimentals, was present when Mr. Marsden conducted divine service at the Bay of Islands on Christmas Day, 1814, and soon afterwards placed his mark to the deed by which the land for the Church Mission was granted. In 1818, however, Temorenga, another Ngapuhi chief, having obtained possession of 35 muskets, attacked a pa at Tauranga (see Rte. 3), and slew hundreds of his foes. Hongi thereupon determined to do even more than Temorenga. He started for England in the whaleship *New Zealander*, and arrived there in 1820. He went to Cambridge, where he assisted Professor Lee in the preparation of his Maori grammar, and made the acquaintance of Baron de Thierry, then a student at the University. In London he had an interview with King George IV, who presented him with a helmet and a suit of armour; other people also loaded him with valuable gifts. Returning to Sydney, he sold all his presents, and purchased 300 stand of firearms, with which to destroy his fellow-

countrymen. No sooner had he arrived in N. Z. than he commenced a series of raids, the first object of his attack being the Ngatimaru at Totara on the Thames in 1821 (see Rte. 3). The following year he carried by assault two large pas at Mount Wellington, near where Auckland now stands. He then dragged his war canoes across the isthmus, entered and crossed the Manakau harbour, dragged his canoes overland again to the Waiaroa, descended it, and proceeded up the Waikato to Matakītiki, where he landed and attacked the great pa there (see Rte. 11). In 1823 he took his canoes down the E. coast and sacked the Arawa stronghold at Maketu (see Rte. 7), and then proceeded to attack the island of Mokoia (see Rte. 4). In 1827 he made war on the tribes at Whangaroa (see Rte. 2), but was wounded by a bullet, and, after lingering a few months, died in March, 1828. He had never professed Christianity, but was a staunch supporter of Mr. Marsden's mission, and gladly sent his children to the mission schools. His last directions to his family and tribe were, 'Be kind to the missionaries, for they do much good and no harm.'

The name **Te Rauparaha** is so often mentioned in connexion with various parts of the country that it is well here to give a brief abstract of the life of that extraordinary man. He was born about 1770 at Kawhia, then the head-quarters of the Ngatitōa tribe, of which he was a chief. In very early life he became famous as a warrior, fighting against the neighbouring Waikato. In the course of time the possession of firearms by his neighbours (which they obtained by trading with the whalers) placed his tribe in a position of threatened extermination. This led to his determining to escape from his circumscribed territory, and fight his way into a safe region, with an outlet to the seas visited by Europeans, so that he might be free from hostile tribes and yet become rich by trading. Having in the course of a raid to the S. observed a suitable locality, he decided on his celebrated march. Leaving his home about 1820, he cut his way thence by a course of diplomacy and fighting through hostile territory to the vicinity of Cook's Straits, carrying with him nearly 400 of his people—men, women, and children—of whom 170 were warriors. On the way he formed an alliance with the Ngatirakawa, who were also moving out of their inland territory. A long and bloody series of wars with the three local tribes ensued. These were subdued or humbled, and Te Rauparaha established his head-quarters on the island of Kapiti off the W. coast (see Rte. 15). The island formed a base of operations by sea and land. Looking across the straits to the lofty mountains of the S. Island, then peopled by tribes rich in the possession of weapons carved out of the much-prized greenstone, he yearned to conquer them. An excuse was found in a disrespectful remark concerning Te Rauparaha carelessly made by a southern chief, and an invasion followed, with disastrous results to the people of the S. A long series of invasions and expeditions then occupied the exiles from Kawhia and the numerous adventurers who had joined them. In the course of many of these raids, Te Rauparaha had the assistance of his kinsman Te Pehi Kūpe (whose name has been distorted in the *Library of Entertaining Knowledge* for 1830 into Tupaicupa). This man, determined to obtain a supply of firearms, in imitation of Hongi, caused

himself to be carried out into the Strait, and climbed on board a home-bound whaler there. No force that the crew could bring to bear being successful in dislodging him from the ringbolt to which he clung, he was taken to England, where, enlisting the sympathy of various good but indiscreet people, he obtained a number of presents, which he exchanged for firearms and ammunition. Aided by him, Te Rauparaha and his followers carried wars of extermination into almost every bay in the ramified series of sounds in the N. end of the S. island. The conquest was carried down the E. coast, and bloody conflicts occurred at Kaikoura, Banks' Peninsula, and Kaiapoi (see Rtes. 21 and 22). The famous siege of Kaiapoi is still a topic of conversation amongst the few Maoris who still remain in the S. Island. It came about in consequence of the treacherous murder of Te Pehi Kupe, who had gone thither on a friendly visit.

The first invasion of the S. Island occurred about 1830, and the wars continued for seven years more. At the same time an expedition was sent down the W. coast in search of further conquests and of greenstone. The fate of this part is referred to under PUKERAU (see Rte. 26).

Te Rauparaha returned to his island stronghold. His conquests had, according to Maori law, given him a title to various lands in the S. Island. Some of these were bought by the N. Z. Company; but, the extent of their purchases being a matter of dispute, a collision arose which resulted in the Wairau massacre in 1843 (see Rte. 17). After that, Te Rauparaha retired to Porirua, but, being suspected of complicity in the plots of his son-in-law Te Rangihacata, he was arrested by Sir George Grey in 1846 (see Rte. 15). He was soon afterwards liberated, and in the following year was brought back to Waikanehi. He found affairs there much changed; most of his people had become Christians and gone to live at Otaki. He soon joined them, became a Christian, and helped to build the church there (see Rte. 15). He died peacefully in 1848; his body now rests in the Otaki churchyard.

LIST OF COMMON MAORI WORDS.

Te	<i>the (sing.)</i>	Maunga	<i>mountain</i>
Nga	<i>the (pl.)</i>	Puke	<i>hill</i>
Tangata	<i>man</i>	Awa	<i>river</i>
Wahine	<i>woman</i>	Wai	<i>water</i>
Tamaiti	<i>boy</i>	Moana	<i>sea</i>
Kotiro	<i>girl</i>	Roto	<i>lakes</i>
Maori	<i>native</i>	Waka	<i>canoe</i>
Pakeha	<i>foreigner</i>	Kaipuke	<i>ship</i>
Hoa	<i>friend</i>	Rakau	<i>tree</i>
Hoa-riri	<i>enemy</i>	Manga	<i>branch (of a tree or river)</i>
Iwi	<i>tribe</i>	Whanga	<i>bay; mouth of a river</i>
Hapu	<i>sub-tribe</i>	Onepu	<i>sand</i>
Pa	<i>stockade; fort- ified place</i>	Hau	<i>wind</i>
Whare	<i>house</i>	Ua	<i>rain</i>
Kainga (in Sou- thern Maori Kaik)	<i>village</i>	Ra	<i>sun; day</i>
Whenua	<i>land</i>	Po	<i>night</i>
Oneone	<i>soil</i>	Marama	<i>moon; clear</i>
		Whetu	<i>star</i>

Moe	.....	sleep
Aroha	.....	love
Mana	.....	authority; power
Ae	.....	yes
Kahore	.....	no
Pai	.....	good
Kino	.....	bad
Nui	.....	large
Iti	.....	small
Roa	.....	long
Wera	.....	warm
Mate	.....	dead
Pouri	.....	dark
Tahi	.....	one
Rua	.....	two
Toru	.....	three
Wha	.....	four
Rima	.....	five
Ono	.....	six

Whitu	.....	seven
Waru	.....	eight
Iwa	.....	nine
Tekau	.....	ten
Rau	.....	hundred
Mano	.....	thousand
Whaka	.....	A prefixed causative, having the sense of 'to cause,' 'to make to do'; as <i>takoto</i> , to lie down; <i>whakatakoto</i> , to lay down.
Tena koe!	.....	how do you do? (Lit. here you are!)
Here-mai!	.....	welcome!
Tomo-mai!	.....	come in!
No hea koe?	.....	whence come you?
He aha tena?	.....	what is that?

SECTION IV.

ABSTRACT OF NEW ZEALAND HISTORY.

It is uncertain who was the first European to visit New Zealand. Claims have been put forward on behalf of both Frenchmen and Spaniards. In a Dutch atlas published before 1638 an indistinct line of coast is marked as 'Zelandia Nova.' Tasman, who saw N. Z. in 1642 thought it was part of a southern continent to which the name 'Staaten land' had been given, and therefore named it 'Staaten land.' When this error had been corrected, it was again named 'New Zealand.' The Maoris had called the N. Island *Te ika a Maui*, and the S. *Te Wai o Pounamu*; and the two together *Te Ao tea roa*.

Tasman anchored in Golden Bay (which he named Murderer's Bay) and coasted N. to Cape Maria van Diemen; but he never landed in the country.

Captain Cook paid five visits between 1769 and 1770, circumnavigating the islands and surveying the coast. On Jan. 30, 1770 he hoisted the flag of Great Britain on a hill overlooking Queen Charlotte's Sound, and called the Sound after the Queen.

Several French explorers arrived soon after Captain Cook. By the year 1800 some whalers and other adventurers had settled on the islands, and the numbers steadily increased during the early part of the present century.

In 1809 took place the massacre of the *Boyd* (see Rte. 2).

In 1814 the *Ang.* mission was established; in 1822 the *West.*, and in 1838 the *R. C.*

Between 1814 and 1827 a war raged through the Thames, Waipa,

and Waikato districts, between the followers of the two great chiefs, Hongi and Te Rauparaha.

In 1825 the N. Z. Company was formed in London, Lord Durham being the Chairman. The following year the Company landed a party of emigrants at the Bay of Islands, but of these only four resolved to remain, the others preferring to return home.

Kororareka may be said to have been founded in 1827 (see Rte. 2).

In 1831 an adventurous Frenchman, Baron de Thierry, attempted to found a monarchy of his own, and called himself 'King of N. Z.' His pretensions were never recognized, and he subsequently retired into private life, and died peaceably at Auckland in 1861. This attempt however led to a petition from several Maori chiefs at Kerikeri to King William IV, praying for the establishment of a British Protectorate. Mr. Busby was accordingly appointed British Resident in 1833. He attempted to form a Native State under the title of 'the United Tribes of N. Z.' with a flag, a Parliament, and a Constitution; but it was a failure.

In 1837 the 'N. Z. Association' was formed by Mr. E. Gibbon Wakefield, to colonize the country; and about the same time was formed the French Company, the Nanto-Bordelaise (see Rte. 22). The N. Z. Association speedily collapsed, but in its place rose the N. Z. Land Company (which was formed in London in 1839), which was chartered in 1841 under the name of the 'N. Z. Company.' Its object was to buy land from the Maoris and sell it in England to intending settlers. The price was to be sufficient to leave a surplus to pay the passage of emigrant labourers, to provide churches, schools and roads, and to give a fair profit to the shareholders. The Colonial Office and the Church Missionary Society, fearing that native troubles would arise, opposed the Company. At this time also speculators were streaming over from Sydney, and many of them claimed to have purchased large tracts of land. The Company accordingly despatched Colonel Wakefield in the ship *Tory* to N. Z., to buy land and arrange for the reception of the colonists who were to follow. He immediately took possession of Port Nicholson in the name of the Company. The first batch of emigrants arrived in Jan. 1840 in the *Aurora*. In the same month Capt. Hobson arrived as British Consul at the Bay of Islands, and soon afterwards the Treaty of Waitangi was executed (see p. [50]). In the following June the sovereignty, by right of discovery, was again separately proclaimed over the South and Stewart's Islands by Major Bunbury, by planting the flag at Cloudy Bay.

During the same year the French Admiral D'Urville arrived with the exploring ships *Astrolabe* and *Zélée*. This led to a formal assertion of the Queen's sovereignty by the establishment of police courts at various places where Europeans were settled. In August the French man-of-war *L'Aube*, and the emigrant ship *Compte de Paris* arrived at Akaroa (see Rte. 22).

On November 16, 1840 a Patent was signed by Her Majesty, creating New Zealand a separate Colony. The N. Island was named New Ulster, the S. New Munster and Stewart's Island New Leinster. Capt. Hobson was appointed Governor with a Legislative Council. The news was officially proclaimed at Auckland on May 3, 1841.

In the year 1841 were founded the settlements of Auckland (see Rte. 1), New Plymouth (see Rte. 12), and Nelson (see Rte. 18).

In 1842 Hobson died. During the same year, Mr. Spain was appointed to investigate the alleged purchases of land from the natives by the Company and others, and, when they proved to be satisfactory, to issue formal titles. Bp. Selwyn arrived in N. Z.

In 1843 occurred the first collision between the colonists and the Maoris—the Wairau Massacre (see Rte. 17). In December of that year arrived Capt. Fitzroy, the new Governor. He disallowed the alleged purchase of a large tract of land at New Plymouth (see Rte. 12).

In 1844 the second collision with the natives occurred, the flagstaff at Kororareka being cut down by Honi Heke and Kororareka burnt.

The Okaihau and Ohaewai pas were attacked unsuccessfully (see Rte. 2).

In 1845 Capt. Fitzroy was recalled, and Capt. (now Sir George) Grey appointed Governor. The Ruapekapeka pa was captured (see Rte. 2) and the war brought to an end.

In 1846 occurred a terrible landslip near Taupo, in which Te Heu Heu and fifty-four of his followers perished (see Rte. 10).

The same year troubles arose with the natives in the Hutt Valley. Te Rauparaha was arrested at Porirua and conveyed by sea to Wellington (see Rte. 15). Pahautanui was occupied by British troops. A military colony, formed of old pensioned soldiers enrolled in England as the 'N.Z. Fencibles' was planted near Auckland. This led to fresh troubles with reference to the purchase of land, and a long and bitter controversy arose between the Governor, the Colonial Office, and the Missionaries.

At this time a new Charter was granted to N. Z. by which the Colony was divided into two provinces New Ulster (the northern half of the N. Island) and New Munster (the rest of the Colony). Each Province was to have its own House of Representatives, Legislative Council, Governor, and Lt.-Governor. A General Assembly, consisting of a House of Representatives, a Legislative Council and Governor-in-Chief, was to govern the whole Colony. The operation of the Charter was however suspended.

Lord Grey, then Secretary of State for the Colonies, sent a despatch to the Governor, directing him to seize all the lands owned by the natives not actually occupied by them, in violation of the Treaty of Waitangi. This caused a vigorous protest from the Bishop, the Chief Justice, and others, and was never acted on.

In 1847 a native outbreak occurred at Wanganui, and Mrs. Gilfillan was murdered (see Rte. 14).

In 1848 Te Rauparaha died and was buried in the churchyard at Otaki (see Rte. 15). A serious earthquake occurred, doing much damage to Wellington. The Free Kirk settlers arrived in Otago, and founded Dunedin (see Rte. 25). Large purchases of land in the S. Island were peacefully made by the Government officers.

The Canterbury Association (see Rte. 22) was formed in London.

In 1853 the Constitutional Act—which has been a subject of constant discussion since 1848—came into operation. By it the Colony was divided into six Provinces, each with a Provincial Council

and a Superintendent. The General Assembly, which was to meet at Auckland, was to consist of a nominated Council and an elected House of Representatives. Thus N. Z. ceased to be a 'Crown Colony,' and became a 'Colony possessing responsible Government.' Native affairs, however, were still left under the charge of the Governor personally.

In 1854 the first Assembly was opened.

About this period gold was found in several districts of both Islands, and population increased rapidly.

In 1857 a large meeting of natives was held on the banks of the Waikato R., at which the chief Te Whero Whero was formally hailed as 'Potatau, King of N. Z.,' the old flag of the United Tribes being run up as a symbol of his sovereignty.

In 1858, the Province of Hawke's Bay was separated from Wellington (see Rte. 8).

In 1859 the Governor (Gore Browne) resolved that henceforth he would treat with individuals in purchasing native lands. The immediate result of this measure was the episode of the Waitara block the commencement of the first Taranaki War (see Rte. 12). From this time there was fighting in one part or another of the N. Island until 1870.

In this year the Province of Marlborough separated from Nelson (see Rte. 17).

In 1860 the Waireka pa was stormed (see Rte. 12). The war now extended into the Waikato district.

In 1861 Sir G. Grey returned as Governor, for a second term of office. Extensive gold fields were found in Otago.

Potatau died, and was succeeded by his son Tawhiao (see p. [51]). The Province of Southland separated from Otago (see Rte. 30).

The year 1863 is chiefly noted for various stirring incidents connected with the war. In May the ambush was laid at Oakura (see Rte. 13); in July the Governor ordered the natives residing between Auckland and the Waikato frontier either to swear allegiance to the Queen or to retire beyond the frontier; in November the Rangiriri pa was carried by Gen. Cameron; in December, Ngaruahia was occupied by the British troops (see Rte. 3).

Two important Acts were passed by the Colonial Parliament; the Suppression of Rebellion Act, whereby despotic power was given to the Government; and the Settlements Act, whereby land might be confiscated as a punishment for rebellion (see Rte. 11).

In 1864 occurred the incidents of the Orakau pa and the Gate pa (see Rte. 3). Hauhausism arose under the prophet or fanatic Te Ūa (see p. [51]). The Hauhaus made an attack on an entrenchment near New Plymouth, but were defeated. They then attempted to attack Wanganui, but were routed by the Wanganui Maoris (see Rte. 14).

The seat of Government was transferred from Auckland to Wellington (see Rte. 16).

In 1865 the Wereroa pa was captured (see Rte. 13). Major Brassey was relieved at Pipiriki (see Rte. 10). Mr. Volkner was murdered at Opotiki (see Rte. 7). On the E. coast several pas were captured, and Hauhausism was practically put an end to in that district. The chief Te Kooti was captured, and exiled to the Chatham Islands (see Rte. 22).

Much gold was discovered on the W. coast of the S. Island.

In 1866 General Chute, who succeeded General Cameron, made his famous march from Wanganui to Taranaki (see Rte. 12). He also captured Te Ua. The Hauhaus were routed at Oamaru (see Rte. 8). The Imperial troops were gradually withdrawn from N. Z., by the orders of Lord Cardwell, then Secretary of State for War. Towards the end of the year, several engagements took place, both on the E. and W. coasts, between the Colonial forces under Colonel McDonnell and the Hauhaus.

In 1867, a Maori Representation Act was passed, whereby four Maoris were elected to the House of Representatives.

The Rly. between Lyttelton and Christchurch was opened (see Rte. 22).

In 1868, Te Kooti escaped from the Chatham Islands. Towards the end of the year there was some desultory fighting in both E. and W. On November 7, occurred the 'Poverty Bay Massacre' (see Rte. 7). On December 30, the Colonial forces and Maori allies attacked Te Kooti at Ngatapa, near Gisborne, and captured the pa, but Te Kooti escaped. A price was set upon his head. He took refuge for some time in the Upper Waikato district, but afterwards returned to the E. Coast. He was finally amnestied in 1883.

In this year the Province of Westland separated from Canterbury (see Rte. 19).

In 1870 was inaugurated the 'Public Works Policy,' by Sir Julius Vogel. Enormous sums of money were borrowed, and roads and railways made in every direction. In seven years the Colonial debt was increased by thirteen millions.

In 1876 the Provinces were abolished. The Colony was at the same time divided into counties, each possessing a County Council.

In 1881 occurred the last Maori trouble worthy of mention. Te Whiti, a native prophet, commenced holding a series of large meetings, and his followers ploughed up some land which was said to belong to European settlers. A force of 2,000 men was sent to arrest Te Whiti; after a short time he was set at liberty.

In 1883 Tawhiao was formerly reconciled with the Government. At the same time, a general amnesty was declared.

In 1892 the Earl of Glasgow was appointed Governor of N. Z.

SECTION V.

GOVERNMENT, POPULATION RELIGION AND EDUCATION.

The Constitution of N. Z. is intended to be an imitation of that of the mother country, so far as circumstances will permit. The Governor is appointed by the Crown. The Parliament consists of

two Houses. The members of the Legislative Council are nominated by the Governor, on the advice of the ministers; in future appointments will be for seven years only. The honorarium is £100 per session. The number of councillors is unlimited; at present there are forty-five. The House of Representatives consists of seventy European and four Maori members; the N. Island returning thirty European members, the S. forty. Auckland, Wellington, Christchurch and Dunedin each return three members; other electoral districts one each. Parliaments are triennial; the honorarium is at present £100 per session and £50 for expenses. Manhood suffrage is the law; but the agitation in favour of female suffrage is growing stronger each year. A ministry never lasts more than three years; few so long. The Executive Council consists of the Governor and the Ministers; the Ministers also form the Cabinet.

Wellington is the seat of government; the Governor has also a residence at Auckland; and there are Government offices for local matters at each of the larger towns.

The provision for local government in N.Z. is more complete than in England. Every County has its Council, every town its Corporation; small villages have Town Boards. There are also Road Boards, River Boards, and Harbour Boards.

For the Administration of Justice there are a Supreme Court, District Courts, and Magistrate's Courts. The Chief Justice resides at Wellington; the four Puisne Judges at Auckland, Wellington, Christchurch and Dunedin; they hold Circuit Courts at smaller places. There are five District Court Judges, and twenty-eight salaried Resident Magistrates. Ten of these are also Wardens of Goldfields. Besides these, there is a Native Land Court, for the purpose of investigating title to land according to Native custom, and issuing Crown Grants.

The Defence Force consists of the Permanent Artillery and Torpedo Corps; and the auxiliary force of Volunteer Cavalry, Mounted Rifles, Naval Artillery, Field Artillery, Engineers and Rifle Companies.

The Population, according to the census of 1891, was as follows:—

N. Island and adjacent Islands, exclusive of Maoris	281,455
S. Island, Stewart's Island and adjacent Islands "	344,913
Chatham Islands (exclusive of Natives)	271
Kermadec Islands	19
Total for the Colony (exclusive of Maoris)	626,658
Maoris	41,953
Moriories at Chatham Islands	40
Total	668,651

About $\frac{2}{3}$ of the population were born in N.Z. and nearly all the rest in the United Kingdom, not $\frac{1}{3}$ being foreigners. There are about 4,500 Chinese. More than half the population are under the age of twenty-one.

All religions are tolerated and no state aid is given to any; but in some special settlements (such as Canterbury and Otago) land

was reserved as an endowment for religious purposes at the foundation of the settlement; and in some instances the Government in former times granted lands for Church purposes. The number of places of worship is enormous; every building, however tiny, belonging to any denomination being usually spoken of as a 'Church.' There are thus about 1,200 churches besides 400 schoolrooms used for worship. The principal denominations are as follows:

Anglicans	about	250,000
Presbyterians	"	140,000
Roman Catholics	"	87,000
Wesleyans	"	53,000
Baptists	"	15,000
Salvationists	"	10,000

There are six Anglican Dioceses—Auckland, Waiapu, Wellington, Nelson, Christchurch and Dunedin; in the Roman Catholic Church there is an Archdiocese of Wellington, and Dioceses of Auckland, Christchurch and Dunedin. The Presbyterian Church is divided into the *Presbyterian Ch. of Otago and Southland*, which includes those Provincial Districts; and the *Presbyterian Ch. of N.Z.* which includes the rest of the Colony.

The University of N.Z. is merely an examining body; but there are affiliated colleges at Auckland, Christchurch and Dunedin. There are about twenty-four high or secondary schools; and elementary schools maintained by Government in every village, in which the instruction is free, compulsory (where practicable) and secular. There are also private elementary schools, most of which belong to the Roman Catholics.

INDUSTRIES OF THE COLONY.

Crops. The Northern part of the N. Island is the only district in which the traveller will find crops with which an Englishman is not familiar; such as tobacco, sorghum, oranges, and vines. In other parts he will find wheat (400,000 acres, yielding 10,000,000 bus.), oats (325,000 acres yielding 11,000,000 bus.), barley (25,000 acres, yielding 700,000 bus.), and peas (10,000 acres yielding 250,000 bus.). There are also 425,000 acres under turnips; besides large cultivations of potatoes rape, mangolds, and carrots. All English grasses do well.

Sheep and Cattle. There are about 19,000,000 sheep—Merinos, Lincolns, Leicesters, and Southdowns and various crossbreeds. Nearly 2,000,000 sheep and lambs are annually frozen and exported; and the value of the wool annually exported exceeds £4,000,000.

There are eight woollen factories, employing about 1,200 hands.

There are about 850,000 head of cattle, and an annual export of 100,000 cwt. of frozen beef. The dairy industry is growing rapidly; there are already eighty cheese and butter factories, the value of the products exported being £250,000.

Frozen Meat. The first vessel containing a cargo of frozen meat arrived in London in 1881. In 1882 the yearly export from N.Z. was valued at £19,339, in 1891 it had risen to £1,194,724. This trade

furnishes one of the most remarkable instances of the application of a scientific principle to commerce. The sheep-farmers in N. Z. did not know what to do with their surplus stock. They boiled them down for tallow, or they preserved them in tins. But there was often very little profit on either of those processes, and both together failed to meet the requirements of the case. Meanwhile the great cities in Great Britain were in chronic want of meat, and especially of mutton. One day it was discovered that mutton could be sent from N. Z. to Great Britain in a frozen state without losing anything in quality. The process is in principle this: Air, at the ordinary natural temperature, is compressed to, say, one-third of its natural bulk in pipes over which cold water is continuously poured. It is then let into a chamber with walls impervious to heat. The sudden expansion of the air to its natural bulk again reduces it to one-third of its former temperature, producing an intense cold within the chamber, and this process being constantly maintained by steam-power the temperature within the chamber is permanently kept down to a point corresponding to the compression of the air. The carcasses of the sheep, ready dressed for sale, are placed in the chamber, where they are frozen quite hard, and remain entirely unchanged until they are landed in England. There they are slowly thawed, and are not only as wholesome, but as palatable and as agreeable in appearance as the best English mutton.

Fruit. Vines, Oranges, Bananas, and English fruits are grown; but the traveller will probably be surprised not to see the fruit industry more developed than it is.

The Timber industry is of course an important one. There are about 140 saw mills, employing 3,200 hands. It is much to be regretted that whilst bush falling proceeds so rapidly, little is done in the way of replanting. The timber annually exported is about £180,000 in value.

Native Flax or more correctly N. Z. hemp (*Phormium tenax*). The name *Phormium tenax* is derived from the Greek word *phormos* (a basket) and Latin *tenax* (strong). Sir James Hector, in Appendix I. to his work on the *Phormium Tenax as a Fibrous Plant* (1889), gives fifty-five different names as applied to the *Phormium* plant by the Maoris, but says it is doubtful if more than twenty marked varieties can be distinguished. The *Phormium* plant grows in bunches or groups of plants or shoots; each shoot has five leaves. Ten of these shoots go to a bunch on the average, or, in all, fifty leaves. These vary, according to the soil, from 5 ft. to 10 ft. in length, and each consists of a double-bladed leaf, which, when closed, is from 2 inches to 4 inches wide. The history of the industry is disappointing. The Maoris have long used the fibre in making their mats and baskets; but, though many efforts have been made, no one has succeeded in inventing a machine by which it can be remuneratively woven into fabric. Specimens of linen made from it may be seen in the Wellington Museum and elsewhere. It is now used only for rope and twine, much of the twine employed in American reaping machines being made from it. About 1890 the export increased enormously, but unfortunately much that was exported was ill-

prepared, which has prejudicially affected the market price in London. The annual export at present is about 16,000 tons, valuing £280,000.

Perhaps the industry which will most interest the tourist is the **Kauri gum**. The beautiful kauri trees which are still found in some parts of the N. at one time extended over a large part of the Province of Auckland. The resin or gum which they contained fell into the ground as the trees died, and (not being soluble in water) has remained there ever since. Men go about with spears which they drive into the ground, and if they find small pieces of gum sticking to the end of the spear, they commence digging, and are often rewarded by coming on large lumps of gum. Less valuable gum is also taken from standing trees. About 4,000 men are engaged in this employment, the earnings of a skilful digger amounting to nearly £4 a week. The clearest specimens (which much resemble amber) are made into ornaments (Auckland is the best place for purchasing them), but the gum is principally used in varnishes. About 8,000 tons, amounting to £400,000 in value, are annually exported; the price varies according to quality, from £100 per ton downwards. The unsatisfactory point about the industry is the thought that in a comparatively few years it must come to an end.

Sea-fishing is not so important an industry as might have been expected, considering how abundant the supply is. About 700 persons (many of them being natives of countries bordering on the Mediterranean) are employed in it.

Although many valuable **Minerals** are found in N.Z., with the exception of gold and coal, few have been worked to any extent. Gold was found in Coromandel in 1852 and in Otago in 1853. The first payable gold-field opened was that at Collingwood in 1857. The 'gold rush' in Otago took place in 1861-2, in Westland in 1864, and at the Thames in 1867. Altogether, gold to the value of nearly £50,000,000 has been exported from N.Z., the average value of annual export at present exceeding £1,100,000.

The history of gold-mining in N.Z. as elsewhere may be divided into periods. In the early days, as soon as a gold-field had been discovered, men went out and took up claims singly or in small parties, equipped only with shovels and 'cradles'; dug up the sand by the rivers, and washed it for the grains of gold it contained. That time soon passed, and other methods had to be resorted to, for which more capital—supplied either by companies or the government—was necessary. The two principal methods are *deep alluvial working* and *quartz reefing*. For the former, water is brought from a height through channels called 'head races,' which sometimes exceed 60 miles in length, and sent by a hose in torrents against the side of a hill with such tremendous force that stones, earth and shingles are washed down, and carried along tail races or sludge channels for some distance. These have false bottoms; and as the earth and stones are hurried onwards, the tiny fragments of gold fall through the interstices of the false bottom, into a trough below, whence they are carefully taken. One drawback to this method is that after a time the débris accumulates to such an extent as to

prevent the further washing away of the auriferous earth; but this is overcome by an ingenious application of the pressure of water forcing the earth and stones up through a pipe, to a fluming at a higher level. This is known as Perry's system, having been introduced by a man of that name. Hydraulic sluicing on a somewhat similar principle has been in use in California for some years.

Although the area still to be thus worked is very large, and will last for many years, it seems probable that quartz reefing will be a more permanent industry even than the deep alluvial working. In visiting a quartz mine, the tourist should first go down the mine (orders are usually obtainable without difficulty); the underground galleries of white quartz are clean, dry, and often very pretty. He should then inspect the operations above ground, by which the stone is crushed to powder, and the precious metal separated by means of quicksilver and blankets.

The tourist will have good opportunities of inspecting alluvial workings at Kumara (Westland), Lawrence and Naseby (Otago) and elsewhere; and quartz reefing at Reefton (Westland), Thames (Auckland) and Wakatipu (Otago).

All the gold found in the N. Island contains a considerable percentage of silver, but beyond this very little silver has been worked. The value of copper exported amounts to £18,000; of antimony £40,000; of manganese £54,000 and of chrome £38,000. Lead, iron, cinnabar and tin are scarcely worked.

The principal coal mines are on the W. coast of the S. Island. The average annual output amounts to about 700,000 tons. It is, however, nearly all consumed in the Colony and coal is also imported.

LITERATURE.

The books that treat of subjects connected with N. Z. may be counted by hundreds. Most of them may be seen at the N. Z. Government Office, 13 Victoria Street, London, S.W., which is open to visitors. A list of all published up to 1889 may be found in *The Literature relating to N. Z.* by Collier. The following are but a few of the more important ones. Of many of them free use has been made in compiling this Handbook.

N. Z. Generally.

N. Z., Hochstetter.

N. Z., Thomson.

Transactions of the N. Z. Institute, Vols. 1-25.

Fifty years in N. Z., E. Wakefield.

Handbook of N. Z., Sir J. Hector, K.C.M.G., F.R.S.

N. Z. Official Handbook for 1892.

The Colony of N. Z., Gisborne.

Handy Guide to N. Z., Brett.

Geology.

Annual Reports of the Geological Department, Vols. 1-22.

Geology of Canterbury and Westland, Sir J. von Haast, K.C.M.G.

Geology of Otago, Hutton and Ulrich.

Flora.

- Flora of N. Z., Sir Joseph Hooker, K.C.S.I.
- Forest Flora of N. Z., Kirk.
- Grasses of N. Z., Buchanan.
- Ferns of N.Z., Field.
- Ferns and Fern Allies of N. Z., Thomson.

Fauna.

- Birds of N. Z., Sir Walter Buller, K.C.M.G., F.R.S.
- N. Z. Fishes, Hector and Hutton.
- N. Z. Insects, Hudson.

Maoris.

- Old N. Z., Maning.
- History and doings of the Maoris, Gudgeon.
- Angus's New Zealanders.
- Polynesian Mythology, Sir George Grey, K.C.B.

History.

- History of N. Z., Rusden.
- Early History of N. Z., Sherrin and Wallace.
- Defenders of N. Z., Gudgeon.
- Maori History, M'Donnell.
- School History of N. Z., Moss.

Sport.

- Trout Fishing in N. Z., Spackman.

Mountaineering.

- High Alps of N. Z., Green.
- With Axe and Rope in N. Z. Alps, Mannering.
- Aorangi, Ross.
- The Lake District of Otago, Ross.

Industries.

- N. Z. Resources, Griffin.
- Handbook of N. Z. Mines.

Local affairs.

- Auckland Almanack, Brett.
- History of Taranaki, Wells.
- Wellington Directory, Stone.
- Nelson Almanack.
- The Golden Coast of N. Z., Reid.
- Picturesque Dunedin, Bathgate.
- Southland, Trail and Scandrett.

Note.—Travellers making a prolonged stay at any place are recommended to purchase the local Almanack. Every town possesses at least one. They are usually carefully prepared, and kept up to date.

NEW ZEALAND.

ROUTE 1.

AUCKLAND AND NEIGHBOURHOOD.

[An asterisk is attached to the names of places to which it is desired to call special attention.]

AUCKLAND.

Hotels: *Grand; Albert; Prince Arthur; Star; Imperial; Waverley* (at the Rly. Station); and many others.

Clubs: *Northern; Auckland* (both residential).

Churches: *Ang.; Pres.; R.C.; West.; Cong.; Bapt.*; and others. There is also a *Synagogue*.

Pop.: 60,000, including suburbs.

Conveyances. *Tramways* connect the city with Ponsonby and Newton on the W., and with Newmarket and Kyber Pass on the E. *Hackney carriages:* Within a radius of 3 m. from the Post Office: with one horse 1s. 6d. for a quarter of an hour; 2s. for half an hour; 1s. extra for every additional quarter of an hour. With two horses, 2s. for a quarter of an hour; 2s. 6d. for half an hour; 4s. for three quarters of an hour; 5s. for an hour; 1s. 3d. extra for every additional quarter of an hour. Beyond the three mile radius: one horse, 5s. an hour and 1s. 3d. extra for every additional quarter of an hour; two horses, 6s. an hour and 1s. 6d. extra for every additional quarter of an hour. Between 8 p. m. and 8 a. m., half fares in addition. 100 lbs. of luggage free.

Shops. There are good shops for native curios, ornaments of kauri

gum (which are remarkably pretty and characteristic), inlaid woods, and photographs.

HISTORICAL SKETCH.

The view of Auckland from the sea is very striking. It is situated on the Hauraki Gulf, which is dotted over with little islands, reminding the traveller of the far-famed Isles of Greece; and as the isthmus on which the city stands is but 8 m. wide, it has frequently been called the Corinth of N. Z. The most characteristic feature of the scene is the number of extinct volcanoes which appear in all directions. There are at least 63 points of eruption within a ten-mile radius of Auckland. The district must have passed through a long period of volcanic activity. At one time (so geologists say) there were a large number of tuff volcanoes in eruption; one of these was close to where Queen Street now stands. The small volcanic hills, composed of scoria, probably in most cases date from a later period when the force had diminished. In removing part of these hills for road-metalling (an act of barbarism of which the Auckland people have more than once been guilty) the remains of trees which must have been growing there previous to the formation of the hills have been discovered. These trees were of the same varieties as those still growing in the neighbourhood. In this, as in all other volcanic districts, patches of the richest

and of the poorest soil are to be found side by side.

On Sept. 19, 1840, the British flag was hoisted at Auckland, Governor Hobson having decided to make it the capital of the New Colony. In 1846 it became the residence of the Lieutenant-Governor of New Ulster. In 1853, when the Provinces were founded, it became the seat of the Government of the Province of Auckland. The Central Government was transferred to Wellington in 1864, and here as elsewhere Provincial government was abolished in 1876. The Provincial district covers an area of 17,000,000 acres.

Auckland was at one time greatly troubled by the Maori wars, but they are now long since things of the past. Several traces may be seen of the time when Auckland was garrisoned by Imperial troops.

The climate of Auckland is mild, warm, and somewhat relaxing. Spring and autumn are pleasanter seasons than summer.

BUILDINGS, PLACES OF INTEREST, &c.

Government House is a wooden structure, of no architectural pretensions, standing in charming grounds amidst groves of oaks and pines. The Governor usually resides here for a short time each year.

Close by is the **Supreme Court**, a pleasing red-brick building in the Tudor style.

None of the Chs. contain anything to detain the traveller long; *St. Mary's* (Ang.) Cathedral at Parnell will when finished be a fine wooden Ch.; the combination of native timbers being decidedly good. *St. Paul's*, the oldest Ch. at Auckland, now in process of rebuilding, contains many monuments to the memory of early Governors and of soldiers who fell in the war. *St. Patrick's* (R. C.) Cathedral has a well-proportioned stone spire, but the edifice itself is poor. Some of the Chs. of other denominations are pretentious, but tasteless.

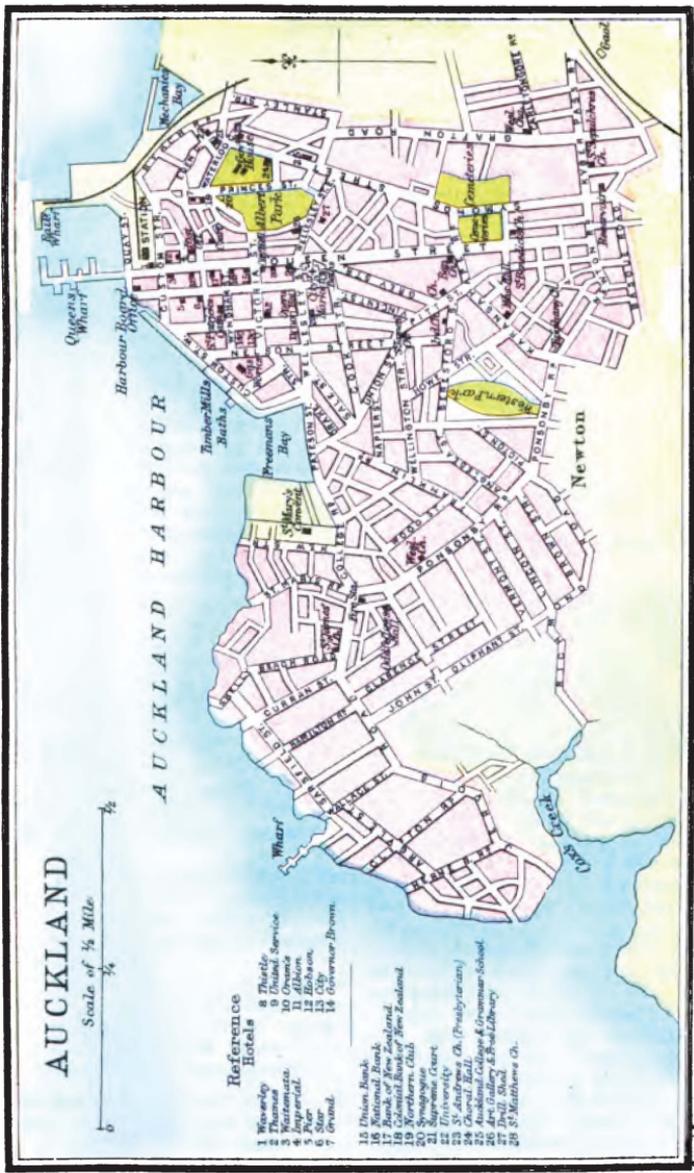
The *University College*, the *Grammar School*, and the other educational institutions may be visited by those who take a special interest in the

subject, but none possess any architectural beauty.

The **Art Gallery and Free Library*** should certainly be seen; the collection of pictures, both oil and water colours, is far better than the tourist would expect to find, chiefly owing to the munificence of Sir G. Grey and the late Mr. M^cKelvie. The books and MSS. which have been presented by Sir G. Grey are of great value and interest, some of them being priceless.

Tourists who take an interest in history should ask to see the *Thurloe Papers*. Amongst these will be found an original letter from Sir Philip Meadows (one of Cromwell's Secretaries of State, and at that time his Ambassador to the king of Sweden) addressed to 'the Right Hon^{ble} John Thurloe, Esq., Principal Secretary of State, &c.' It is dated from Oldsloe, four leagues from Lubec, July 12, 1658. The following passage may be regarded as a triumph of diplomatic style of correspondence:—

'He' (the king of Sweden) 'spoke to me concerning y^e promised supply of moneys out of England and asked me if I had anything in instruction concerning a strict alliance to be made between my master and him. I formed my answer suitable to my orders and in my apology to the former I remember one passage which I know not whither' (sic) 'I do well to mention. And yet the king has several times formerly spoke to me to the same purpose Although I never took notice of it in my letters as not pertinent to my business and not knowing whither (sic) displeasing or no to His Highness. Excusing the non-payment of these moneys from the dissolution of the Parliament before provision was made for the supply of my master's treasury. The king told me he wondered His Highness my master so prudent and experienced a Prince took no more effectual care to extricate himself out of those necessities and that he who had achieved so many brave actions though accompanied with manifold dangers should now at last scruple that which would be his best and most visible security. This he spoke in reference to assuming the title of King.'



AUCKLAND

Scale of 1/4 Mile



Reference Hotels

- 1. Waverley
- 2. Victoria
- 3. Victoria
- 4. Imperial
- 5. Piner
- 6. Grand
- 8. Thistle
- 9. Grand Service
- 10. Albion
- 11. Albion
- 12. Robson
- 13. Victoria
- 14. Governor Brown

- 15. Union Bank
- 16. National Bank
- 17. Colonial Bank
- 18. Colonial Bank of New Zealand
- 19. Northern Club
- 20. Savings Bank
- 21. University
- 22. University
- 23. St. Andrew's Ch. (Presbyterian)
- 24. Auckland College & Grammar School
- 25. Art Gallery & Book Library
- 26. St. M. School
- 27. St. Matthew's Ch.

1
1
1
1
t
s
s
v
I
v
a
t

si
si
a:
T
fc

a
T

tc
(/f
fu
co
de
Cl
bu
to
an
St.
wo
th
th
pr
Se
in
wh

In the same collection may be seen a Treaty dated $\frac{1}{2}$ July, 1659, between the English and the Dutch, confirming the Treaty entered into between Oliver Cromwell and the Protestant Powers. It is signed by Lawrence (President of the Council), five members (of whom Gen. Lambert is one), and three Foreign Ambassadors. This is believed to be the only treaty that was made by England during the brief Protectorate of Richard Cromwell.

There is a large number of mediæval MSS., some of them being exquisitely illuminated; amongst them are—a copy of the Gospels in Greek, certainly not later than the tenth century—a folio MS. Bible in 2 vols. supposed to be possibly the copy from which Gutenberg and Fust set their type. In the binding of the back of the book Sir George Grey found a slip of paper inserted, with a Latin inscription of which the following is a translation:—

“In the year of Christ 1450 at Mains in Germany John Goudenburg with two partners first founded type, arranged it, and fitted it to a press to such great amazement of all and to such furtherance of the public advantage that he wrote on the machine, “It prints in a day as much as can scarce be written in a year.”

—a MS. in French translated from the Latin for Philip le Beau by Jehan de Maun, author of the *Roman de la Rose*.

There are also several early printed works, amongst them a first edition of the *Fæerie Queen* (1590), published by Ponsonby, and a copy of Pinson's *Chaucer*.

In cases in the Art Gallery is a splendid collection of Maori and other curios. The stone image brought in the Arawa canoe from Hawaiki (see p. [46]) is amongst these.

The *Museum** is well worthy of a visit. Travellers who have just arrived in the Colony should examine carefully the various specimens of Maori Art, especially the elaborately carved war canoe and

house. The Museum also contains a valuable collection of books on subjects connected with N. Z. The Curator, Mr. T. Cheeseman, is always kind and courteous in showing his treasures to visitors.

The principal Park at Auckland is the *Domain* (100 acres). It contains a Botanical Garden, a picturesquely situated cricket-ground, and many pleasant shady walks. *Albert Park* is a pretty garden of 15 acres in the town, near Govt. House. In Ponsonby is a small Park called *Western Park*.

EXCURSIONS.

There are very many delightful excursions to be made from Auckland both by land and water. Tourists will do well to remain here at least for some days.

(1) To *Mount Eden*. The first excursion every tourist should take is to the summit of Mount Eden, an extinct grass-grown volcano (644 ft. high). It is possible to drive to the summit in a cab; omnibuses pass close to the foot; and it is less than an hour's walk from the Post Office. The *Panorama** is magnificent. The mountain itself is terraced; the terraces being really the remains of native fortifications made in the days of the tribal wars when the crater of the volcano formed a strong pa. Traces of its occupation are found in the quantities of shells which occur in heaps close under the grass—the remains of the shell-fish which formed the staple food of the Maoris. The traveller will notice the city itself, with the suburbs of Newmarket, Remuera, Parnell, Ponsonby and Newton; the islands of Tiri Tiri, Waiheke, Ponui, Motutapu and Rangitoto; Mount Albert, Mount Hobson, Mount Smart, One Tree Hill, Mount Victoria, and other extinct volcanoes; the Frith of Thames with Tamaki River and Hobson Bay; and

to the West the Manukau Harbour and the Waitakerei Ranges. If the traveller is walking or going by cab, he may return by Remuera.

(2) To Parnell. Tourists who have taken an interest in the life and work of *Bishop Selwyn* will not omit to visit the suburb of Parnell, close to the city. At the upper end of the Manukau Road, on the left-hand side, is *Bishop's Court*, which was built by Bishop Selwyn. It is a pleasant, old-fashioned building, commanding from the windows a beautiful view of the harbour. The *Library*, which is worthy of inspection, contains a number of volumes presented by the Rt. Hon. W. E. Gladstone, Bp. Selwyn, Sir W. Martin, and others. The ground on the opposite side of the road was purchased by Bp. Selwyn as a site for a Cathedral. Beyond this, on the main road, is the *Ch. of England Grammar School*, founded by Bp. Selwyn in 1859. Beyond Bishop's Court, on the left, is *St. Stephen's Avenue*; in it is situated a boarding school for native boys, built partly on ground given by the Government for the purpose, partly on ground purchased by the Bishop. About 50 boys are educated and maintained here, and fitted for various professions and trades. On the opposite side of the avenue is the Parnell *Orphan Home*, one of the most successful orphanages in the Colony. Near at hand are the temporary quarters of *St. John's Theological College*. Further down the avenue, on a slight eminence overlooking the harbour, is the little *Chapel of St. Stephen, Taurarua*, with a pretty cemetery attached. In this chapel was drawn up by Bp. Selwyn, Sir W. Martin, and other members of the General Synod, the constitution of the Anglican ch. of N. Z., which has been taken as a model in many other Colonies. In the Bay are to be seen the quaint old residences once occupied by Sir W. Martin, the first Chief Justice, and Mr. Swainson, the first Attorney-

General, of N. Z.; it is still known as *Judge's Bay*.

A pleasant drive of 6 m. through the picturesque suburb of Remuera leads to *St. John's College*, the scene of Bp. Selwyn's first labours in Auckland. It is now a Ch. of England boarding-school. Some of the buildings are unfortunately in bad repair. The beautiful little *Chapel** which stands in the grounds contains interesting memorial windows and tablets to the memory of various missionaries to N. Z. and Melanesia.

About 1 m. further, on the beach, is *Kohimarama*, the original headquarters of the Melanesian mission. Here Bp. Patterson (who was consecrated in St. Paul's Ch., Auckland), lived for some years when not on his island trips. When the headquarters of the mission were transferred to Norfolk Island, the buildings were utilized as an industrial school.

Near Kohimarama is a little ruined Ch. (*St. Thomas'*) built by Bp. Selwyn, one of the first he erected. The ivy-covered walls give the building a quaint old-world appearance.

(3) To the North Shore. Crossing the harbour by the ferry (which runs every half-hour; return fare 6d.) the traveller lands at the charming little suburb of *Devonport* (*Hotel: Masonic*), amidst peaceful villas and gardens. From this an omnibus goes to *Lake Takapuna* (4 m.), a lovely spot. The *Lake Hotel* is a pleasant place to stop at. The Lake is of curious formation, being of fresh water, and of great depth, although close to the sea, and having no visible inlet or outlet.

The *Flagstaff Hill* close to Devonport is worth ascending, as the view from the summit is very fine. There is a large *Dock at Calliope Point*; it is 500 ft. long, 80 ft. broad, and 33 ft. deep.

(4) To the Thames (see Rte. 3).

(5) To Rangitoto. Tourists can hire a small steamer or sailing-boat.

The distance is about 5 m. The climb is a very stiff one; the mountain, though only 960 ft. high, being composed of scoria and lava; but the view from the top is worth the labour, and the loss of a pair of boots, which are sure to be cut to pieces in the scramble.

(6) To the **Great Barrier**. Steamers run weekly; taking about 7 hours, through the calm waters of the Hauraki Gulf. The island is mountainous, about 20 m. long by 12 broad at its widest part. Small inns exist in nearly every bay, where the accommodation is simple but comfortable. All the W. coast of the island is indented by a number of beautiful bays, the scenery being exquisite. *Port Fitz Roy* (the largest) is a land-locked harbour, large enough to contain the whole British fleet. Boats may be obtained at the various settlements; most of the excursions are made by water. The sea-fishing is excellent.

(7) To **Waiwera**. 30 m. by steamer; 20 m. by road from Lake Takapuna. Tourists are recommended to go by one way and return by the other. The road is good, though not pretty; the steam up the *Hauraki Gulf*, between the Islands, is very pleasant. At Waiwera is a large Hotel, close to the warm baths. (See p. [24]). It is also a good spot for sea and river bathing.

Many of the steamers which go to Waiwera proceed to *Mahurangi Heads*, about 10 m. further. The principal charm of this trip is the sight of the pohutakawa bush, with which the headlands and ridges are densely covered. At Christmas time this is all one sheet of brilliant crimson.

(8) To **Onehunga**. 8 m. Rly.; 7 m. Road. Trains and omnibuses are frequent. The route passes across the isthmus, between pleasant villas

and small farms, and comes down to the somewhat sleepy little town of *Onehunga*, at the upper end of the *Manukau Harbour*. Efforts have been made to establish works for ironsand here.

(9) To the **Waitakeri Falls**. 22 m. It is possible to go by rail to *Henderson* (14 m.) and then drive on; but the pleasantest way is to drive from Auckland, and picnic at the lovely Falls. Tourists can also stay at Henderson, or at the small Inn at the Falls, and make excursions in the neighbourhood; the walks and drives near the W. coast being very pretty. Tourists who do not intend to go further N. can here take the opportunity of seeing some kauri trees growing; there are several in the immediate neighbourhood of the Falls; and 4 m. further on, along the W. coast road, is a small but beautiful kauri forest containing many trees ranging up to 16 ft. in diameter.

(10) To the **Nihotapu Falls**. These are quite as beautiful, and more accessible. The road is the same as that to *Waitakeri* as far as *Waikomiti* (12 m.). From this the road continually ascends for nearly 6 m.; the tourist can drive to within half a mile of the Falls.

The two excursions may be made together; but in that case it is advisable to spend the night at Henderson.

(11) To the **Kermadec and Three Kings Islands**. These Islands, like those to the far south (see Rte. 30), are occasionally visited by the Government Steamer *Hinemoa*. Travellers desiring to obtain permission to go by her must apply to the Minister of Marine at Wellington.

The Kermadecs are inhabited by one family; the Three Kings are uninhabited.

ROUTE 2.

THE FAR NORTH; AUCKLAND TO WHANGAREI, THE BAY OF ISLANDS, HOKIANGA AND KAIPARA.

This is for some reasons the most characteristic trip in N. Z. It includes a visit to kauri forests and gum fields, Native districts of special interest, and historical sites. The scenery is rich and varied. On the other hand, as it is the warmest part of the country, it is not recommended in the height of summer; and, being much out of the beaten track, the travelling is necessarily somewhat rough. It is possible, leaving Auckland on Friday evening, spending Saturday night at *Kawakawa*, Monday at *Russell*, Tuesday at *Hokianga*, Wednesday at *Omapiri*, and Thursday at *Dargaville*, to complete the tour in a week; but at least ten days are necessary in order to make it enjoyable.

The distances and means of transit are as follows:—

88 m. Sea . . .	Whangarei.
4 m. Rly. . . .	Kamo.
36 m. Coach . . .	Kawakawa.
8 m. Rly. . . .	Opua.
4 m. Stm. launch	Russell.
38 m. Coach . . .	Horeke.
22 m. Stm. launch	Omapiri.
25 m. Ride . . .	Opnaki.
16½ m. Rly. . . .	Dargaville.
65 m. Stm. launch	Helensville.
38 m. Rly. . . .	Auckland.

AUCKLAND TO WHANGAREI. 88 m. sea. The steamers of the *Northern S.S. Co.* start from Auckland every Tuesday and Friday evening. There is also a road, by *Waivera*, but no coach beyond *Mahurangi*.

[Another route is by sea from Auckland to the Bay of Islands. Steamers every Monday evening. The tourist then lands at *Russell*, and goes by *Opua* to *Kawakawa*.]

Whangarei.

Hotel: *Settlers'.*

Churches: *Ang.; Pres.; R. C.; West.; and Plym. Br.*

A small town, of little interest, in a rich farming district. The vineyards and orange gardens in the neighbourhood are worthy of inspection. There are also some coal mines, both here and at *Kamo*. If a stay be made here, several excursions may be made in the neighbourhood; amongst others, to the *Great Wairua Fall*, about 14 m. distant.

WHANGAREI TO KAMO. 4 m. Rly. Trams run in connexion with the steamers, and at other times when required.

Kamo.

Hotel: *Harrison's.*

A small settlement, chiefly noted for its coal mines.

KAMO TO KAWAKAWA. 36 m. coach. *Brindon's* coach leaves *Kamo* on Saturday mornings, and arrives at *Kawakawa* about five o'clock the same evening.

The country is undulating, with fertile spots at intervals, partly open, partly bush, and in some places very barren. Many kauri gum-diggers work in this district.

7 m. **Hikurangi.**

Hotel: *Rolleston's.*

[A halt may be made here, for an excursion into the magnificent kauri forest of *Pukipuhi*, about 10 m. distant. Horses may be hired at the Hotel.]

About 15 m. the traveller will observe on the rt. the hill of *Ruapekapeka*, on which once stood *Kawiti's* famous pa.

The pa measured 170 yards by 70, and was of extraordinary strength, each hut being a complete fortress in itself, strongly stockaded all round, with heavy timbers sunk deep in the ground and

placed close to each other, few of them being less than 1 ft. in diameter and many considerably more, besides having a strong embankment thrown up behind them. Each hut had also a deep excavation close to it, forming a complete 'bomb-proof,' and was sufficiently large to contain several people, where at night they were completely sheltered from both shot and shell. In Dec. 1845 it was resolved to capture this pa, but so difficult was communication that nearly three weeks were spent in bringing the troops and guns from the bank of the Kawakawa river, 9 m. distant. The attacking force amounted to 1,173 English and 450 natives; the entire garrison of the pa did not exceed 500. On Jan. 10, 1846, after cannonading all day long, two small breaches were made in the stockade. The next day being Sunday, the garrison retired outside the pa for prayers; the English, finding what had taken place, pushed inside the palisades, captured the fort, and destroyed it. The fall of Buapekapeka brought to an end the war which had lasted from July, 1844, to Jan. 1846.

36 m. Kawakawa.

Hotel: *Star.*

Churches: *Ang.; Wesl.*

Pop.: 375.

A good place to stay for the night. The centre of a coal-mining district. The scenery in the neighbourhood, especially by the river, is very picturesque.

[An interesting Excursion may be made from here to the BAY OF ISLANDS*, which should not be omitted unless the traveller has already touched at the Bay of Islands on his way from Sydney. The scenery is lovely.]

KAWAKAWA to OPUA. 8 m. Rly.

On the opposite side of the river from Opua may be seen the site of the pa once belonging to the great Chief Pomare.

OPUA to RUSSELL. 4 m. steam launch.

Russell.

Hotel: *Duke of Marlborough.*

Churches: *Ang.; R.C.; Wesl.*

Pop.: 256.

This is the oldest town in N. Z.

In the eighteenth century the Bay was the resort of South Pacific Whalers and European desperadoes. The name, 'Bay of Islands,' was given by Captain Cook. Croset attempted to change its name to 'Bay of Treachery,' in consequence of the massacre of Marion Du Fresne and his party in 1772; but Cook's name happily prevailed. The native town was formerly known as Kororareka. In 1835 Mr. Busby was stationed here as 'British resident.' It was the seat of government from 1841 until the following year, when Auckland was founded. It is much to be regretted that so little is being done to utilize the rich land which exists in the interior. At present this lovely Bay is almost in a wild state, and its beauties are far less known than they ought to be.

In the *Churchyard* may be seen the Monuments to Tamati Waka Nene (who procured the signing of the Treaty of Waitangi by the Native Chiefs, see p. [50]) and to the Officers and men of H. M.'s forces who fell during the war of 1845.

From Russell several interesting excursions may be made.

(1) To the **Flagstaff Hill**. About half an hour's walk to the summit. The Flagstaff which formerly stood here was solemnly cut down by Honi Heke, in July, 1844, as a repudiation of British authority. This was the commencement of the 'Heke war.' The flagstaff was twice re-erected, and each time again cut down by Heke's followers. In the following year the settlement of Kororareka was evacuated, and subsequently burnt by the natives, with the exception of the Ang. and R. C. Chs. and the house of the R. C. Bishop.

The view over the harbour and the surrounding country is very fine. Across the Bay may be seen *Te Puna*, the oldest Mission Station in N. Z., established in 1814; now deserted.

(2) To Ounuora. A walk or ride

of about 4 m. leads to the summit (about 500 ft. in height). The view from there is magnificent.

(3) To **Waitangi Falls**. About 6 m. by water. Boats may be hired at Russell. In crossing the Bay, Pahia, an Ang. Miss. St. still used, the White Stone Obelisk and the Waitangi Hall, built by the Natives in commemoration of the famous Treaty (see p. [50]), may be observed on the l. On the rt., Victoria, the house of Mr. Busby, where the Treaty was signed in 1840. The Fall is exceedingly pretty; about 35 ft. in height.

(4) To **Keri-Keri**. 12 m. by water to the settlement; 2 m. further up the river to the Falls. A small steamer goes to the settlement and back every Saturday; rowing boats may also be obtained. The scenery is charming and the vegetation rich. At the settlement is shown the oldest house in N. Z., and a stone building once used as Mission store and a library by Bp. Selwyn. The Mission (the station of which was at one time called Gloucester) was established by Mr. Marsden in 1819. Close by was the scene of many of Hongi's terrible orgies.

The falls are about 95 ft. high and 20 yds. broad. Amongst the rich vegetation near them may be seen the crimson kowhai, said to be brought from Hawaiki.

(5) To **WHANGAROA**. 48 m. sea. Steamers every Tuesday evening.

Whangaroa.

Hotel: *Whangaroa*.

Churches: *Ang.; West.*

A splendid and beautiful harbour. Fine kauri forests still exist in the neighbourhood, but are rapidly being destroyed. Whangaroa was the scene of the massacre of the passengers and crew of the ship *Boyd* in 1809—in revenge for an insult committed to a native chief. In the neighbourhood, in the valley of the Kaeo

River, the first Wesleyan Mission was founded in 1822; but the missionaries were soon afterwards requested to retire during a tribal war.

KAWAKAWA TO HERD'S POINT, HO-KIANGA. 38 m. coach and 8 m. steam launch. Coach weekly (Tuesday). The scenery is of much the same character as that already passed through; mostly open country, but with more bush towards the end of the journey. Cultivation at intervals; large gum-fields.

10 m. **Pakeraka**. A pretty rural district, well cultivated.

16 m. *Ohaeawai Telegraph Station*.

[A branch road leads to Ohaeawai, a small settlement with an Inn, and Maori Ch. (Ang.) and school. Here are the ruins of the Ohaeawai pa. This was strongly fortified by three rows of palisading, a fosse 5 feet deep, underground passages, and screens of flax. It was attacked by Colonel Despard with a force of upwards of 600 English and 250 Maoris and 4 guns on June 24, 1845, and evacuated by the garrison on July 10. The English loss was 34 dead and 66 wounded.]

19 m. *Waimate*, an old Mission Station, may be seen on the rt.

21½ m. **Omapiri Lake**.

Close to the lake stood the Okaihau pa, a strong fortress with two palisades and a ditch. It was attacked by Colonel Hulme and a force of 800 men (English and Native) on May 8, 1845, but was found impregnable without artillery. The English loss amounted to 14 killed and 39 wounded.

22 m. **Okaihau**. A thriving settlement of farmers from Nova Scotia.

The road after this passes through a wild, volcanic district, of no special interest.

38 m. **Horeke**, on the Hokianga R. Here the coach stops, and the traveller proceeds by steam launch. The scenery along the river is remarkably pretty.

3 m. **Kohukohu.** A small settlement and saw-mill.

8 m. **Herd's Point.** A good place to halt for the night.

Hotel: *Masonic.*

Pop.: 120.

The place is named after Captain Herd, the agent of the first N. Z. Company, who purchased some land in N. Z. in 1825.

There is a large Maori population in the district, chiefly of the Ngapuhi and Rarawa tribes.

HERD'S POINT TO OMAPIRI AT HOKIANGA HEADS. 14 m. steam launch. The scenery is very pretty. On the l. may be seen Onoki, the residence of the late Judge Maning, the 'Pakeha Maori.'

Omapiri.

Hotel: *Maxwell's.*

Here horses must be hired. (This Omapiri must not be confused with the lake of the same name already mentioned.)

OMAPIRI TO OPANAKI. About 25 m. ride. The track passes over the hill, crosses the Waimamuku R. by a bridge, then goes along the beach for a considerable distance; it then crosses a steep wooded hill near the Maunganui Bluff, and after a few miles along the plateau, descends into the Kaihu valley. Groves of kauri trees may be seen in all directions.

Travellers must be sure to reach Opanaki in time for the afternoon train.

OPANAKI TO DARGAVILLE. 16½ m. Rly.

Dargaville.

Hotels: *Northern Wairoa; Kaihu.*

Church: *Ang.*

Pop.: 90.

A small township, prettily situated on the banks of the Wairoa. A centre of the gum-digging and saw-milling industries.

[From Dargaville a pleasant Excursion may be made up the *Wairoa*, by steam launch for about 30 m., to *Tangitiroria*. On each side the scenery is beautiful, with dense forests of kahikahitea and occasional kauri. At Tangitiroria is a small Hotel.]

DARGAVILLE TO HELENSVILLE. 65 m. river. Steamers run twice a week, and take about eight hours. At *Aratapu*, *Te Kopuru*, and other settlements are extensive saw mills. On the l. may be seen the hills *Tokataka* and *Maungraho* rising above the forest. The Maori legend connected with these hills is interesting, as being one of the legends common to all the Polynesian race. It is said that these hills, with some others, were travelling at night from the west across the sea. After landing, they proceeded on their journey. *Manaia*, being the strongest, managed to reach Whangarei before sunrise. The strength of each of the others is shown by the distance they travelled. *Taungatara*, the weakest, was overtaken by daylight before it got ashore. As the hills are there now, who can doubt the truth of the story?

Kaipara Heads. A curious harbour, with an inlet of the sea formed by the meeting of five rivers. The island of *Motaremo* was famous in Maori history for its pa, which was besieged and taken by Kawharu, a giant, some six generations ago.

Helensville.

Hotel: *Terminus.*

Churches: *Ang.; Pres.; R. C.; West.*

A small settlement of no special interest.

HELENSVILLE TO AUCKLAND. 38 m. Rly. The line passes through a settled and prosperous, but not specially beautiful, country.

3 m. Here the Kaipara R. is crossed. The line then passes through about 6 m. of native bush; after that through open fern country,

particularly adapted for fruit-growing, for about 20 m.

13 m. **Kumeu.**

30 m. **Avondale.** Here the suburbs of Auckland commence. The lunatic asylum, a fine building, may be seen on the l. The tall chimneys of various factories are on either side.

On the rt. *MOUNT ALBERT* and *MOUNT EDEN* are passed.

36 m. **Newmarket.** A suburb of Auckland largely composed of breweries. Many villas and residences in the neighbourhood.

38 m. **AUCKLAND.** See Rte. 1.

ROUTE 3.

AUCKLAND TO ROTORUA.

Of course all visitors to N. Z. will desire to see the Hot Lakes. It is best to go from Auckland, and then proceed overland to Taupo, and so on to Wellington. Those who wish to avoid much coach travelling can, however, return to Auckland from Rotorua or Taupo, and then proceed S. by sea, by either the E. or the W. coast. In that case they should go from Auckland by one Route, and return by another. Several alternative Routes are therefore given.

I. DIRECT ROUTE.

Rotorua can be reached in one day from Auckland; 134 m. Rly., 30 m. coach.

The Coaches from Oxford to Rotorua run more frequently during the tourist season than at any other times of the year. As arrangements constantly change, inquiries should be made before leaving Auckland.

AUCKLAND TO OXFORD. 134 m. Rly. 27s. 11d.; 18s. 8d.; R. 37s. 3d.; 24s. 11d.

4 m. **Green Lane.** On the l. may be seen the race-course of the Auckland Jockey Club.

5 m. **Ellerslie.**

6 m. **Penrose.** A branch line from here leads to Onehunga (2 m.).

9 m. **Otahuhu.** On the Manukau harbour. This may be considered the limits of the suburban district. The line then passes through a rich and settled agricultural district for 14 m. On the l. heavily timbered ranges are seen to the E.

22 m. **Drury.** For 5 or 6 m. the country is poor. Various small settlements may be seen to the E.

31 m. **Pukekohe.** A good farming district, celebrated for its butter.

The traveller now enters the scene of the Waikato war of 1863-64 during which upwards of 10,000 British troops were engaged. Several redoubts were placed here.

39 m. The Rly. crosses the Maungatawhiri R. This was the Rubicon of the Waikato war. The Maoris had declared that the passage of it would be regarded by them as a declaration of war. On July 12, 1863, General Cameron crossed with 380 men and commenced building a redoubt at Koheroa. Fighting began immediately afterwards. The natives, worsted at Koheroa, retreated to Meremere, a little beyond Mercer, where they constructed a strong fortress; but they evacuated it shortly afterwards.

43 m. **Mercer** (Refreshment room at the station).

Hotels: *James's; Porter's.*

Church: *Ang.*

A thriving settlement and railway centre. Here the first sight of the Waikato R. is obtained. The river scenery is beautiful. A Maori regatta is held here every March, and is attended by several thousand people. Tawhiao, the so-called Maori king, lives here.

The line then passes for 22 m. through low hills and swamp. The land is poor, but part of it has been planted by the Government with wattles and gum trees.

The Waikari lake may soon be seen on the l.

56 m. **Rangiriri lake.** The site of a celebrated pa.

Here the natives concentrated their forces after evacuating Meremere. On Nov. 20, 1863, this was attacked by General Cameron with a force of 1,270 men, but was defended heroically by the natives as long as daylight lasted. During the night more than 300 of them succeeded in escaping. The following morning a white flag was hoisted on the pa and the English entered and took 185 prisoners, whom they conveyed to the Island of Kawau. The English loss was 132 men, including Captain Mercer, who had been in command of the artillery. The Maoris lost about the same number.

65 m. **Huntly.**

Hotel: *Harris's.*

An important coal-mining district. There are five mines in the immediate neighbourhood. The coal is valuable lignite, and is much used for steam and household purposes.

The line now passes through the Taupiri gorge beside the river, with high hills on either side.

70 m. **Taupiri.**

Hotel: *Taupiri.*

A small settlement. This was once a centre of missionary enterprise. Groves of peaches and cherries,

which were planted by the missionaries, may be seen on the W. side of the river.

The line now leaves the river, and enters on the great Waikato plain.

74 m. **Ngaruawahai.**

Hotels: *Delta; Waipa.*

Churches: *Ang.; Pres.; R. C.; West.*

The Rly. here crosses the Waikato R. by a fine bridge. The Waipa R. at this point joins the Waikato. Both rivers are navigable. The tongue of land formed by their junction is known as the 'Delta.'

This was the residence of the first Maori king. It was evacuated by the Maoris after the fall of the Rangiriri pa, and immediately occupied by General Cameron as his headquarters.

It is now a thriving settlement with several mills and a brewery.

The line now goes across the plain for 12 m.

85 m. **Frankton.** (Refreshments at stall on platform.) Here a line branches off to Te Kuiti. (See Rte. 11.)

86 m. **Hamilton.**

Hotels: *Hamilton*; Commercial.*

Churches: *Ang.; Pres.; R. C.; West.*

Pop.: 1,200.

An important township on both sides of the Waikato R. It may justly be termed the centre of the Waikato district. There are several factories.

Tourists wishing to break their journey may well do so here. There are several drives to be taken, through scenes of historical interest in the time of the war.

Immediately after leaving Hamilton, the line crosses the Waikato R. and enters upon the Piako swamp. Tourists who take any special interest in large drainage works may stop and see them. Mr. Gordon, the Manager of the N. Z. Land Association, is always

ready to give information on the subject.

89 m. Ruakura Junction.

[Here a branch line leads to Cambridge, 10 m., a town prettily situated on the Waikato R., the centre of the richest farming country in the Waikato district. **Hotels:** *National; Criterion.* **Churches:** *Ang.; Pres.; R. C.; West.; Bapt.* **Pop.:** 300. Several fine estates and numerous good farms are in the immediate neighbourhood. The scenery is very fine, the views of the *Maungatautari Range* is specially striking. The climate is healthy and good.

Excellent riding or driving accommodation may be obtained at Cambridge. The hot lakes can be reached from this place by road.]

From Ruakura the line continues to cross swamp and lowlying country until it reaches

103 m. Morrinsville. **Hotel.**

A small settlement.

[Here a branch leads to Te Aroha, 12 m. See alternative Rte.]

After this, a level agricultural district, drained by the Waitoa, Piako, and Thames rivers, and bounded on the E. by a lofty range of mountains, and on the W. by the Maungakawa and Maungatautari hills, is passed through.

118 m. **Waharoa.** On the l. can be seen a lofty waterfall, in the Te Aroha range.

122 m. **Matamata.** A celebrated sheep-run. Warm springs exist here.

131 m. Okoroire.

[From this the tourist has the choice of two routes; either to coach from here (which is shorter both in time and distance), or to proceed by rail to Oxford. Should he choose the former, he will find vehicles in waiting at the station to meet each train (no charge).

2 m. **Okoroire Sanatorium.** This hotel is situated on the banks of the

Thames. It is very comfortable, with every accommodation; a day may well be spent here. In the grounds are hot baths, ranging up to 113°; the bather can also have the luxury of a plunge in the cool river. The waterfall, though not large, is pretty; the gorge through which the river passes being somewhat like that of the Huka on a smaller scale. The grounds are laid out tastefully, with fruit trees, flowering shrubs, and walks; the spot will doubtless become a favourite sanatorium. The river is stocked with trout. Travellers will notice specially the natural stone bridge, and the Maori canoe, which is said to have been constructed by the natives who lived higher up the river as a present for their friends lower down, but to have broken adrift from its moorings and been carried down to the Falls.

From Okoroire sanatorium to Rotorua is 27 m. Coaches run regularly three times a week, and at other times when required. Soon after leaving the sanatorium, the road joins that from Oxford.]

134 m. Oxford.

Hotel: *Oxford* (excellent).

Here the coach starts for Rotorua.

[From Oxford it is possible to go on to Wairakei and Taupo direct, omitting Rotorua. After leaving Oxford, the railway line rapidly ascends; and at Lichfield (12 m.), the terminus, attains an altitude of 800 ft. above the sea level.

Lichfield. Hotel: *Lichfield.* This is the headquarters of the Patetere estate. From this place a weekly coach runs to Wairakei and Taupo, 50 m. The road passes for 20 m. along a barren and uninteresting country, covered with volcanic débris. Then it joins the road from Rotorua to Taupo. See Rte. 5.]

OXFORD TO ROTORUA. 32 m. coach.

The road on leaving Oxford crosses the Thames R. and then passes through broken country, recently cleared, for about 10 m.; then through an undulating district with flat-

topped hills. The strange natural terraces which may be seen here are a common feature in many parts of N.Z. Geologists differ as to the cause of their formation. Here and there patches of Maori cultivation are seen; there are several native villages in the district, but none close to the road. A small patch of bush, in which pheasants may often be found, is passed on the l. The mountain of Rangitoto can be seen in the distance.

12 m. **Waipuna**, consisting merely of a cottage and stable. Here horses are changed. The view over the Patetere plain is fine.

The road soon crosses the saddle, 3,000 ft. above sea level and 900 ft. above Rotorua. From the top, *Ruapehu* and *Tongariro* may be seen in the far distance. The gorge (down which fine views may be obtained) is then on the r.

14 m. Here the road enters the *Bush*. Mr. Froude is mistaken in stating that the kauri trees are being ruthlessly destroyed here; the kauri pine has never been known in this district. The forest scenery is, however, rich and beautiful; many rare ferns may be found in this bush.

24 m. At the point where the road leaves the bush and enters the volcanic country are numbers of curious conical rocky mounds some 20 or 30 ft. high. Pumice-stone and other traces of former eruptions may be seen everywhere. The lake *Rotorua*, with the island of *Mokoiia*, and the white cliffs of the opposite shore (which some have compared to the Dover coast), may now be seen in the distance.

28 m. The road here reaches the border of the lake, and joins that from Tauranga. It then passes round a spur of the hill, and the volumes of steam rising from Whakarewarewa and Rotorua appear in sight.

32 m. **ROTORUA**. See Rte. 4.

OTHER ROUTES FROM AUCKLAND TO ROTORUA.

II. BY TAURANGA.

AUCKLAND TO TAURANGA. 152 m steamer. Thence 40 m. coach.

A steamer leaves Auckland and reaches Tauranga in about 12 hours.

Tauranga.

Hotels: *Tauranga*; *Star*; *Commercial*.

Churches: *Ang.*; *Pres.*; *R. C.*; *Wesl.*

A pretty sea-side place in the Bay of Plenty. It is unfortunately not now as prosperous as it was before the direct route between Auckland and Rotorua was opened.

2 m. The Gate Pa.

This was the scene of the famous attack on April 29, 1864. The native fortifications, which consisted of an oblong palisaded redoubt guarded by an entrenched line of rifle pits, had been erected on a narrow ridge of high ground between two swamps, which thus formed a kind of gateway or passage between two tracts of land. The English force consisting of about 1,700 of the military, besides seamen and marines, attacked the spot at daylight. The pa cannot have contained more than 200 natives. The defenders had placed a flag-staff, not inside, but about 100 yards away from the pa, and by this almost childishly simple device, succeeded in misdirecting the English fire for about two hours. But the truth was then discovered and artillery were brought to bear full on the natives defending the fortification. A breach was made and a storming party was led up to it from the front. All firing having ceased they imagined that the pa must have been deserted, but when they came close to the fortifications, a tremendous fire was suddenly poured forth upon them. However, an entrance was effected. The fort which had hardly room for the defenders, was now thronged with the mass of the attacking force. From behind fern and earth-

works, partly concealed by the volumes of smoke, the Maoris shot down the invaders right and left. What ensued will never be known. Some say that the word 'Retreat' was called, no one knows by whom; others, that the natives, seeing the case was hopeless, attempted to escape, by the rear; but finding their path was stopped by the 68th Regiment, rushed back, and the military within the pa mistook them for a fresh body of natives who had come up as reinforcements. A panic seized the English troops. Their officers (who stood firm) attempted in vain to rally them. They turned and fled, leaving a score of their comrades dead or wounded behind them. In the darkness of night the Maoris stealthily escaped, creeping away in small bodies. Next morning the English entered the deserted pa. There they found lying the dead and wounded of the night before—not a single English soldier stripped or mutilated, and by the side of one who was still living was placed a vessel of water which the Maoris had penetrated through the English lines at the risk of their lives to procure.

11 m. **Oropi**. 1,000 ft. above the sea. The view from this point is very picturesque. A pleasant walk of ten minutes leads to a very beautiful waterfall, which the owner, Mr. Kensington, kindly allows travellers to visit. The road now enters the bush.

30 m. **MANGAOREWA R.** The gorge of this river, through which the coach passes, is remarkably fine.

36 m. Here the shore of the lake is reached. The road now joins that from Oxford,

III. BY THE THAMES.

AUCKLAND to THAMES, 42 m. steamer. The steam along the Gulf, through smooth water, is enjoyable. The islands of *Rangitoto*, *Motuihi*, *Waiheke*, *Ponui*, and *Pakihiki* (where the lighthouse is placed) are passed. The journey takes about five hours.

Thames.

Hotels: *Royal; Pacific*; and many others.

Churches: *Ang.; Pres.; R.C.; West.; Bapt.*; and others.

Pop.: 4,500.

This is the centre of a gold-mining district, not so prosperous now as it once was. The gold is all found in quartz reefs. It is a good opportunity for seeing a mine. At Parawai, about a mile distant, is a fine Maori house. At Tararu, 3 m., is a splendid kauri tree, 140 ft. high, its circumference at six feet from the ground being 46 ft.

THAMES TO TE AROHA. 32 m. coach.

4 m. **Totara**. Here is the site of an old pa belonging to the Ngatimaru tribe, which was taken by Hongi, and a force of Ngapuhi, with fearful slaughter in 1821. It is said that 1,000 were slain; some of their bones may still be seen in the valley of the Waihou River.

9 m. **Puriri**. A mineral spring of natural soda water. (See p [24]).

13 m. The **Hikutai** stream is here crossed.

20 m. **Pairoa**. A small village.

[Here a coach road branches off to the Ohinemuri and Waihi gold fields and Tauranga.

5 m. **Ohinemuri gorge**. The scenery here is fine. After this the road passes through open country.

18 m. **Katikati**. A special settlement formed by Mr. Vesey Stewart. Many farmers from the North of Ireland are settled here.

25 m. **Tauranga**.]

The road then passes over a wooded range, and undulating open country to

32 m. **Te Aroha**.

Hotels: *Club; Hot Springs; Palace*; and others. There are also several boarding-houses.

Churches: *Ang.; Pres.; R.C.; West.*

Pop.: 700.

A rising township in a mining and rich agricultural district, chiefly famed for its hot springs, which resemble those of Vichy and Ems, and range up to 119° Fahr. The Table below gives an analysis of some of the baths.

It is rapidly becoming a favourite health resort. A pleasant stay may be made here; there are several interesting excursions to be made. The ascent of the Te Aroha mountain (3,176 ft.) is not difficult; the

view from the summit, over the Thames and the Bay of Plenty, is magnificent.

Another excursion may be made to the Waiorongomai goldfields.

From Te Aroha a Rly. 12 m. leads to *Morrinsville*, and thence to Auckland, or to Oxford, and so by coach to Rotorua.

[Steamers also run from Thames to Te Aroha, up the river. The scenery is pretty, but not striking.]

	No. 1 Bath.	No. 2 Bath.	Drinking Spring.
Sulphate of lime	2.989	2.228	2.989
Sulphate of magnesia . . . . .	.378	.336	.602
Sulphate of potash	10.293	9.800	10.794
Sulphate of soda	27.546	28.056	25.438
Chloride of sodium	73.514	72.072	77.748
Bi-carbonate of soda	728.737	698.513	682.123
Carbonate of ammonia	3.556	.112	.980
Carbonate of iron . . . . .	.042	.063	.042
Carbonate of lithia	(heavy traces)		
Phosphate of soda	2.063	2.203	.696
Phosphate of alumina . . . . .	.143	.023	.476
Silica	8.568	8.778	8.778
Sulphuretted hydrogen	traces	traces	traces
Total solid matter	857.829	822.184	811.702

ROUTE 4.

ROTORUA AND NEIGHBOURHOOD.

ROTORUA is the official name now given to the scattered township at the S. end of the lake of that name and includes the old Maori village of *Ohinemutu*. This change of name is the cause of some inconvenience.

Hotels, &c.: AT OHINEMUTU, *Lake House; Palace; Rotorua.*

1 M. FROM OHINEMUTU (within the Government township), *The Government Sanatorium*. Invalids intending to take the baths will do well to find quarters here. Terms about £2 a week including medical allowance.

Opposite the Sanatorium, *Brent's*

Temperance Boarding House, conveniently situated for persons taking the baths.

AT WHAKAREWAREWA (2 m. from Ohinemutu), *The Geyser Hotel*, comfortable, the best stopping-place for tourists. (For the convenience of persons staying at the Geyser Hotel, vehicles ply free of charge from it to the Sanatorium and Ohinemutu four times a day.)

Church: *Ang.*

Rotorua is the centre of the N. Z. Wonderland; the great line of volcanic activity, which extends from White Island to Ruapehu, being

about 150 m. in length, and from 10 to 20 in breadth. However often and graphically it may be described, no one who has not seen it for himself can have any idea of it. It has suffered terribly from the great eruption of 1886, notably in the destruction of the far-famed Pink and White Terraces; but though they were the most beautiful, they were hardly the most curious and by no means the only sights in this marvellous district; and even the eruption has brought many fresh wonders into existence. Almost every variety of thermal phenomena may be seen in this neighbourhood.

As some of the most wonderful of the sights are close to the hotels, tourists can obtain some idea of the district by staying for a single day, but as the excursions are varied and numerous, and some of them fatiguing, at least four days should be allowed.

Tourists who have but one day should visit *The Native Village*, *The Government Sanatorium* and *Sulphur Point*, and *Whakarewarewa*. Those who have two days may omit *Whakarewarewa* the first day, and on the second day visit *The Island of Mokoia*, *Tikitere*, *Roto Iti*, and *Whakarewarewa*. Those who are staying longer may divide these into separate excursions, and make the other expeditions mentioned below according to inclination and strength.

The Native Village is close to the Hotels at Ohinemutu and forms an amusing sight. Natural baths, of every variety of temperature, may be seen in all directions. Little brown children dive for coppers, whilst their fathers and mothers look on and smoke or are busy boiling their potatoes and washing their clothes in the hot water. These baths, rudely dug out of the ground, are supplied by water flowing from the numerous very hot or boiling springs in the neighbourhood. One of these hot springs

is the largest known, and gives forth in the 24 hours as much as 500,000 gallons, at a temperature of 170°.

The costume of the natives here, when they are not bathing, is of a nondescript character, some wearing European clothing, others blankets and shawls. They themselves must not be considered good specimens of the Maori race. Many of them, chiefly the women, are hideously tattooed. Their huts (*Whares*) are for the most part low thatched buildings.

Some posts rising out of the lake show that the pa at one time extended much further, and that some volcanic eruption has caused the earth to sink. The carved house (*Tamate-kapua*), where all native meetings, &c. take place, is worthy of inspection; the carving is in the same style as that which the tourist will have already seen in the museum at Auckland, and though the building itself is of modern construction, and the roof of corrugated iron, 'crumpled tin,' it is according to the old Maori design.

The *Church* which is close by is an uninteresting building. Near at hand is the cemetery.

The Government Sanatorium is about a mile from Ohinemutu, near the shore of the lake. The extensive city which has been laid out and is to cover a large space of ground here, still exists in contemplation of law only; but the Government have done wisely in securing the site, and in erecting the Sanatorium, &c. Old travellers indeed, who remember the baths in their picturesque wildness, cannot but regret the loss of the romance of the scene; but poetry must here give way to utility. The waters are classified as follows: 1. Saline, 2. Alkaline, 3. Hepatic or Sulphurous, 4. Acidic. For Analysis see Introduction, pp. [25] [26].

The **Baths** themselves are undoubtedly most efficacious in a great number of complaints, and especially useful in rheumatic and cutaneous

diseases, but no invalid should think of taking a course of baths without consulting *Dr. Ginders*, the resident physician. He makes a careful analysis of the various waters from time to time as they vary in strength and properties.

The accommodation for bathers is rough, and invalids must not expect to find the luxurious and scientific appliances of European bathing establishments. The most important baths are the 'Priest's Bath' (so called from the fact that a priest was amongst the earliest of European visitors to benefit by its healing properties); the water is received into two *piscines*, No. 1 varies in temperature from 96°-100°, No. 2 from 100°-103°; 'Madame Rachel' (which is said to have so softening an effect on the skin that the bather becomes beautiful for ever), the Pain-killer, and the Blue Bath. In the grounds are several others. The group of artificial geysers in the centre of the gardens will be examined with interest. It was constructed by Mr. Malfroy, the engineer in charge. By enclosing the hot springs which supply the Blue Bath reservoir, within the narrow limits of three 6-in. tubes, and controlling their discharge by an ingenious contrivance to regulate the return of the cooled water, he established a series of three intermittent geysers, whose fountains rise to a height of from 6 to 25 ft. and furnish a constant supply of hot water to the baths.

The promontory of Sulphur Point juts into the lake within the Sanatorium reserve. Its natural features are curious, but walking in this neighbourhood, if not dangerous, should be undertaken with caution on account of the rotten surface of the ground, and of the fumeroles and deep holes and pools, some filled with nauseous mud, some containing a liquid the colour of coffee and others again clear water, but all emitting a disagreeable sulphurous smell.

Whakarewarewa is an easy walk or drive of about 2 m. from Ohinemutu across a plain covered with manuka scrub.

Hotel: Geyser; see above, a very short distance from the celebrated Baths—the 'Turikore' or 'Spout Bath,' and 'Korotiotio or 'Oil Bath' (so called from the fact that the water runs off the skin like oil).

For an analysis of the waters see *Introd.*, p. 26.

From the hotel, the Puarenga creek and the steam clouds arising from the geysers are seen, they are directly upon the central line of volcanic activity.

The Maori village lies just across the bridge: there is a toll *1s. 6d.* for each visitor, and a guide will accompany the party for another shilling, to point out the following objects of special interest:—

Passing the village laundry and bathing pools the attention will be directed to *Parekohuru*, the great Ngawha and cooking pool, a remarkable circular crater of clear blue water, nearly always at boiling point, and *Korotiotio*, a furiously boiling broken crater, which supplies the Oil Bath and the open baths of the natives. About a hundred yards further is the geyser plateau, where by the side of an extinct geyser is the *Brain Pot*, a rude circular basin upon a raised platform of decomposing geyserite; it has a curious but horrible history, and recalls the old days of cannibalism. Close by is the geyser *Waikorohihi*, the most persistent and regular in the neighbourhood. A few yards nearer the bank of the stream is the great geyser *Pohutu*, which is supplied by the open reservoir *Te Horo*, a great well of boiling water, 15 to 20 ft. in diameter. The water in *Te Horo* is constantly rising and falling. As it rises it boils furiously, and gives off dense clouds of steam; when nearly full, thousands of large glassy bubbles dance all over its surface, and beautiful fountains of dazzling

brilliance play up at intervals to a height of from 2 to 20 ft.; then suddenly, and with a tremendous overwhelming rush, *Pohutu* sends up from its open mouth a tall, steaming column of water, to a height oftentimes reaching 100 ft.; it sometimes maintains its discharge for two or even three hours. The magnificence of this grand display cannot be expressed in words. Immediately under *Pohutu*, and close to the bed of the creek, is the geyser *Kereru*, and under the water the *Torpedo* keeps up a series of detonations and eruptions. About a hundred yards beyond is the platform and cone of the *Waikite* geyser, the best known in the district, and since the eruption of *Tarawera* in constant activity, throwing up a column of water at times to a height of 30 ft. high, at intervals of 4 minutes. Its waters are highly charged with silica, and artificial erections have been built to convey the discharge over a large surface, so that in a few years the mound will be coated all over with a beautiful enamel, similar in appearance to that of the *Rotomahana Terraces*. The great *Wairoa* geyser is an uncertain fountain, which issues at very irregular intervals from an orifice just below the *Brain Pot*; at favourable opportunities its column is said to rival in height that of *Pohutu*. A little below *Waikite* and higher up the creek is the *Giant's Caldron*, a fierce boiling crater on the bank of the stream. Five years previous to the great eruption of 1886 these geysers ceased to be active, but after its occurrence they regained their energy but played in a different manner and at different intervals.

Across the stream and by the side of the *Taupo* road is a series of beautiful *mud volcanoes*, and a warm *opal lake*, very curious and interesting; while about a mile from the road is the *Arika-kapa-kapa* bath and lake, celebrated for its curative properties.

Between *Whakarewarewa* and the *Sanatorium*, to the E. of the direct road, are two large beds of sulphur deposit, several acres in extent, called *Sodom* and *Gomorrah*.

Close by is the small *Cemetery* containing the monuments to the Europeans who were killed in the eruption of 1886.

EXCURSIONS.

For the more distant excursions necessitating the use of boats, horses, or guides, especially where curious sights are on native land and where natives have a right to levy tolls, which are in some cases exorbitant, travellers are recommended to consult Messrs. *Cook & Son*, whose agent resides at *Rotorua* during the summer months.

The tourist stopping at *Ohinemutu* and wishing to make the excursions to the *Island of Mokoia*, *Tikitere* and *Whakarewarewa* in one day, can do so by engaging a boat at *Ohinemutu*, for the island, having previously sent a vehicle round to *Te Ngae*, the old mission station, to meet him on landing from *Mokoia*. From *Te Ngae* he should drive to *Tikitere*, thence walk to *Roto Iti* and back, and drive home by *Sodom* and *Gomorrah*, and *Whakarewarewa*.

(1) *The Island of Mokoia* near the centre of *Lake Rotorua* is the most conspicuous object in the surrounding landscape. A steam launch or sailing boat can be obtained at *Ohinemutu*, distant about 4 m. *Mokoia* rises to a height of 600 ft. above the lake and is 1,518 ft. above sea level. It is chiefly covered with grass but is luxuriantly wooded in places, and has some patches of cultivation round its shores amongst the scattered *Maori* dwellings. It was the *Holy Isle* of the *Maoris*, where the *tohungas* or priests stored the sacred relics brought from *Hawaiki*, and is inseparably connected with the legend of *Hine-Moa*, whose bath is shown near the S. point of the island.

The legend cannot be better told than in the words of an old chief who related it to Sir *George Grey* (*Polynesian Mythology*).

'Rangi-Uru was the name of the mother of a chief called Tutanekai; she was properly the wife of Whakaue-Kaipara (the great ancestor of the Ngatiwhakaue tribe); but she at one time ran away with a chief named Tuwharetoa (the great ancestor of the Te-Huenu and the Ngatitwharetoa); before this she had three sons by Whakaue, their names were Tawakeheimoa, Ngararanui, and Tuteaiti. It was after the birth of this third son that Rangi-Uru eloped with Tuwharetoa, who had come to Rotorua as a stranger on a visit. From this affair sprang Tutanekai, who was an illegitimate child; but finally, Whakaue and Rangi-Uru were united again, and she had another son whose name was Kopako; and then she had a daughter whom they named Tupa; she was the last child of Whakaue.

'They all resided here on the Island of Mokoia. Whakaue was very kind indeed to Tutanekai, treating him as if he was his own son; so they grew up there, Tutanekai and his elder brothers, until they attained to manhood.

'Now there reached them here a great report of Hine-Moa that she was a maiden of rare beauty, as well as of high rank, for Umukaria (the great ancestor of the Ngati Unui-karahapu, or sub-tribe) was her father; her mother's name was Hine-Maru.

'When such fame attended her beauty and rank, Tutanekai and each of his elder brothers desired to have her as a wife.

'About this time Tutanekai built an elevated balcony, on the slope of that hill called Kaiweka. He had contracted a great friendship for a young man named Tiki. They were both fond of music; Tutanekai played on the horn, and Tiki on the pipe; and they used to go up into the balcony and play on their instruments in the night; and on calm evenings the sound of their music was wafted by the gentle land-breeze across the lake to the village at Owkata, where dwelt the beautiful Hine-Moa, the younger sister of Wahiao.

'Hine-Moa could then hear the sweet-sounding music of the instruments of Tutanekai and his dear friend Tiki, which gladdened her heart within her. Every night the two friends played on their instruments

in this manner, and Hine-Moa then ever said to herself, Ah, that is the music of Tutanekai which I hear.

'For although Hine-Moa was so prized by her family, that they would not betroth her to any chief, nevertheless she and Tutanekai had met each other on those occasions when all the people of Rotorua come together.

'In those great assemblies of the people Hine-Moa had seen Tutanekai, and as they often glanced each at each other, to the heart of each of them the other appeared pleasing and worthy of love, so that in the breast of each there grew up a secret passion for the other.

'Nevertheless, Tutanekai could not tell whether he might venture to approach Hine-Moa to take her hand, to see would she press his in return, because said he, "Perhaps I may be by no means agreeable to her"; on the other hand, Hine-Moa's heart said to her, "If you send one of your female friends to tell him of your love, perchance he will not be pleased with you."

'However, after they had thus met for many, many days, and had long fondly glanced each at the other, Tutanekai sent a messenger to Hine-Moa, to tell of his love; and when Hine-Moa had seen the messenger, she said, "Eh-hu! have we then each loved alike?"

'Some time after this, and when they had often met, Tutanekai and his family returned to their own village; and being together one evening, in a large warm house of general assembly, the elder brothers of Tutanekai said, "Which of us has by signs or by pressure of the hand, received proofs of the love of Hine-Moa?" And one said, "It is I who have"; and another said, "No, but it is I." Then they also questioned Tutanekai, and he said, "I have pressed the hand of Hine-Moa, and she pressed mine in return;" but his elder brothers said, "No such thing; do you think she would take any notice of such a low-born fellow as you are?" He then told his reputed father, Whakaue, to remember what he would then say to him, because he really had received proofs of Hine-Moa's love; they had even actually arranged a good while before, the time at which Hine-Moa should run

away to him; and when the maiden asked, "What shall be the sign by which I shall know that I should then run to you?" he said to her, "A trumpet will be heard sounding every night; it will be I who sound it, beloved—paddle then your canoe to that place." So Whakaue kept in his mind this confession which Tutanekai had made to him.

'Now always about the middle of the night Tutanekai and his friend Tiki went up into their balcony and played, the one upon his trumpet the other upon his flute, and Hine-Moa heard them, and desired vastly to paddle in her canoe to Tutanekai; but her friends suspecting something, had been careful with the canoes, to leave none afloat, but had hauled them all up upon the shore of the lake; and thus her friends had always done for many days and for many nights.

'At last she reflected in her heart, saying, "How can I then contrive to cross the lake to the island of Mokoia? it can plainly be seen that my friends suspect what I am going to do." So she sat down upon the ground to rest; and then soft measures reached her ear from the trumpet of Tutanekai, and the young and beautiful chieftainness felt as if an earthquake shook her to make her go to the beloved of her heart; but then arose the recollection, that there was no canoe. At last she thought, perhaps I might be able to swim across. So she took six large dry empty gourds, as floats, lest she should sink in the water, three of them for each side, and she went out upon a rock, which is named Iri-iri-kapua, and from thence to the edge of the water, to the spot called Wai-rere-wai, and there she threw off her clothes and cast herself into the water, and she reached the stump of a sunken tree which used to stand in the lake, and was called Hinewhata, and she clung to it with her hands, and rested to take breath, and when she had a little eased the weariness of her shoulders, she swam on again, and whenever she was exhausted she floated with the current of the lake, supported by the gourds, and after recovering strength she swam on again; but she could not distinguish in which direction she should proceed, from the darkness of the night; her

only guide was the soft measure from the instrument of Tutanekai; that was the mark by which she swam straight to Waikimihia, for just above that hot spring was the village of Tutanekai, and swimming, at last she reached the island of Mokoia.

'At the place where she landed on the island, there is a hot spring separated from the lake only by a narrow ledge of rocks; it is called Waikimihia. Hine-Moa got into this to warm herself, for she was trembling all over, partly from the cold, after swimming in the night across the wide lake of Rotorna, and partly also, perhaps from modesty, at the thoughts of meeting Tutanekai. Whilst the maiden was thus warming herself in the hot spring, Tutanekai happened to feel thirsty, and said to his servant, "Bring me a little water;" so his servant went to fetch water for him, and drew it from the lake in a calabash, close to the spot where Hine-Moa was sitting. The maiden, who was frightened, called out to him in a gruff voice, like that of a man, "Whom is that water for?" He replied, "It's for Tutanekai." "Give it here then," said Hine-Moa. And he gave her the water, and she drank, and having finished drinking, she purposely threw down the calabash, and broke it. Then the servant asked her, "What business had you to break the calabash of Tutanekai?" but Hine-Moa did not say a word in answer. The servant then went back, and Tutanekai said to him, "Where is the water I told you to bring me?" So he answered, "Your calabash is broken," and his master asked him who broke it, and he answered, "The man who is in the bath broke your calabash." And Tutanekai said to him, "Go back again then and fetch me some water."

'He therefore took a second calabash, and went back and drew water in the calabash from the lake; and Hine-Moa again said to him, "Whom is the water for?" So the slave answered as before, "For Tutanekai." And the maiden again said, "Give it to me for I am thirsty." And the slave gave it her, and she drank, and purposely threw down the calabash and broke it. And these occurrences took place repeatedly between those two persons.

'At last the slave went again to

Tutanekai, who said to him, "Where is the water for me?" And his servant answered, "It is all gone. Your calabashes have been broken." "By whom?" said his master. "Didn't I tell you there is a man in the bath?" answered the servant. "Who is the fellow?" said Tutanekai. "How can I tell?" replied the slave; "why he's a stranger." "Didn't he know the water was for me?" said Tutanekai. "How did the rascal dare to break my calabashes? Why I shall die from rage."

Then Tutanekai threw on some clothes, and caught hold of his club, and away he went, and came to the bath, and called out, "Where's the man who broke my calabashes?" And Hine-Moa knew the voice, that the sound of it was that of the beloved of her heart; and she hid herself under the overhanging rocks of the hot spring; but her hiding was hardly a real hiding, but rather a bashful concealing of herself from Tutanekai, that he might not find her at once, but only after trouble and careful searching for her. So he went feeling about along the banks of the hot spring, searching everywhere, whilst she lay coyly hid under the ledges of the rocks, peeping out, wondering when she should be found. At last he caught hold of a hand, and cried out, "Hollo, who's this?" and Hine-Moa answered, "It's I, Tutanekai." And he said, "But who are you? who's I?" Then she spoke louder, and said, "It's I; 'tis Hine-Moa." And he said, "Ho! Ho! Ho! can such in very truth be the case? Let us two then go to my house." And she answered, "Yes;" and arose up in the water as beautiful as the wild white hawk, and stepped upon the edge of the bath as graceful as the shy white crane; and he threw garments over her, and took her, and they proceeded to his house, and reposed there; and thenceforth, according to the ancient laws of the Maori, they were man and wife.

When the morning dawned, all the people of the village went forth from their houses to cook their breakfasts, and they all ate; but Tutanekai tarried in his house. So Whakaue said, "This is the first morning that Tutanekai has slept in this way; perhaps the lad is ill; bring him here—rouse him up."

Then the man who was to fetch him went and drew back the sliding wooden window of the house, and peeping in, saw four feet. Oh! he was greatly amazed, and said to himself, "Who can this companion of his be?" However he had seen quite enough, and turning about, hurried back as fast as he could to Whakaue, and said to him, "Why there are four feet, I saw them myself in the house." Whakaue answered, "Who's his companion, then? hasten back and see." So back he went to the house, and peeped in at them again, and then for the first time he saw it was Hine-Moa, in the house of Tutanekai. Then he shouted out in his amazement, "Oh! here's Hine-Moa, here's Hine-Moa, in the house of Tutanekai!" and all the village heard him, and there arose cries on every side, "Oh! here's Hine-Moa, here's Hine-Moa with Tutanekai!" And his elder brothers heard the shouting and they said, "It is not true;" for they were very jealous indeed. Tutanekai then appeared coming from his house, and Hine-Moa following him, and his elder brothers saw that it was indeed Hine-Moa; and they said, "It is true, it is a fact."

After these things Tiki thought within himself, "Tutanekai has married Hine-Moa, she whom he loved; but as for me, alas! I have no wife;" and he became sorrowful, and returned to his own village. And Tutanekai was grieved for Tiki, and he said to Whakaue, "I am ill from grief for my friend Tiki." And Whakaue said, "What do you mean?" And Tutanekai replied, "I refer to my young sister Tupa; let her be given as a wife to my beloved friend Tiki." And his reputed father Whakaue consented to this. So his young sister Tupa was given to Tiki and she became his wife.

The descendants of Hine-Moa and of Tutanekai are at this very day dwelling on the lake of Rotorua, and never yet have the lips of the offspring of Hine-Moa forgotten to repeat tales of the great beauty of their renowned ancestress, Hine-Moa, and of her swimming over here; and this, too, is the burden of a song still current.

The island is however connected with a less romantic and more

terrible history. In the early part of this century, a party of the Arawa tribe, ignorant of the power of the great chief, Hongi, and the use of firearms, took refuge on Mokoia, where they considered themselves perfectly safe; in 1823, however, Hongi dragged his war canoes 30 miles overland from the Bay of Plenty, launched them on lake Rotoiti, thus proceeded to Rotorua, and attacked the island. Of the unfortunate Arawa—who are believed to have numbered about 700—not one was left alive to tell the tale.

On leaving Mokoia, if time permits, it is well to proceed to the N. extremity of the lake in order to visit the cold sparkling spring of **Hamurana**, the copious source of a small river which flows into the lake. It is necessary to leave the launch in exchange for a rowing boat, in which the bar at the mouth of the river can be crossed. A short row thence past a small Maori village, amongst reeds and luxuriant brushwood, brings the boat above the river source where the crystal stream wells up in great volume from unknown depths below. On the return journey, if not proceeding to Tikitere the traveller might stop at *Awahou*, a native village on the W. side of the lake.

(2) **Tikitere** is about 9 m. by road from Ohinemutu and about 4 m. by water from Mokoia at the N.E. of the lake, near the isthmus which separates Rotorua from Rotoiti. The road from Ohinemutu passes near the Sanatorium, crosses a small river, and skirts the E. shore of Rotorua through manuka-scrub to

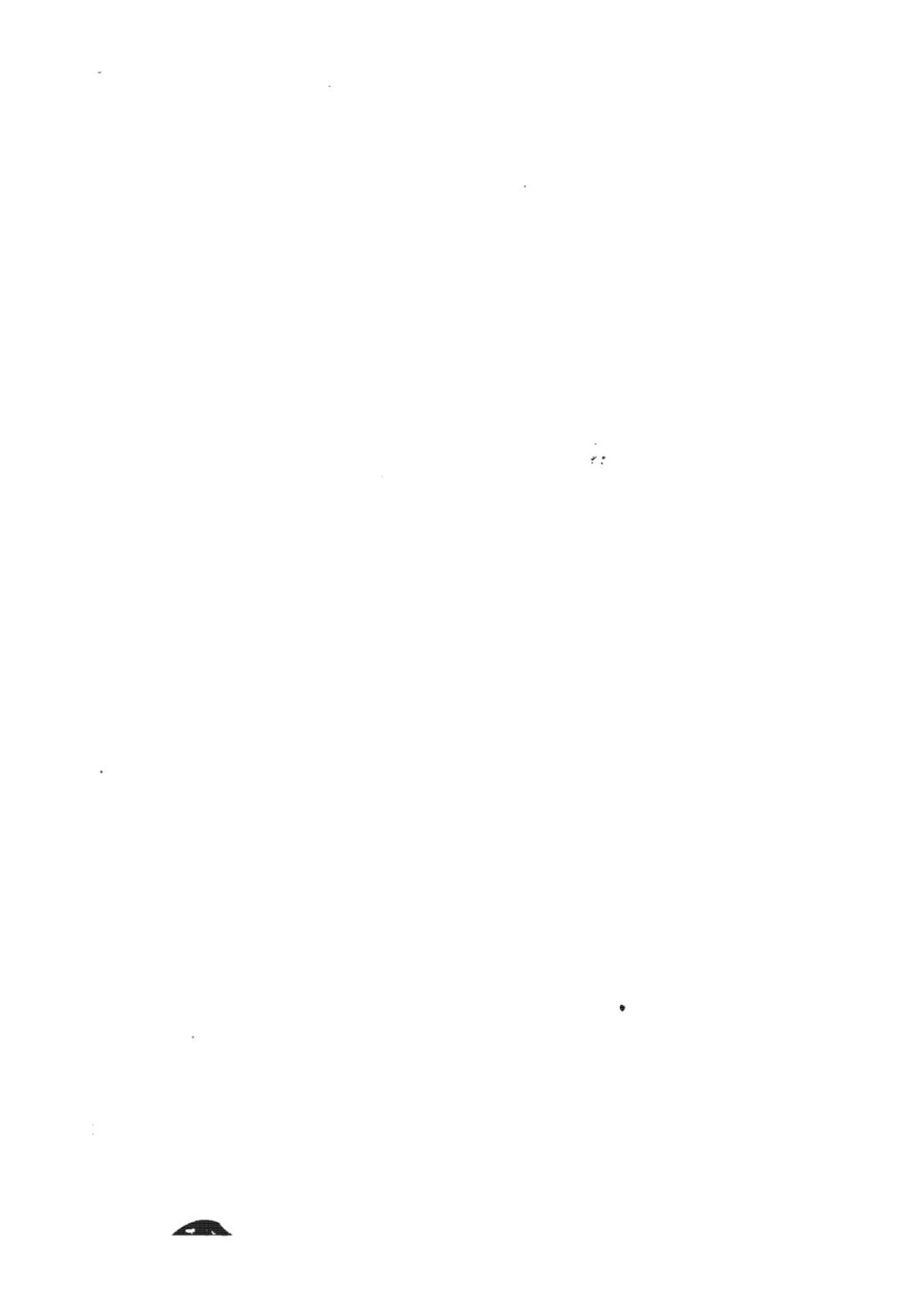
8 m. the old mission station of **Ngae**, now converted into a small farm. It is a pretty spot, and may remind the Englishman of a bit of Devonshire.

9 m. Tikitere, a desolate valley of solfataras, mud volcanoes and boiling springs in furious activity, and

usually canopied by dense clouds of steam. In the centre of the valley lie two boiling lakes, terribly turbulent, separated by a narrow neck of land upon which the spectator can stand and realize the awful activity of the mighty plutonic forces which make the soil tremble and almost confuse his senses. This narrow bridge is called the *Gates of Hades*. The repulsive odour of sulphuretted hydrogen is wafted in the dense, hot steam clouds which completely envelop the spectator, and through which the boiling waves on either side can be occasionally discerned. The situation is truly appalling, and is calculated to give the stoutest heart such a thrill of horror as one does not often care to experience. Towards the north, across a fearfully treacherous area, is the *Inferno*, a precipitous yawning black pit in which a great mud geyser is tossing and dashing its seething contents with a fury well worthy of its name. Towards the south is a spring of healing waters, much patronised by the natives and occasionally by Europeans.

Behind the *Inferno*, is a track leading over the *Hot Water Falls*, where a warm stream (less in volume since the great eruption) leaps in a series of small cascades over the rocky steep. Further on is another area of desolation, by which a track leads to *Terrata*, a formidable active mud crater in the side of the hill; and about half a mile further in the direction of Rotoiti is the extensive crater-basin of *Ruahine*, at the bottom of which is the *Black Lake*, a very remarkable area of boiling mud and water, upon which may be seen about ten or twelve mud fountains in intermittent activity bursting through the glistening surface, tossing up thick, black slime to a height of 1 to 6 feet. The valley around is everywhere perforated by steam-holes, and masses of sulphur incrustations are seen on every side.





From the hill, surmounted by the *Trigonometrical Survey Station*, above Tikitere there is a beautiful panorama over the lakes, and in the hillside, near the summit, is the *Great Fumarole*, a roaring steam-hole, in constant activity.

Within a mile, in the bush, is *Rotokaroua*, a lovely green lake, a perfect paradise of beauty, and the most complete contrast to the dismal plain that can possibly be imagined.

(3) **The Cold Lakes.** This forms an extension of the Tikitere trip. Two days at the least are necessary, the night being spent camping at *Tapuwaharuru*; but a longer time must be given if the trip is to be really enjoyable. Taking the steam launch or Warbrick's boat from Ohinemutu and crossing Rotorua, the boat enters *Rotoriri* by the serpentine *Ohau* channel.

The shores of Rotoiti are varied by long peninsulas and indented by numerous bays and coves, so that an ever-changing landscape is presented in picturesque variety as the little vessel crosses the lake or skirts the shore. On the south, not far from Tikitere, is the *Manupirua bath*, a very valuable hot sulphur spring, beautifully sheltered under a high cliff, and so close to the lake that a swim in the clear, cold water can be enjoyed after the bath. On the north are the *Taheke* outlet, rapids and falls, and the *Maketu-Tauranga* road (see Rte. 7). At the eastern end the shores are beautifully wooded, steep precipitous cliffs, clothed with bush and fern to the water's edge, with the dark-browed summit of *Mata-whawha* rising behind, forming a bold and romantic picture. Under these cliffs, through a cleft in the rock, is an outlet of the lake. At the extreme east, on a low, shelving beach, is the Maori village, *Tapuwaharuru*, where the traveller camps.

Rotoehu, a romantic lake with numerous picturesque inlets on its

northern shore, is reached across a narrow neck of land overgrown by the most luxurious forest in the country, rivalling in its wealth of beauty the far-famed Tikitapu bush.

Rotoma is the gem of the series, and can be reached on foot by skirting *Rotoehu* and crossing the *Waitangi* ford, where there is a remarkable soda-water spring, and a most refreshing fountain of chalybeate water. The shores of the lake are broken by long, jutting points, clothed with dense foliage, into sheltered, sandy bays. The great charm of *Rotoma* is the wonderful rich blue of its waters, deepening in tint toward the centre, and reflecting perfectly the rocky banks and overhanging shrubs. The solitude which now reigns supreme, will be broken by the murmur of many voices, so soon as this delightful retreat becomes more widely known, and a little more accessible to pleasure-seekers.

(4) **Mount Ngongataka** (2,554 ft.). Before leaving Rotorua the pedestrian may with advantage ascend one or more of the surrounding mountains or hills. As this, however, may entail a considerable amount of scrambling and heavy walking he will do well to select *Ngongataka*, up which a path was made to commemorate the Queen's Jubilee.

The foot of the mountain is $2\frac{1}{2}$ m. S.W. of Ohinemutu across a bracken-covered moorland. The ascent begins through tangled forest so dense that an effect of twilight is produced by reason of the thick foliage and matted creepers overhead. The bush, which in places is full of luxuriant ferns, varies in character and extends to the very summit of the mountain. The panoramic view from the top is very extensive, and includes the ocean to the N.E. and Mt. Tarawera.

(5) **Wairoa Lake, Tarawera, and Rotomahana.** Those who

knew this district before the eruption will hardly enjoy visiting the ruins of what was once so exquisite; it is like the contrast between Paris in 1869 and in 1871. Still, it is very marvellous; and nature is already hard at work trying to repair the destruction she has herself caused. The trip can be made in one day, but it is better (and, if the ascent of Tarawera is included, necessary) to take two; the night being spent in camping out at Tarawera.

Special arrangements can be made for this trip with Mr. Alf. Warbrick, who provides horses, boats, tents, &c., as required.

The period of violent action which at one time prevailed in the Hot Lake District seemed to be steadily passing away up to 1880, at which time signs of increased activity began to appear. Millions of dead fish were strewn on the coasts of the Bay of Plenty, which had probably been poisoned by some fresh eruption of gases. In 1881 and again in 1883 the water in Rotokakahi suddenly rose without any warning. In July, 1885, the crater-lake in White Island disappeared, leaving its bed dry. Soon afterwards the hot springs near Mt. Edgecombe and Te Teko became more active and the water hotter. In November violent explosions occurred at the White Terrace, the steam rising to at least 1,000 ft. Ruapehu, then believed to be an extinct volcano, commenced sending up a column of steam, and the lake lying amidst the snows in its crater-like hollow became hot. Mud and water burst forth at several spots near Tokaano. In May, 1886, waves rose to the height of 1 ft. on Lake Tarawera, and hot mud was poured from a geyser close to the Pink Terrace. These premonitory signs warned residents in the district that something still more unusual might ere long be expected.

At that time Rotomahana occupied nearly the lowest position on the

central axis of the volcanic zone between Wahanga and Ruapehu mountains. Its height above sea level was 1,080 ft. and its area 185 acres. The whole lake was warm, in some places barely tepid, in others approaching boiling-point. Around its margins the steam escaped from innumerable hot springs, fumaroles, and solfataras, particularly at the N. end, near the White Terraces. On the W. shore the Pink Terraces were also surrounded by hot springs and fumaroles. The water of the lake was of a greenish hue, reflecting the fern and manuca-covered hills which surrounded it; in its sedgy margins were vast numbers of aquatic birds. Several small streams of cold water found their way into the lake; but the outlet, from the N. end, was a strong stream of hot water forming the Kaiwaka River, which after a course of 1 m. and a descent of 40 ft. fell into Tarawera Lake, near the Maori village of Te Arika. It had hitherto been unknown what was the source of this river, as the supply from the streams that ran into Rotomahana was quite insufficient to account for the volume of the outflow; the eruption has disclosed the fact that it was mainly subterranean, the surface of much of the watershed being a porous deposit of pumice and loam.

Between Rotomahana and Tarawera Mt., about $\frac{1}{2}$ m. from the White Terraces, was Rotomakariri, the cold lake, with an area of about 23 acres, drained by the Awaporohe Stream. Between this lake and the mountain was a shallow valley called Waingongongo.

The plateau-like mountains to the E. of Lake Tarawera are now generally known by the name Tarawera; the Maoris however called the N. part Wahanga ('bursting open'), the central Ruawahia ('the cloven cave'), and the S. Tarawera ('the burnt cliff'). It is remarkable that these names should have been given previous

to the eruption of 1886, as there is no evidence that an eruption had taken place for many centuries, most probably not since the arrival of the Maoris in the country.

At 1 a.m. on June 10, 1886, slight earthquake shocks were felt and rumbling noises heard at the Wairoa village, 8 m. from Mt. Tarawera, and at Rotorua. By 2.20 the rumbling had increased to a roar and the shocks became violent. Clouds of smoke and vapour, their edges outlined and coloured by vivid flashes of electricity, rose over the hills near Tarawera. This was followed by repeated claps of thunder; whilst above the deafening roar was heard a strange rustling or crackling noise. An eye-witness, standing at the Wairoa, saw amidst the flashes of electricity, balls of fire, shooting forth, some apparently rolling slowly down into the lake. Up to 2.30 shocks continued at regular intervals every ten minutes. Small stones began to fall at Wairoa, as the great black cloud which had formed over the mountain worked its way towards the W.; this was followed by a downpour of mud, water, and larger stones, which destroyed several of the houses. This continued up to 6 o'clock, and was accompanied by a hot, suffocating blast. Meanwhile a great wind had arisen which rushed down the valley of the Wairoa towards the eruption, and branching off by the Tikitapu lake, passed up the funnel-shaped valley, and prostrated the beautiful forest.

Explosions, like the sound of distant cannon were heard as far as Whangarei, New Plymouth, Waipapu, Wellington, Nelson and Christchurch. At each report the windows of the houses at Auckland rattled, and flashes of the electric display were clearly seen.

The cloud of ashes and dust, which rose to a height of about 8 m., was carried by shifting winds first to the W. and then to the N. and E., and darkened the sky for hours after

daylight should have appeared. It finally passed out to sea, dropping as it went its load of matter, varying in depth from 1 in. to 3 ft., all over an area of 5,700 sq. m. of land, from the coast near Tairua on the W., to Anaura near Gisborne on the E. In some places the sun was not visible until 1 p.m. For several weeks afterwards slight shocks of earthquake were constantly felt in various parts of the country.

The matter ejected from Wahanga, Ruawhia, and Tarawera consisted only of black and red scoria, and it appears that the eruption was all over in about 6 hrs., as far as those mountains were concerned. At Rotomahana, however, it must have lasted much longer, and vast quantities of mud were thrown up—caused probably partly by the condensation of the steam-cloud charged with dust as it met the cold S.W. wind, and partly by the water and mud which occupied the former basin of the lake. This mud was cast to the W. and extended to Lake Rotorua.

The greatest consequence of the eruption has been the formation of a gigantic fissure running for 8½ m. from the N. end of Wahanga to near Okaro Lake. To the S.W. of this it is continued by earthquake cracks for some miles further. The greatest width of the fissure is 1½ m., and greatest depth 1,400 ft. It is not a continuous rent, as in several places it is bridged over by parts of original surface remaining in position; and thus rather presents the appearance of a series of irregularly shaped craters. The site of the Pink Terraces is now within the fissure; and Rotomahana and Rotomakariri are both so changed in size and shape as to be practically new lakes.

(For further information, see *The Eruption of Tarawera*, by S. Percy Smith; and *Report on the Eruption of Tarawera and Rotomahana* by Professor A. P. W. Thomas. Both these valuable pamphlets were published

by the N. Z. Government, and can be found in any of the large libraries in the Colony.)

The track from Ohinemutu follows the old road which led to the Terraces, through the once famous *Tikitapu Bush*, destroyed by the overwhelming force of the indraught of air which took place after the great eruption of Tarawera (see above). The bush has, however, already regained much of its former verdant beauty.

The path descends to *Tikitapu Lake*, which before the eruption was as blue as a sapphire but is now opaque like milk, its water being whitened by the great avalanches of pumice boulders and dust washed out of the mountain side. The scorise and fine dust, already referred to, which descended over all this country, caked hard over the surface like cement; and when the rains fell, the water, instead of sinking into the ground, flowed down the steep sides of the mountains, in torrents, cutting deep channels as it went; or filled the hollows like reservoirs until their sides could no longer bear its pressure, and bursting spread desolation on all sides. A narrow neck of land separates *Tikitapu* from the Green Lake (*Rotokakahi*), 100 ft. below it, where the same milky hue prevails. The path skirts this lake and soon *Wairoa Valley* is reached, and the new deep chasms opened in the soil attest the depth of the volcanic deposit and drift, and the excavating power of the rainfall.

The ruins of the once smiling village and mission station of *Wairoa*, and especially the wreck of the mission house and hotels, give startling evidence of the horrors of that fatal night, when the rain of stones and mud buried its unfortunate victims, and drove out so many homeless wanderers. Nature is doing her utmost to hide the scene of utter desolation, under a forest of new growth. Poplars, acacias, and gum-trees have taken a new lease of

life, and the spread of fern and shrubs, with dense thickets of tupaki, are rapidly effacing the destructive effects of that terrible devastation.

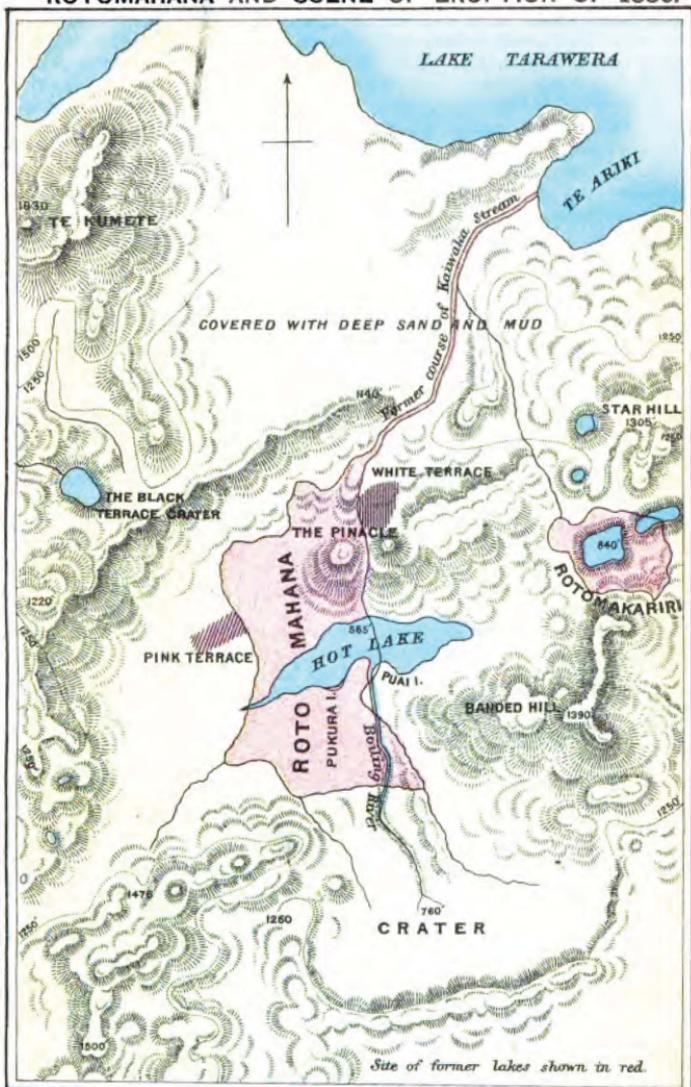
The beautiful *Wairoa Falls*, and the picturesque descent to the old landing-place, are still a fearful picture of ruin and disaster, and amid gaunt trunks of dead trees one seems to descend into the valley of desolation and death.

TARAWERA LAKE has completely lost its ancient charm of beauty. Bleak and barren cliffs frown, seamed and scarred around its borders, where verdure used to smile in rich luxuriance; a dull, creamy tint prevails over lake and shore, where once the deep blue waters rippled, reflecting the glossy green of its dense and overhanging foliage. A death-like silence reigns supreme where the Maori villages lie buried deep beneath that overwhelming torrent of mud and ashes.

Landing at the foot of *TARAWERA MOUNTAIN*, by water-courses excavated more than fifty feet in the old and new deposits, the ascent is easy till the *GREAT RIFT* overlooking *ROTOMAHANA* ('the warm lake') is reached. Here the fearful force of the terrible explosions can be partially realized as the panorama of desolation spreads in dead monotony over the landscape. Higher yet, the incline becomes steeper, but stout hearts and sturdy limbs surmount all difficulties, and the summit gained, the vastness of the destructive agencies of volcanic activity becomes real and apparent.

The mountain is rent in twain, and as far as the eye can reach, the whole country is covered with the ashes of that terrific outburst. The new *ROTOMAHANA* is slowly filling up the site of many of the deep craters formed during the morning of that great convulsion. The yawning rift is still hot and steaming; the stones near its mouth are too hot to handle, and a stick thrust into some of the fissures near the edge will take fire in a second. The sight is

ROTOMAHANA AND SCENE OF ERUPTION OF 1886.



Copyright

Scale of Miles

J. Bartholomew, Edin'

0 1/2 1 1/2 Miles

London. John Murray, Albemarle Street.



an education and an experience to be remembered for a lifetime. Should time permit, a camp may be formed at Tarawera, and the exploration continued over the site of the lost terraces, and around the chasms and ridges of Rotomahana.

(6) **Waiotapu.** This at present forms a separate excursion, the traveller returning to Rotorua; but when the carriage road which now stops at Waiotapu is continued further, it will join the road to Taupo at Wairakei; and Waiotapu will then be visited on the way from Rotorua to Taupo. Even now it is possible to ride on, either to Orakeikorako (18 m.) and thus to join the Taupo Road (see Rte. 5): or to Ohaki (6 m.) and thence to Wairakei (20 m. further).

The principal sights at Waiotapu are a little more than 20 m. from Ohinemutu; a carriage must be hired. It is possible to make the whole excursion in one day; but it is better, if time allows, to stop for the night at Scott's bungalow at Waiotapu (rough accommodation). Indeed, many days might be spent in exploring the wonders of this valley. One advantage of the excursion is that the terraces, the silica and other deposits, and the pools here seen, though on an infinitely smaller scale, enable the traveller to form a far better idea of what Rotomahana was before the eruption than anything else can do.

The traveller quits Rotorua by the S. road, passing Whakarewarewa. After 3 m. the road leaves that to Taupo on the rt. and turning to the E. crosses *Earthquake Flat*, a curious circular plain about 1½ m. across, surrounded by low grass-covered hills and traversed E. and W. by several cracks or fissures where the ground in places is as much as 6 ft. lower on one side than the other.

4 m. **PARHERU.** From the summit of this hill there is an extensive view* of the whole district where

the eruption took place, including the cleft in Tarawera.

The road then takes a winding course, and finally enters the Waiotapu valley between *Mt. Kakaramea* (2,500 ft.) and *Mt. Mangaungauanga*. Kakaramea, peculiar for the remarkable shades of red of which its rocks are composed, is a scarred and seamed volcanic cone, steaming at early morning from base to summit. At the foot of this mountain are two *small lakes*; one, of a bright green colour, is largely impregnated with iron, with curious ferruginous incrustations around its margins.

The Waiotapu valley extends for many miles southward in the direction of Taupo, but the road is only fit for horsemen. The view in that direction is fine, including the great snow mountains beyond Taupo lake.

Evidences of thermal action are very numerous, but the principal objects of interest are:—the *Champagne pool* (close to the small summer house made by the Maoris, a good place in which to rest or picnic), about ¼ of an acre in extent, is boiling and of a yellow colour; as soon as a handful of earth from the surrounding soil is thrown into it the water begins to effervesce—hence the name. The outlet from this pool flows down an abrupt slope and is called the *Primrose Falls*, from the tint given by sulphur and silica to the deposit over which the water steams;—the *Sulphur Falls*, a pretty little cascade; the *Explosion Craters*, a number of funnel-shaped pits;—the *Boiling Lake*, a vast caldron of deep blue water canopied by dense clouds of steam, similar in character to that of the lost Pink Terrace;—the *New Terrace*, a wide gentle slope of white silicious deposit, descending in rippled gradations from the caldron, and breaking into a series of small cascades;—and the *Alum Cliffs*, a series of bold white glistening bluffs, about 20 ft. high, sparkling with incrustations of alum, and

rising with perpendicular face from the shallow pools of warm water. The scenery here is exceedingly picturesque; the effect is heightened by dark clumps of manuka scrub and the varied tints and colours of the waters. Here are acid lakes adjoining others decidedly alkaline, and pools of brilliant colours close to others dark and muddy. The soil in places is of remarkable colour, varying from pale yellow to deep Indian red and crimson.

At a short distance from the above-mentioned springs is the so-called *Great Mud Crater*, a conical mound, some 8 or 10 ft. high, open at the top and filled with seething mud, like porridge: on its surface the rising bubbles of gas throw up small spurts of mud, which falling take the form of odd formal rosettes and flowers; they remain for a few seconds, and gradually losing their shape are absorbed and disappear.

ROUTE 5.

ROTORUA TO TAUPO.

By the main road, the distance is 56 m. Coaches run frequently, especially during the summer, and take one day to Taupo (and two on to Napier). But the tourist is recommended to go by Wairakei (which is off the direct road) and stay at least one day there and another at Taupo; the best plan therefore is to form a party and arrange for a special coach.

On leaving Rotorua, the road goes through the *Hemo gorge* above *Whakarewarewa*. Soon the turn to *Waio-tapu* is passed on the l. The road is level and good, but the scenery, though wild, is desolate; the pumice-stone, which has been showered over the land, adding to its barrenness. On the rt. is the flat-topped *Новоново Мт.*, which rises to an altitude of 2,800 ft. above the sea, and is a remarkable instance of the natural terracing already referred to. It has been suggested that the top of this basaltic mountain marks what was once the level of all the district, and that the land between it and the *Paeroa Range* to the l. has subsided. The road runs parallel with

it for 10 m. At its N. extremity is *Sugarloaf Hill* and a mausoleum of a Maori chief, and at its southern end is a curious detached pillar of basalt known as *Hine-Moa's Rock*.

18 m. Some strange rocks are passed bearing an odd, but somewhat far-fetched, resemblance to familiar objects. Amongst them the face of the Duke of Wellington is conspicuous.

24 m. Here the road to Lichfield branches off to the rt. (see Rte. 3), and soon the *Waikato* valley is entered, and turning l. the river is crossed to

25 m. **Ateamuri.**

Hotel (very comfortable).

The clear blue river is here seen sweeping round the base of *Mt. Ngatuku* and breaking into rapids above the bridge. All around is a wilderness of detached rocks; the largest, *Pohaturua*, a solitary pyramid about 800 ft. in height, is a striking and picturesque object, at one time the site of a fortified pa. The natural terracing in this district is very marked.

At Ateamuri a halt is made for lunch; and travellers not pressed for time may make a longer stay, as there are many hot springs and baths in the neighbourhood, and the river scenery is very pretty.

[An interesting excursion may be made from this point to Orakeikorako. Horses and guides can be obtained from the hotel. After a ride of about 12 m. through some very pretty river scenery, *Sinter Slope* is reached. Down this flows a stream of hot water, which leaves a silicious deposit of a pink colour. The top of the hill is a mere crust perforated with many holes through which steam rises. After walking along this for about a quarter of a mile, the traveller comes to the entrance of the *Alum Cave**. This is an arch of about 30 ft. high and the same width; within, the cave descends at a slope of 40 degrees, the width inside being about 42 ft. and the greatest height 64. Close to the entrance, some magnificent tree-ferns are growing. The colouring is exquisite; the roof being of every possible hue, beautifully blended; the blocks of rock with which the floor is strewn covered with a delicate deposit of snow-white alum. At the bottom is a warm pool of transparent green. Strange noises which proceed from an inner cave to the l. add to the weird effect of the scene.

A little lower down the river, chiefly on the opposite side, is a marvellous collection of geysers; Hochstetter counted seventy-six, all visible from one point. The ground near to them is very dangerous; tourists had better content themselves with a view from a safe distance.

Those who wish it, however, can have a delicious bath in the pool called *Te Mimihomaiterangi* (the properties of which are somewhat like those of Madame Rachel's bath at Rotorua) and a cold dip in the river afterwards. The river is crossed by a canoe.

From Orakeikorako the traveller may return to Ateamuri; or go on by another track, following the telegraph line for about 10 m. and then rejoin the Taupo road at Oruanui, about 3 m. N. of the turning to Wairakei (see below); or he may ride over the hills to Waiotapu (see Rte. 4).]

After leaving Ateamuri several Maori settlements are passed, and from *Puketerata*, the last of them, a distant view is obtained of *Ruapehu* and *Tongariro*, the snow-capped volcanoes to the S. of Lake Taupo.

45 m. Here the road divides. The more interesting one strikes off l. to *Wairakei*. Travellers who are going by a coach which takes the other route, but who wish to stop at Wairakei, should send a telegram beforehand to Mrs. Graham, of the Wairakei hotel; she will then have a buggy to meet them here.

[49 m. *Wairakei* (about 1,500 ft. above sea-level).

Hotel: *Graham's*, homely and comfortable.

At this charming spot the traveller may enjoy an invigorating climate, and see a marvellous variety of natural phenomena in constant activity. The flowers and fruit-trees near the homestead form a pleasing contrast to the wild moorland which has been passed through. At least a day should be spent here. The hotel is situated close to the banks of the *Kirihimikai*, a hot stream which flows from the *Blue Lake* to the *Waikato River*, with a temperature ranging from 90° to 110°. Along its course are several small falls, and the pools beneath them form natural baths, where comfortable bath-houses have been provided.

The *Waikato R.* is about 1 m. distant. The path to it leads through low terraced pumice hills, most remarkable for their extreme regularity and symmetry, resembling

military earthworks or embankments rather than natural mounds.

The Geyser Valley.—Across a range of fern hills, about a mile N. from the hotel, columns of steam may be seen rising from those marvellous hot springs and geysers, which will make the name of this district famous as one of the most wonderful centres of thermal activity in the world.

The Valley of Geysers has abrupt sides, from 60 to 100 ft. in height, beautifully wooded with manuka and carpeted with the choicest ferns and mosses. The numerous hot springs are made apparent by the dense clouds of vapour which are constantly ascending, and by mysterious noises, formed by the rushing of the waters and the escape of steam. The soil on both banks is very insecure; where it is not actually occupied by boiling or steaming holes, thousands of tiny steam-jets will be found issuing in every direction, many of which are hidden under dense velvety cushions of beautiful moss; patches of bare earth, porous and honeycombed, are to be avoided by the traveller, and the utmost caution must be exercised, as appearances are deceitful and treacherous in the extreme.

THE WAIRAKEI, the hot stream, which flows in rapid course over broken rocks through this valley, fed by the numerous hot springs on its banks, opens out into a blue lakelet of great beauty, and flows in a devious course into the Waikato River.

THE STEAM HAMMER.—On the banks of the lakelet, at regular intervals, the thud as of a Titanic forge at work is distinctly heard, followed by heavy reverberations which make the earth tremble; at each explosion the visitor looks round in surprise, not unmixed with alarm, to discover the cause: nothing is to be seen, however, but numerous jets of steam issuing from the banks of the stream.

Taking the geysers in order along the S. bank of the stream from E. to W., the first is *Te Kekerake*—a dark, cavernous opening, about 25 ft. in height and 10 ft. in width, close to the creek. It is enclosed by black rocks, which on the right are incrustated with white sinter. Some fragments of rock make a rough bridge across the opening, behind which can be seen a deep basin of boiling water. At irregular intervals this throws up a column of water to a height varying from 5 to 10 ft.

TUHUATAHI.—This is an enormous boiling caldron, situated about the centre of the geyser valley; it is easily approached by a good foot-path from the hill. The dense clouds which rise from its basin prevent any close examination from above; but from the side of the hill and from the level of the creek the sight is truly magnificent. The circular basin of about 50 ft. in diameter is in perpetual ebullition—in some places with bright, clear bubbles like champagne, in others, with sudden upheavals of vast masses of water to a height of 6 or 8 ft., while smaller fountains are constantly playing in different parts of the boiling area. Sometimes the action becomes more violent, and the whole surface is convulsed with foaming billows.

An escarpment of the hill rising about 60 ft., as a wall of black rock, with a fern-clad summit of about 20 ft. higher, forms a striking background. A buttress of rock 12 ft. high partly encloses the basin on the right, and affords a good position for a view of the caldron, and the enormous sponges of silicious deposit which are to be seen just below its deep blue surface.

A parti-coloured *terrace* of very brittle sinter forms the lip, or outer margin of the basin, and extends in rippled gradations to the stream; this is opened by numerous small springs, each of which imparts its

own peculiar colour to the deposit; patches of glistening white are here and there stained dark red or brown, while other springs form incrustations of the colour of sulphur or of cream.

A narrow fretted channel carries away the surplus water over incrustated sticks and stones to the creek. The general view of this geyser, obtained from the opposite bank, is magnificent, but from any distance Tuhatahi is one of the most interesting and wonderful sights in the district.

On the hillside is the *Pack-horse Mud Geyser*, a deep crater of lead-coloured mud, recently excited into activity by the frantic plunges of a pack-horse which accidentally fell into the open pit.

THE GREAT WAIRAKEI.—A short distance higher up the creek is another escarpment, in which is situated the Great Wairakei Geyser. The crater is a deep triangular chasm, about 20 ft. wide at the top, opening close under a perpendicular cliff of black rock, streaked with white incrustations. The crater is formed by beautiful spongy masses of light brown sinter. A large incrustated rock, like a canopied arm-chair, forms the apex of the triangle, and at its foot is the narrow outlet. This geyser is very energetic, but intermittent, and of irregular force and volume; at intervals of about eight minutes the water in the crater becomes suddenly and violently agitated; it then rises rapidly, and enormous quantities are spasmodically ejected to a height of from 4 to 15 ft.—occasional outbursts forming a fountain of 40 ft. high—the whole eruption lasting about two minutes; the boiling overflow then rushes through a channel of broken sinter to the creek. The finest view of the eruption is to be seen from the steep bank, just to the right of the crater, but the position is very dangerous and must be taken with great care.

LITTLE WAIRAKEI, a picturesque boiling pool, with small fretted white terraces, situated about 20 ft. to the west of the Great Wairakei.

SULPHUR POOL, a small circular pond of 10 ft. in diameter, enclosed by manuka scrub, situated just above Little Wairakei, constantly exhaling fumes of sulphurous acid.

THE HERON'S NEST, a remarkable geyser cone of incrustated sticks, close to the bank of the creek above Great Wairakei, but very difficult of access, except from the opposite bank. This has an intermittent fountain, rising 6 or 8 ft.; around this cone are numerous fumaroles, partially concealed in the scrub, but the treacherous nature of the soil forbids a closer acquaintance.

THE NORTH BANK.—Crossing the creek by the Steam Hammer, the tourist will discover a succession of terraces and geyser cones, which, with their extraordinary variety of formation, colour, deposit, and incrustation, form marvellous pictures of enchanting scenery and wonderful natural phenomena.

THE PETRIFYING GEYSER.—This remarkable spring rises in the steep bank of the hill, about 40 ft. above the level of the creek, and covers every substance over which it falls with an exceedingly beautiful incrustation resembling red coral.

The source of the stream is an irregular intermittent geyser, with a small funnel opening in hard, grey rock, and the overflow falls in a succession of red coralline cascades, formed by its own deposits. The glistening stream rippling over the beautiful lace-work of incrustations, and the rich contrast of colour, formed by the warm, red ground, with the overhanging foliage, completes a most delightful series of pictures.

THE TERRACE GEYSERS.—On the rock-strewn bank of the Wairakei Creek, under the shelter of high manuka,

the tourist obtains a view of this unique system of thermal action.

NGA MAHANGA (THE TWINS), a large pear-shaped basin, 24 x 12 ft., bordered with irregular spongy rocks of light brown sinter, with a back wall of dark grey rock, partially incrustated in various fantastic forms. The front of the basin forms a lip about 4 ft. above the stream, which the overflow has draped with long, pendant, spongy masses. The basin is divided into two portions by a mass of sinter resembling a large Turkey sponge, about 10 ft. in diameter, rising about 3 ft. above the surface of the water.

When an eruption is about to take place, the smaller portion of the basin heaves and raises a fountain about 4 ft. high, after which the whole basin suddenly rises about a foot, and then boils furiously for a few seconds. This is only a prelude to the great display, when, from the whole surface of the water, rises a splendid fountain to a height varying from 3 to 15 ft.—the upper spray being sometimes thrown to twice the elevation of the main body of water. Several outbursts occurred at intervals of four or five minutes, lasting about thirty seconds; the periods are, however, very irregular. A reddish-brown slimy cascade, and numerous rounded masses of white and orange sinter, form the western boundary of *The Twins*, adjoining which are large rounded masses of grey rock, forming a long, broken terrace, having together a frontage of about 100 ft.

THE PRINCE OF WALES' FEATHERS.—In the midst of a large mass of pale brown incrustations, in the centre of the Terraces, is a circular opening of about 12 in. in diameter; with a small bridge, like a child's arm, across the mouth; from whence issues suddenly, and without warning, at irregular intervals, a beautiful fountain which takes the form of the Prince of Wales' feathers—frequently throwing its watery plumes

on either side to a distance of 50 ft., and reaching an elevation of at least 25 ft.—this extraordinary display lasting about thirty seconds. As there is nothing whatever in the appearance of this insignificant opening to give the faintest idea of the pent-up force below, this part of the terrace should be approached with the greatest care.

THE WHISTLER.—About 6 ft. behind is a black cavernous mouth, 2 ft. in diameter, through which water is occasionally spouted; this has been called *Korochiti*, or *The Whistler*. In a fissure of black rock, 10 ft. to the west, is a small *water-spout*, which appears to act simultaneously with the whistle, at intervals of ten minutes. Directly under the hill above *The Whistler*, and completely sheltered by scrub, is a bath of boiling water, 20 ft. x 3 ft., of a delicate pale blue tint, lined with white silica.

THE BOILERS.—This is a rock-bound pool, about 8 ft. x 3 ft., with a background of dark red rock, covered with green slimy algae, partially separated by a narrow chasm from the rest of the terrace. The water is continually boiling, and spasmodically ejecting a column to the height of 6 or 8 ft. Below this is another opening with white coralline incrustations. The overflow forms a pretty cascade, falling into the creek and forming the western extremity of the terrace.

THE FUNNEL is a large triangular fissure in the black rock, 25 ft. above the creek, adjoining the terrace. Steam is continually issuing from its mouth, but occasional geyser displays of great volume are accompanied with a loud, roaring noise, and a sudden cascade of hot water falling over a series of broken incrustations in its descent.

THE EAGLE'S NEST.—Concealed among the trees, a few yards further to the west, is this singularly beautiful geyser cone, about 12 ft. in

diameter, and rising 4 or 5 ft. from the ground; it is formed of long sticks, built up like an eagle's nest, incrustated and cemented with snow-white sinter. An intermittent geyser sends up a feathery fountain at irregular intervals, the deposit upon evaporation frosting the sticks which have been laid across the basin.

THE OLD TERRACE.—This forms a paved plateau on the higher ground above the creek. It is partially decomposed and overgrown with tangled shrubs. The basin from whose overflow it was formed—a circular pool of thick, white, muddy water, hissing and sputtering at its surface—may be found behind, partially concealed in the scrub. From this terrace the best general view of the caldron of *Tuawatahi* is to be obtained.

THE MUD VOLCANOES form an interesting series of great variety. They occur in several large patches of white and grey mud, forming deep cup-shaped craters, steaming cones, and seething pools of various degrees of consistency.

THE WHITE SPRINGS are two large blue basins, and a small lakelet of milky water, containing white clay in suspension, boiling and bubbling constantly, but being at times more violently agitated. The high ground here affords the best view of the Great Wairakei.

THE DONKEY ENGINE.—In the valley by the bed of the creek, and immediately opposite the Great Wairakei, is a small, regular, intermittent ejector, whose pulsating throb reverberates like the thud of a small steam-engine. It is very difficult of access; but, when standing on the opposite bank, the regular puff of steam and its monotonous vibrations are very striking.

On this lower level, and partly concealed under the dense foliage, are the *Fairy Baths*, a pretty group of small, hot pools, of various tints.

[*New Zealand.*]

THE DRAGON'S MOUTH.—A short distance further to the westward is a singular geyser-fissure, opening from a long, deep chasm about 30 ft. above the level of the creek, to the l. of which is a small opening, apparently full of bright red paint. The geyser is very energetic—boiling, sputtering, and throwing up beautiful feathery fountains, sometimes to a height of 10 ft. above the cone. An eruption lasts from fifteen to twenty seconds, succeeded by a short interval of rest. The discharge falls in a narrow channel, through spongy masses of incrustations, and forms a very pretty series of small cascades. The terrace is about 15 ft. wide—parti-coloured red, dark brown, black, grey, and white. The soil above is bright red, overhung with stunted shrubs and manuka.

Near the base is the *Lightning Pool*, a small, circular, boiling basin, about 4 ft. in diameter, in whose blue depths the bubbles of steam can be seen to ascend like balls of light, which break in heavy ripples on its surface. The lower portion of this terrace is covered with a pink coral-line sinter of exquisite beauty.

THE BLACK GEYSER.—A short distance further, and close to the bed of the creek, is one of the most remarkable of this wonderful series; a small circular black basin, of about 8 ft. in diameter, with clear, hot water, partly filled with smooth, black incrustated stones, shining like fragments of coal. Around this basin is a brown deposit with numerous small nodules and concretions. This geyser fountain plays occasionally, and the surface of the pool is in a state of constant agitation.

PIROREORI, OR BLUE LAKE.—This volcanic centre is situated near the road, two miles west from the station. It consists of a long, oval lake, with steep, precipitous banks, which on one side are covered with dense vegetation, and on the opposite side the bare face of the cliff is orna-

mented by variegated vertical bands of coloured clays. At one side of the lake, reached by a steep descent, is a dark cave, lined with some rare ferns and lichens, and on the opposite side the lake opens into an active volcanic area, with numerous mud pools and boiling springs. Two circles near the shore of the lake enclose hot pools, producing the singular effect of a lake within a lake. The soft, pale blue colour of the lake is due to the clay, &c. held in suspension in its constantly active basin; the outflow forms the Kiriohinekei hot stream.

SULPHUR SPRINGS.—A short distance toward the south are some energetic solfataras, with large deposits of pure sulphur.

OKURAWAI (THE COLOURED SPRINGS).—These remarkable hot springs are situated on the side of a hill, about $1\frac{1}{2}$ m. S.W. from the homestead, where more than a hundred boiling springs break out through mud of various colours; some are active basins, 20 ft. in diameter, vigorously ejecting spouts of water or clay, from 2 to 4 ft. in height; others are simply boiling mud holes, from a few inches to 10 or 12 ft. in diameter. The great charm of Okurawai is the great variety of colour here displayed. Pools, like pots of red paint, alternate with pink, orange, yellow, cream, grey, and white. The hillside is further variegated by patches of red, black, orange, and grey, with beautiful emerald clumps of fern and moss, while the banks are covered with dark green scrub, sprinkled with white blossom, and the foreground is broken by some blue and white pools. The rising and drifting veil of steam, partly hiding, then disclosing fresh combinations of colour, produces a dazzling and enchanting effect.

KARAPITI (THE GREAT STEAM-HOLE)¹ is 2 m. from Wairakei on the hill side, beyond the coloured springs,

¹ This can perhaps be most conveniently seen on the way to Taupo (see below).

facing southward. It is one of the most remarkable sights in this truly remarkable district, and forms a striking feature in the landscape for miles round. It is rather difficult of access owing to the treacherous nature of the ground and to the density of manuka scrub with which it is surrounded. The hole itself is about 1 ft. in diameter, and from it a fierce jet of steam constantly issues with a deafening roar. It is impossible to estimate its force with exactness, but it has been calculated as equal to the pressure of 500 lbs. to the square inch.

[An excursion may be made from Wairakei to the *ARATEATEA RAPIDS*, about $3\frac{1}{2}$ m. down the Waikato. Here the river rushes with furious speed through a long tortuous channel between enormous scattered boulders and formidable rocky walls, forming foaming cataracts, rushing rapids, and deep dark pools, with the steep sides of the valley rising on either side more than 200 ft. in height. From the heights on the l. bank of the river a good general view of the rapids may be obtained.]

Proceeding on the road to Taupo,

51 m. **KARAPITI** (the great steam hole) is passed at a short distance off the road to the rt.

52 m. The **HUKA FALLS**. A splendid fall of the Waikato River. The river is confined for some distance in a straight, narrow chasm or channel, between precipitous rocky walls. The course forms a steep and rugged descent, along which the deep blue water foams, whirls, and surges with terrific fury, until at length it breaks with a fearful roar over a steep precipice into a wide open pool below, that foams and heaves with breaking circles and whirling eddies, while rainbow hues flit about the drifting spray.

It is possible to clamber underneath the Falls, between the water and the rock; but the descent is difficult, and the return much more so. None should attempt it without a guide.

A story is told of a party of Taupo natives who went to visit the Wanganui tribe, and told them about their famous rapids, which no canoe could pass. The Wanganui men, accustomed to a more peaceful river, ridiculed the idea. Their Taupo friends accordingly dared them to come and try. They accepted the challenge; came to the spot and made the attempt, only to learn the folly of ignorant boasting; the canoe was dashed to atoms and none of the Wanganui men escaped alive.

The Valley below the Falls towards Wairakei is well wooded, and the surrounding scenery is rugged and romantic. Well-defined river terraces form a succession of levelled strands, while *Tauhara* and some smaller hills make a picturesque background.

A splendid view may be obtained from the suspension bridge which crosses the river above the Falls.

56 m. Taupo—or rather *Tapu-waoharuru*, which is the proper name of the township: Taupo, like Rotorua, properly meaning the lake.

Hotels: *Gallagher's and Noble's*, in the township.

Joshua's, at the Spa described below (2 m. from the township).

Ross's Hot Lake Hotel, at Waipahihi (1½ m. from the township).

Travellers who wish to be near hot baths will probably choose either *Joshua's* or *Ross's*.

The village is now very small; it was larger in former times, when it was an important station for the armed constabulary. *Taupo* is the largest lake in the Island, its extreme length is about 25 m., and its total area 230 sq. m.: its altitude above the sea is 1,211 ft. Steam launches and boats can be hired close to the Village. The view over the lake, with *Tongariro* and *Ruapehu* in the distance, is very fine; on the other side, the solitary peak of *TAUHARA* (3,603 ft.), an extinct volcano, stands out impressively. Close by, the Waikato R. flows out of the

lake; many of the reaches are very beautiful, and of easy access either from the township or from *Joshua's*. The air in this neighbourhood is fresh and invigorating.

If the tourist is not staying at *Joshua's*, he should make it his first excursion. A good road of about 2 m., pleasantly planted with trees, leads to it from the township. The gardens of the hotel have been beautifully laid out; it forms a delightful place for a few days' rest. The *Maori house*, which is close to the Spa, has very fine specimens of native carving, in the usual style. The *swimming bath*—where the bather can take a swim in hot, warm, or cold water as he pleases—is simply delightful. Within a mile round the Spa are about twenty warm springs; and sources of totally different characters—alkaline, saline, sulphurous, arsenical, and others—flow into the same channel that passes through the grounds of the Spa. In the valley are sulphur and alum baths, tiny volcanoes of boiling mud (which the natives eat with relish, but Europeans usually consider too like magnesia to be appetizing), and many steam holes and boiling springs. The most beautiful sight is the *Crow's Nest**, a low mound of silicious deposit around the orifice of an eruptive geyser, which sends up volumes of water to a height varying from 8 in. to 80 ft. at uncertain intervals. Situated as it is close to the beautiful river (which in fact is the cause of the geyser) the sight is all the more impressive.

If, however, the tourist has decided to stay at *Joshua's*, his first excursion will be to

Waipahihi, about 1½ m. beyond the township, at the junction of the roads to *Tokaano* and *Napier*. The hotel (*Ross's*) is new and large; the view from it over the lake magnificent. The best baths are those in the little valley at the back of the house which are included in the hotel grounds, comprising about 7 acres, tastefully laid out.

In this little ravine, which leads from *Tauhara* mountain, is a series of miniature hot lakes, mineral springs, and chalybeate waters, with excellent bathing accommodation.

The *Black Terrace* is a curious deposit of bronze, green, and black, streaked with white and brown, caused by the admixture of iron with the silica of the hot springs.

EXCURSIONS.

(1) To *Tauhara*. The base of this mountain is about 1 mile from

the township. The ascent is not difficult, and the view from the summit well repays the traveller.

(2) To *Rotokawa*. A ride or drive of about 8 m. It is an extensive lake; at the N. end are hot springs, and large deposits of crystallized sulphur.

(3) To *Tokaano*. See Rte. 10.

Excellent pheasant and duck shooting can be obtained in the vicinity of Taupo.

ROUTE 6.

TAUPO TO NAPIER.

From Taupo to Napier is 98 m. coaching and takes two days. Coaches run frequently, especially in summer; and arrangements for special coaches can easily be made. The whole journey is interesting, and part of it very beautiful.

TAUPO TO TARAWERA. 48 m.

1½ m. *Waipahiti*. See Rte. 5. Here the road to Tokaano branches off to the rt. (See Rte. 10.)

The road then gradually ascends until it reaches

12 m. *Opepe*. The scene of a terrible incident which occurred on June 7, 1869.

Colonel St. John was engaged investigating the positions near Taupo available for military purposes, whilst a number of his men mounted guard at Opepe. The Maoris discovered their presence by seeing smoke issuing from whares which had been deserted. The troopers foolishly left their arms in the whares. The natives by a ruse got in between the troopers and their arms, and then attacked them; eight were killed, and one wounded; three escaped unhurt and reached Galatea

the next day. The graves of those who fell may be seen in passing Opepe, on the l.

The road then passes over the *Kaingaroa Plains*, a barren tract of country, sparsely covered with manuka and tussock grass. The views of the mountains to the rt. are fine.

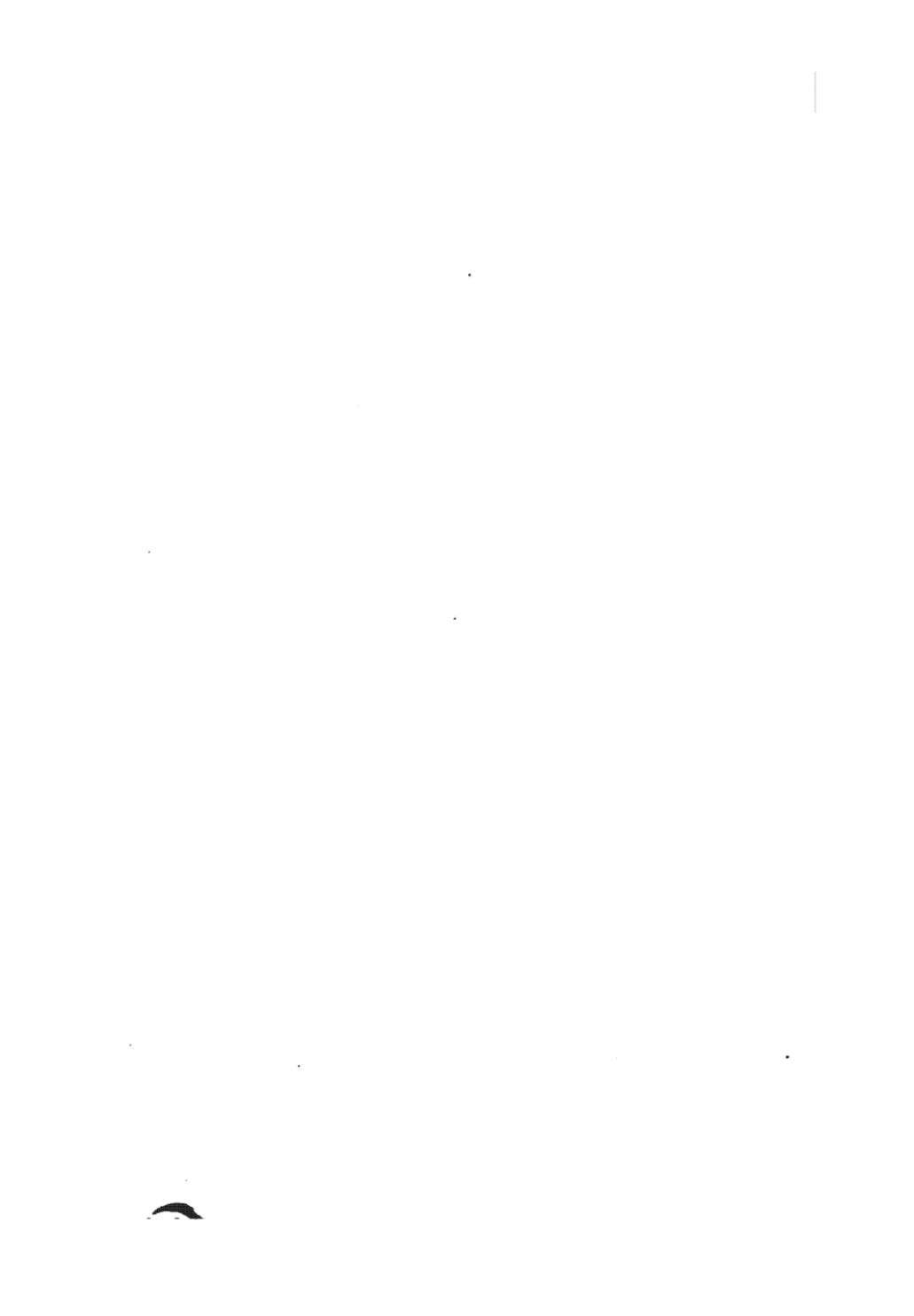
20 m. *RANGITAIKI STREAM*. Travelers stop for luncheon at the little hotel here.

The great Rununga plain is then traversed.

36 m. The *Waipuna stream*, on the edge of the plain. Just after crossing the bridge, a fine waterfall may be seen on the rt. A finer one however, which is not in sight from the road, may be reached by a walk of a few minutes.

On the top of the hill which overlooks the Waipuna, was placed a *redoubt* during the campaign of 1868.

41 m. Here the road enters a magnificent forest, which it is an insult to call 'bush.' The whole road from this to Tarawera is pretty and winding, passing through charming



gorges. It descends for about 1,000 ft. down the *Pakaranui hill*, and at last reaches

48 m. Tarawera. Hotel.

A small settlement on the *Waipunga River*, not to be confused with the lake of the same name near Rotorua. At the comfortable little hotel, a halt is made for the night. The natural terracing is very remarkable. Some traces of ancient Maori fortification, and of the war time, may be seen. As the name Tarawera implies, there are warm springs here; but as the nearest is $1\frac{1}{2}$ m. from the hotel, the tourist is not likely to visit them.

TARAWERA TO NAPIER. 50 m.

After leaving Tarawera, the road descends into the *Waipunga gorge*, and at 4 m. rises by a long zigzag for $4\frac{1}{2}$ m. up the *Turanga-kumu hill*. The view on the ascent from *Stoney Creek stream* (about 1,600 ft. above the sea) is glorious; in the foreground are deep valleys, and beyond, mountain ranges stretching away as far as the eye can reach. The road continues to ascend, passing through stunted bush; the highest point, *Tupurupuru*, being nearly 3,000 ft. above the sea. The Maori settlement of *Te Haroto*, and a blockhouse of the same name, which was erected in 1866, are then passed; and the road, descending for 9 m., passes down the steep side of the hill. Remains of charred wood will be noticed in the pumice on the l. side of the road. This marks the outskirts of the Taupo volcanic zone.

17 m. *MOHAKA RIVER*. Small Hotel. At this point the road crosses the river by a bridge, near a small cascade on the further side, and winds up a terribly steep cliff and hill, ascending 1,400 feet in 5 m., to the summit of the *Titiokuru Saddle* (2,450 feet) on the *Maungaharuru* range. From this point the view over the sea and the Napier hills is very fine. The town may be seen. The road then

again descends rapidly, and passes through a small piece of bush.

23 m. *Pohui*. Here a halt is made for luncheon.

The road now passes for some distance over an open plateau, and then enters the valley of the *Esk*. This river is forded no less than forty-seven times. The scenery, which is not remarkable, improves at the lower end, when the fertile valley of the *Petane* is entered. The name *Petane* (*Bethany*) was given by the missionaries. Unfortunately the associations with the spot are anything but peaceful.

At the station known as Carr's a detachment of twenty-five Maoris was intercepted by Major Fraser in 1866. Major Fraser first sent a party to cut off the enemy's retreat by a small gorge through which they had to pass, and then barred their way in front with the remainder of his company. The natives refused to surrender, and retired to a small house for shelter; Major Fraser immediately ordered his men to fire; twelve were killed, one wounded, and three taken prisoners; six only managed to escape by fording the river.

A new road, now in course of construction, will pass through the *Mangakopikopiki valley*. (The name means 'very crooked,' and all travellers will admit the correctness of the designation.) The crossings of the river will be thus avoided. The old road will be rejoined at the lower end of the valley of the *Esk*.

45 m. Petane. Hotel.

A small settlement, close to the sea. At the mouth of the river is a Maori village, usually containing from fifty to one hundred natives.

A long bridge, called the *Ahuriri*, crossing an estuary which forms the Inner Harbour, leads to *Scinde Island* (as the Peninsula is named on which Napier is built). Passing by the *Spit* (a suburb of the town) the road rises to

50 m. NAPIER. See Rte. 8.

ROUTE 7.

TAURANGA TO GISBORNE AND NAPIER BY LAND.

This is an interesting and beautiful trip, much of it being through native districts. It is, however, very rough, and should only be attempted by strong and adventurous tourists. From Tauranga to Gisborne will take ten days. It is possible to drive for the first three days to Opotiki (or even to do this part in two days, by going the first day as far as Matata). After Opotiki, the traveller must ride; it is therefore the simplest plan to buy a horse and saddle at Tauranga, and ride the whole way.

The Bay of Plenty is a fertile district, with a mild and delightful climate. It was visited by Cook in 1769, when coming northwards from Turanga (Gisborne). There was some fighting here during the East Coast War of 1865.

TAURANGA. See Rte. 3.

From Tauranga to Maketu is 30 m. by the inland route, 22 m. by the beach. The former is recommended. There is a good coach road all the way. The country is flat and open, with scrub and fern; farms and flax mills are seen at intervals.

15 m. **Te Puke.** **Hotel.**

A small village, the centre of a special settlement of small farmers, founded by Mr. Vesey Stewart. The scenery is pretty, but not bold. The alluvial soil is rich.

30 m. **Maketu.** Here a halt may be made for the night.

Hotel: *Robertson's.*

A large native settlement with a European quarter, official and missionary. Tradition says that it was the original landing-place of the

Maoris in N. Z., the 'Arawa' and the 'Tainui' having come here. The Tainui went on to Mokau, but the Arawa was drawn up on the beach here. On the beach may be seen the Arawa grove, which is said to have grown from the skids of the great canoe, which the emigrants had brought with them from Hawaiki. The present trees, however, seem to be common native ones. (At Mokau there is a similar grove, called the Tainui grove; the trees of which it is formed being of a variety otherwise unknown in N. Z., and called the Tainui trees. It is of course possible that similar trees may have taken root here, but, been killed by the stronger native growth.)

Many old fortifications, telling of ancient tribal wars, may be seen in the immediate neighbourhood. A large pa here was sacked by Hongi in 1823.

The road goes somewhat inland, the scenery for some way not being striking. After passing the small native settlement of *Otamarakau*, on a river of the same name, it skirts the foot of some lofty pumice-stone cliffs, of which the colouring is very fine.

50 m. **Matata.** Here the traveller halts for the night.

Hotel. A large native settlement.

On leaving Matata, the *Rangitaiiki River* is crossed in a canoe. A buggy can be taken in the canoe, the horse swimming. Fare, 1s. per passenger; 5s. for a buggy.

The road then goes along the beach. The Rurima Rocks, Whale Island, and the lofty crater of White Island, from which a column of

steam usually ascends, may be seen on the l.

Shortly before reaching Whakatanae, the river Whakatanae is crossed in a canoe; fare, as above.

65 m. Whakatanae. Hotel.

A settlement, both native and European, situated at the foot of a range of hills.

This was the scene of the murder of Mr. Falloon by the Hauhaus in 1865. The murderers were pursued by the Arawa under Major Mair; captured, tried, and executed. The village was destroyed and the district overrun by Te Kooti in 1869.

Small steamers ply between this and other coastal ports.

The road then ascends the range and proceeds along an upland plateau for about 3 m. Before the descent to the beach, the panorama is fine.

75 m. Ohiwa. Inn.

Here an inlet of the sea is crossed by a canoe (fare 2s. per passenger).

Enquiries should be made here as to the practicability of the Waitahi ford, which depends on the tide.

79 m. *Waitahi*. Here the river is forded.

83 m. The Huntress' Creek is forded.

85 m. *Opotiki*. Here the traveller halts for the night.

Hotels: *Opotiki*; *Masonic*; and others.

Church: *Ang.*

The Rev. C. Volkner, a devoted missionary, was barbarously murdered here on March 2, 1865. The Rev. T. Grace, and some others who had come from Auckland with Mr. Volkner, were seized and kept for some time in close confinement; but on the arrival of H.M.S. *Eclipse* they managed to escape.

The town is situated on a large alluvial flat at the foot of the hills. The land is very fertile. Small steamers ply between this and other coastal ports.

Excursions may be made from here into the 'Uriwera Country.'

Opotiki being the most easterly settlement in the Bay of Plenty, the traveller now enters a purely native district. Almost the only European residents are the teachers at the Government schools, which are established in all the larger native villages. The buggy (if used so far) should be here discarded, and the traveller proceed on horseback. The services of the guide become valuable, and, after a short distance, necessary.

Before leaving *Opotiki*, enquiries should be made as to the fording of the Omaramutu River, which depends on the tide.

93 m. *Omaramutu*. A large Maori settlement, near the river.

[From here a track strikes across the county to Gisborne, 100 m. The journey takes three days, the nights being spent in camping out. The scenery in crossing the ranges, and passing through the bush, is very fine.]

The road then proceeds over hilly country with very beautiful scenery towards the shore, to

100 m. *Turere*. A large native settlement.

104 m. *Hawai*. The crossing of the stream here is sometimes difficult. Inquiries should be made at the settlement.

Here the track divides. The relative advantages of each depend on the tides, &c.

109 m. *Maraenui*. A Maori settlement of considerable size.

Just after passing *Maraenui*, the *Motu* River is forded. A guide is absolutely necessary.

116 m. *Omaio*. Here the traveller halts for the night.

Hotel. A large native settlement, all Hauhaus.

Soon after leaving *Omaio*, a fine view may be seen to the rt., with Mount Hardy in the distance.

126 m. Te Kaha. Inn.

A collection of native settlements.

The road now becomes very romantic, with deeply wooded valleys, interspersed with bare ridges of hill; on the l., broken coast and deep-blue sea. White Island may be seen at a distance of upwards of 30 m., sending up its cloud of steam. In front, the coast line stretches far away to Cape Runaway.

Here and there on the way are passed immense trenches, telling of ancient tribal wars, with trees of considerable size growing in them.

146 m. Raukokore. Here the traveller halts for the night. There is an hotel, but the accommodation is rough.

The next morning, an early start should be made. A guide is absolutely necessary for the whole day's journey.

154 m. Whangaparaoa, close to Cape Runaway.

When Cook visited this district in 1769, armed Maoris put off from the shore in a menacing manner. Grape and cannon shot having been fired near them, they ran away. Hence the name of the Cape.

Here the Bay of Plenty is left. The road follows for a short distance the course of the *Whangaparaoa River*; then crosses high hills which form the watershed between the Bay of Plenty and Hicks' Bay. The *Raukumara Range*, and *Mount Hikurangi*, may be seen to the rt. The vast extent of hill scenery is striking and remarkable. After crossing the dividing range, the road follows the gorge of the *Waikohu* (literally, the 'Misty Water') to *Hicks' Bay*. The scenery on the river is very beautiful. The road crosses and recrosses the river by innumerable fords.

171 m. Hicks' Bay. Here the traveller halts for the night. There is a native accommodation house, kept by Wi Pahuru. The Bay was first described by Lieutenant Hicks, during Cook's first visit to N. Z.

The road now traverses a steep and lofty hill, commanding a beautiful view to the east.

181 m. Te Kawakawa. Hotel.

On the hill above the settlement are the remains of an extensive pa, wheresome severe fighting took place in the time of Hongi.

The road now goes along the beach, broken here and there by headlands with papa rocks at the foot of them. The last headland is East Cape. The road then crosses the hills to

205 m. Waipuu. Here the traveller halts for the night. **Hotel.**

A small settlement in an important Maori district of the same name. The Ang. Bp., who resides at Napier, takes his title from this place.

From Waipuu the view of the *Hikurangi mountain* is magnificent.

A few miles up the river are the *petroleum workings*, now abandoned.

The road then crosses the Waipuu river.

209 m. Awanui. After this, the services of a guide are no longer essential. European settlement becomes frequent. The road is along a rough beach.

215 m. Repoua. A considerable native settlement.

219 m. Tuparoa. Hotel.

Near here, is Sir George Whitmore's station.

226 m. Akuaku, on Open Bay.

229 m. Waipiro. From this the inland track should be taken,

234 m. A small group of hot springs are seen here. One of them, which has passed through a bed of rock salt, forms a pleasant bath.

The road comes down to the sea again at

239 m. Tokumaru. Hotel.

From this the inland track should again be taken to

270 m. Tolago (Uawa). Here the traveller halts for the night.

Hotel: (good).

This place was visited by Cook on Oct. 29, 1769. Having been as far south as Cape Turnagain, he turned again and came northward along the coast. Both Cook and Sir J. Banks bore testimony to the politeness and civilization of the natives residing there.

Cook's Cove, from which he took his supply of fresh water, can be reached by boat or on horseback.

After this, there is a good road along the coast.

284 m. Pakarae. **Hotel.**

Here the traveller may lunch, having ordered his luncheon by telephone from Tolago.

305 m. GIBBORNE.

Hotels: *Masonic; Argyle; Albion;* and others.

Club: *Poverty Bay* (non-residential).

Churches: *Ang.; Pres.; R. C.; West.; Cong.*

Pop.: 2,250.

This was the first district visited by Captain Cook. He landed at Turanga on Oct. 8, 1769. In consequence of his unfortunate encounter with the natives, during which several of them were killed, he was unable to procure anything but a little wood; hence he named it (most inappropriately) Poverty Bay. A boy on board his ship, named Nicholas Young, having been the first to sight N. Z., the S.W. point of the bay was called 'Young Nick's Head.'

About 10 m. inland is the district of Matawhero, the scene of the massacre of Europeans and friendly natives by Te Kooti on the night of November 9, 1868. There was much fighting in the district soon after.

The soil in the neighbourhood is very rich, but difficulty of access both by land and sea has hitherto retarded settlement. Much of the land is owned by natives, and the

harbour is not good. A breakwater is however now in course of construction.

From Gisborne the traveller may proceed by sea to Napier, 90 m. Large steamers go weekly; smaller ones also frequently. He may, however, continue his journey overland, by Wairoa, 140 m. From Gisborne to Wairoa, 70 m., there is a coach road, and coaches occasionally run. The journey occupies two days, the night being spent at the *Waihou lakes*, where there is a small inn.

70 m. Wairoa (Clyde).

Hotels: *Clyde; Wairoa.*

Churches: *Ang.; Pres.; R. C.*

From Wairoa several excursions can be made. The scenery in the district is very lovely. The most famous sights are the *Waikaremoana* lake (as beautiful as any in the Island), the *Te Beinga Falls* of the *Wairoa R.*, and many limestone caves in the *Whakapunaki range*.

From Wairoa the traveller may proceed by sea to Napier, 40 m. Only small steamers however call at Wairoa. If he desire to proceed by land, he must make the journey on horseback, 70 m. A guide is not absolutely necessary. The road is in many places very broken, but all quite practicable.

20 m. Mohaka. **Hotel.**

Here the traveller halts for the night.

The geological formation of this place is curious, the natural terracing being very strongly marked. The spot has also a painful historical interest, as the site of the massacre of seven Europeans and fifty-seven natives by Te Kooti and his followers in 1870.

The road then lies at first along the beach, and afterwards crosses five lofty limestone ridges, everywhere very rich in fossils. At last a descent is made near the mouth of the *Petane R.* (See Rte. 6.)

70 m. NAPIER. (See Rte. 8.)

ROUTE 8.

NAPIER AND NEIGHBOURHOOD.

NAPIER.

Hotels: *Criterion; Masonic; Clarendon;* and others.

Clubs: *Hawke's Bay* (residential); *Napier* (non-residential).

Churches: *Ang.; Pres.; R. C.; West.*; and others.

Pop.: 8,400.

Conveyances: *Omnibuses* ply between the town (starting at the Bank of N. Z.) and Hospital Hill.

Hackney Carriages. Within the town, one-horse carriages, each passenger, 6d.; two-horse carriages, one passenger, 1s.; every additional passenger, 6d. From Port Ahuriri to the town, all carriages, 1s. per passenger. From the Port or the town to the hills, one passenger, 2s.; every additional passenger, 1s. *By time.* One-horse carriage, 4s. an hour; 1s. every subsequent quarter of an hour; two-horse carriages and hansoms, 5s. an hour, 1s. 3d. every subsequent quarter of an hour. Half fares extra between 9 p.m. and midnight; double fares between midnight and 6 a.m.

Napier may be approached

(1) By coach from Taupo. See Rte. 6.

(2) By rail from Woodville. See Rte. 9.

(3) On horseback from Wairoa. See Rte. 7.

(4) By sea, from Gisborne or Wellington.

The town was laid out in 1855. The Province of Hawke's Bay, of which it was the capital, was separated from Wellington in 1850. Here as elsewhere Provincial Government was abolished in 1876. The Provincial District includes some of the richest land in New Zealand, and contains about 13,000

horses, 54,000 cattle, and 3,000,000 sheep. The climate is warm, dry, and healthy; in several places particularly suited to the cultivation of grapes, hops, tobacco, and various kinds of fruit. The natives in the district have shared in the general prosperity, many of them are wealthy landowners, living in comfortable houses, and keeping horses and carriages.

The site of the present town was visited by Cook during his first voyage in 1769. His Tahitian boy, Tayeto, was kidnapped by the natives, but shortly afterwards escaped. From this incident Cook named the promontory to the S. Cape Kidnappers; at the same time he named the Bay after Sir Edward Hawke; and the Island to the N.W. Portland Island, from a fancied resemblance to Portland Island in the English Channel.

PUBLIC BUILDINGS, PLACES OF INTEREST, ETC.

The town of Napier is charmingly situated at the foot and on the sides of steep hills overlooking the sea, and will remind the traveller of some of the prettiest of English watering-places. The visitor arriving by sea will have the difficulty of landing in a launch, and then coming by cab or train from Port Ahuriri to the town (2 m.).

The Rly. station is in the middle of the town, a few minutes' walk from the Hotels, Cathedral, Athenæum, and Esplanade.

Almost the only building that can lay claim to architectural merit is the **Cathedral of St. John** (*Ang.*), a fine brick church in the Gothic style of the thirteenth century, the roof being constructed in the manner often adopted in districts of Spain and Italy, where earthquakes are of frequent occurrence. Additional

strength is afforded by buttresses placed inside the building. The open timber roof, framed of matai, rimu, and kauri, is very successful. The **Athenæum, Philosophical Institute and Museum** occupy one building; the reading room is open to the public at a charge of 1s. per month. The Museum (open free) contains a good collection of Maori carvings and weapons, a fine skeleton of a Moa, and other objects of interest.

From the Museum, the tourist should walk on to the *Esplanade*, which is considerably over 1 m. in length.

From this point he can see the **Breakwater**, now in process of construction; the Harbour Board have been empowered by Parliament to raise a loan of £300,000 for the work; 1,344 ft. have already been completed.

The tourist should then walk, or go by cab or omnibus, to the top of *Hospital Hill*, where the **Botanical gardens** are situated; they are small, but very pretty; and the view from the highest point of the hill, close to the gardens, is fine.

Those who take any interest in Native affairs will have an opportunity of inspecting two admirable institutions—the **Protestant Native Girl's School**, which is under the management of Miss Williams (daughter of the late Bp. Williams), and **St. Joseph's Providence**, conducted by the Sisters of Our Lady of Missions. At each of these schools native girls are receiving a superior education of an English character; at the former the numbers are about fifty; at the latter, about twenty-five.

DRIVES AND EXCURSIONS.

The roads round Napier are good, and several of the drives pretty. The *Ahuriri plains*, which adjoin the town, are very fertile. Passing over them, on the *Omahu Road*, at 5 m. is reached the now almost deserted pa of *Wai-o-hiki*. The heights round

this spot are all crowned with the banks and ditches of the old fortified pas; the one at *Redcliffe* covering an area of several acres. 1½ m. up the river from this point on the rt. bank is *Omaranui*, the scene of a skirmish in Oct. 1866, in which twenty-three natives were killed, twenty-eight wounded, and forty-four taken prisoners. This was the first occasion in which the colonists successfully encountered the natives without the aid of Imperial troops. The drive may be extended by *Omahu* (another native village) and *Hastings*—a circuit of about 30 m.

The traveller should, at some time during his tour, go over a meat-freezing establishment; and this is a good opportunity for him to do so. Nearly half a million frozen carcasses are now annually exported from Hawke's Bay. The works first opened were those of Messrs. Nelson at Tomoana near Hastings in 1882; they now have branch establishments at Waipukurau, Woodville, and Gisborne. There are also extensive works at the Western Spit belonging to the North British Freezing Company. Strangers can easily obtain permission to see over the works. It seems uncertain what process will be ultimately decided to be the best; at present some works use compressed air, others ammonia.

Travellers who have arrived at Napier by sea should take a drive to *Petane* (see Rte. 6), and those who, having arrived from Taupo, intend to go on by sea should take a short trip along the Rly. (see Rte. 9) and back in order to see the country.

An excursion may also be made by sea or on horseback to Wairoa. See Rte. 7.

EXCURSION TO KURIPAPANGA, PATEA, AND MOAWHANGA.

This trip takes five days; two days' coaching to Moawhanga, a day's

rest there, and two days' return coach. A coach leaves Napier every Monday morning. The scenery is wild and picturesque, but the road is rough.

Leaving Napier by the *Puketapu* road, the *Tutaikuri* valley is followed for some distance. The road then rises rapidly and traverses a high pastoral country, and descends into the valley of the *Ngaruroro R.*

43 m. **Kuripapanga.**

Motel (comfortable).

Here the coach stops for the night. On leaving Kuripapanga, the *Ngaruroro R.* is crossed by a bridge.

50 m. The *Taruarau R.* is forded. After this the road rapidly ascends until the upper central plateau of

Owhaoku is reached. The tussock grass and other vegetation which is found here, is more like that of the S. Island than the N.

63 m. The *Rangitikei R.* is forded. The road then passes through 'Erewhon,' the station of Messrs. Birch, and reaches

75 m. **Moawhanga.**

Motel: *Batley's.*

A large native settlement with a few European houses. At *Batley's* hotel excellent guides, horses, and every provision may be obtained for further tours inland through the volcanic district. Travellers can if they desire ride or drive from here, about 12 m., to *Turangiri* (see Rte. 10), and on to *Karioi*, about 25 m.

ROUTE 9.

NAPIER BY WOODVILLE AND MASTERTON TO WELLINGTON.

It is possible to go from Napier to Wellington in one day, via Woodville and Palmerston. The Masterton route is perhaps more interesting, but takes two days. Travellers who prefer the latter route, must decide where they will pass the night. They may any day leave Napier in the afternoon, sleep at *Dannevirke*, and go on the following morning by early train to *Woodville*, coach to *Eketahuna*, and afternoon train to *Wellington*. On certain days also they may leave Napier by the morning train for *Woodville*, and thence coach to *Eketahuna*, sleep at *Eketahuna*, and go on thence by the morning train to *Wellington*; but as the morning train from *Eketahuna* only runs on certain days, they must make their plans before leaving Napier.

NAPIER TO WOODVILLE 95 m. Rly. 19s. 10d., 13s. 3d.; R. 26s. 5d., 17s. 8d.
The line at first follows the sea

beach and then enters a very rich agricultural and pastoral district. In its original state this part of the country was densely covered with bracken. The land is mostly undulating, but in some places very flat, and everywhere sadly devoid of timber. Ornamental trees are, however, being steadily planted. There are a number of fine country-houses in the district, but unfortunately few are seen from the Rly. Ranges of limestone hills are passed through. Several small native settlements and houses are passed. Soon after leaving Napier the summit of *Ruapehu* may on clear days be seen in the distance on the right.

Before reaching *Farndon*, the *Ngaruro R.* is crossed.

6 m. **Farndon.**

10 m. The *Ngaruro* is again crossed. Pretty weeping willows grow on each bank.

11 m. **Tomoana.** Here may be seen Nelson Bros.' freezing works. Large numbers of sheep and some cattle are frozen here and exported to England.

12 m. **Hastings.** A thriving township.

Hotels: *Railway; Hastings; and others.*

Churches: *Ang.; Pres.; R. C.; West.* The Ang. Ch. is worthy of inspection, as the combination of various native woods is very pleasing.

27 m. **Te Aute** (Refreshment Room).

A long swamp, chiefly filled with bullrushes, here and there attaining the dignity of a lake but now being reduced in size by drainage, is seen. The native proprietors, so far as their possessions extend, resist all drainage schemes, as the swamps form valuable preserves for eels, swamp-hens, &c.

Soon afterwards is passed on the rt. the *Naitive College*. This interesting institution is built on ground which was given by the natives to the Anglican Missionaries for educational and ecclesiastical purposes. About sixty young men are being educated here, the education being the same as at an English High School. Students frequently pass to the University of N. Z.

36 m. **Kaikora.**

39 m. **Waipawa.** The county town of the county of the same name.

The *Waipawa R.* is crossed by a long bridge. The fine range of the *Ruahine Mts.* may be seen on the rt.

44 m. **Waipukurau** (Refreshment Room).

On the river of the same name, which is crossed by a long bridge. The township was part of the estate of the Hon. H. R. Russell and laid out by him under long leases, equal to freeholds, but enabling him to make conditions as to the business carried on, the

arrangements of buildings, streets, &c. The result is that it is one of the best laid-out towns in the Colony. It possesses only one Hotel. The plantations are tasteful and pretty.

The Rly. now enters on the *Ruataniwha Plain*.

57 m. **Takapau.** On the l. may be seen the house and plantations of Mr. S. Johnston.

Here the Rly. enters the old 'seventy mile bush' now being rapidly destroyed.

66 m. **Ormondville.** One of several Scandinavian settlements which have been formed in this district. Parties were sent out during the years 1870-73; amounting in all to about 2,000 Danes, 725 Swedes, and 740 Norwegians. Sections of land of forty acres each (for which they paid £1 per acre by instalments) were allotted to them. They were also employed in the construction of the main road, which then passed through dense forests. Being naturally good axe-men, the work was congenial to them; in very many cases pleasant homesteads and smiling farms have taken the place of the primæval forest.

68 m. **Mokotuku.**

79 m. **Dannevirke.**

Hotels: *Masonic; Railway; and others.*

This, as the name implies, is a Danish settlement; but is gradually losing its characteristics, as the younger generation grow up speaking English, and population shifts.

86 m. **Matahiwi.**

95 m. **Woodville.**

Hotels: *Club; Masonic.*

Churches: *Ang.; Pres.; R. C.*

A rising township, with a dairy factory, a meat-freezing establishment, and several sawmills.

[If the traveller wishes to reach Wellington the same day, he may do so by remaining in the train, proceeding by Palmerston North. From Woodville to Palmerston is 17 m.; from Palmerston to Wellington 88 m.

The seat on the l. side of the carriage should be taken. The line proceeds along an irregular plain covered with dismal looking stumps, which are all that remain of the magnificent forest that was standing but a few years ago. After 2 m. the plain is left, and the line proceeds down the rt. bank of the *MANAWATU GORGE*. Tourists who are visiting N. Z. for the first time will probably much admire the scenery; but to those who knew it in its pristine beauty, it cannot be otherwise than melancholy. First, one side of the gorge was much injured for the sake of making the road; then the other and more beautiful side was absolutely destroyed in order to construct the railway. The outline of the hills is still bold, but the magnificent rata trees which adorned the lower parts and in summer clothed them with one sheet of brilliant crimson, are dead, and but little remains of the rich mass of tree-ferns, palms, and varied shrubs which once covered the whole gorge.

After leaving the gorge, the *Pohangina* River, a tributary of the *Manawatu*, is crossed.

8 m. **Ashurst**. A small settlement in the 'Manchester Block' (see Rte. 15) in cleared land at the lower end of the gorge.

17 m. **Palmerston North**. See Rte. 15.]

WOODVILLE TO EKETAHUNA, 26 m. coach.

This route at one time lay entirely through magnificent forest. It is now being rapidly cleared for settlement; but enough is still standing to make the drive a very pleasant one. Several native settlements are passed.

2 m. The *Maungatua* stream is crossed.

4 m. The *Manawatu R.* is crossed by a fine bridge. About $\frac{1}{2}$ m. higher up, the river has been joined by the *Teraumea*. Hence the spot is known as '*Ngauapuria*' (literally 'the meeting of the waters').

8 m. The *Mangatenuka* (a beautiful river) is crossed.

11 m. **Pahiatua**. A rising settlement. Much of its success must be attributed to the liberal expenditure incurred by the Rt. Hon. A. J. Balfour (who owns a valuable property in the district) in clearing, sowing, fencing, and otherwise preparing the land for profitable occupation. This enabled the smaller settlers to find immediate employment in the vicinity of their holdings, and the village rapidly grew up.

26 m. **Eketahuna**.

Hotel: Eketahuna.

The settlement is principally Scandinavian.

EKETAHUNA TO WELLINGTON 93 m. Rly. 19s. 5d., 12s. 11d.; R. 25s. 11d., 17s. 3d. For the first 13 m. the Rly. passes through bush country with occasional clearings, and then enters on the *Opaki* plain.

10 m. **Mauriceville**. About 2 m. from the Scandinavian settlement of Mauriceville.

18 m. **Opaki**.

The Rly. then crosses the *Ruamahunga R.*

22 m. **Masterton**.

Hotels: Club; Occidental; Empire; and others.

Club: Masterton (non-residential).

Churches: Ang.; Pres.; R.C.; Wsl.

Pop.: 3,200.

An important town, the capital of the *Wairarapa* District. There is an interesting fish nursery here, in which ova are hatched for distri-

bution amongst the rivers in the neighbourhood.

[From Masterton a coach goes to Castlepoint, 42 m.]

[From Masterton an excursion may be made to *Mount Houldsworth*; a drive of 9 m. up the Waingawa Valley leads to the foot of the mountain, from whence it is possible to ride to the summit, 5,300 ft. above the sea. Horses and guides can be obtained at Masterton.]

For the next 25 m. the Rly. then skirts the *Wairarapa plain*, an extensive agricultural area along the base of the *Tararua range*.

32 m. Carterton.

39 m. Woodside. Here a branch line runs to Greytown, 3 m.

44 m. Featherstone.

[From here a coach goes to Martinborough, 12 m.]

For several miles the *Wairarapa lake* can be seen to the l. The plain contracts into a narrow valley, to

51 m. *Cross's Creek*. Here engines are changed and the train runs up a steep incline (1 in 15) rising 871 ft. in 2½ m. by means of a central rail about a foot above the ground which is gripped by horizontal wheels on the engine. This, which is called the 'Fell' system, was the one in use over the *Mont Cenis* before the tunnel was made.

The winds in the mountain gullies are proverbially strong. The traveller will see at one point a breakwind erected (locally known as 'Siberia') which marks the spot where two carriages were overturned, wrenched off the train, and precipitated down the gully.

Several tunnels are passed through during the ascent.

59 m. Summit. 1,162 ft. above the sea. Here the engines are again changed, and the line begins to descend.

67 m. *Kaitoke*. Here the train usually stops for tea and coffee.

74 m. *Upper Hutt*. Here the valley of the *Hutt R.* is entered. A narrow fertile valley closely settled, containing several market gardens and small farms. The native name of the river was *Heretaunga*. This was unfortunately changed to *Hutt* in compliment to Mr. Hutt, M.P., a member of the N. Z. Company. There was some fighting here in 1846-47 when *Porirua* was the stronghold of the chief *Te Rauparaha*, but the district has been peaceful for many years.

85 m. *Lower Hutt*. This may almost be said to be a suburb of Wellington, as many Wellington people have residences here. There are some beautiful gardens in the neighbourhood; 1 m. from the stat. are *McNab's gardens* (admission 1s.), where tea and fruit may be obtained. The trains between the *Lower Hutt* and *Wellington* are frequent.

87 m. *Petone*. This is the site of the original settlement, named at the time *Britannia* (corrupted into *Petone* by the Maoris.)

It was the residence of the chief *Te Puni*, and many of his tribe (see *Rte. 12*). It is now a flourishing township, with a woollen factory, a meat-freezing establishment, and Government workshops.

The line now skirts along *Wellington harbour*: best views on the l.

90 m. *Ngahauranga*. At the foot of a gorge, the road up which leads to *Johnsonville*. Tanning, meat-freezing, and other works are established here.

92 m. *Kaiwarra*. A suburb of Wellington.

93 m. *WELLINGTON*. See *Rte. 16*. From Wellington the line proceeds 1½ m. to *Te Aro*, which is part of Wellington. Travellers who intend staying at the *Royal Oak* or *Empire Hotel* should go on to *Te Aro*; others alight at the *Wellington Station*.

ROUTE 10.

TAUPO TO WANGANUI.

This journey may be accomplished in four days, but at least a week should be given to it, to do it justice. Few Routes can be compared to it. The scenery is magnificent, and of great interest to the student of geology or botany. Travelling is at present rough, but increased facilities of communication are being provided every summer, and doubtless in a few years the route will be as well known as any of the familiar tourist trips of the South Island.

Of course, if the reverse route be taken, more time must be allowed, as the current up the Wanganui R. is strong, and the ascent tedious.

TAUPO TO TOKAANO. 25 m. by water, 33 m. by land. A steam launch runs at irregular intervals; it can also be hired for private trips. Travellers going this way should make a detour to Western Bay; on the way thither, a few miles from the township, some interesting caves are passed.

Carriages for the land journey may be hired at the township. The drive along the eastern shore of the lake is lovely.

1½ m. **Waipahihi.** See Rte. 5.

Here the road to Napier branches off to the l. (See Rte. 6.)

6½ m. Here the road leaves the lake, and passes through a narrow gorge, with almost perpendicular sides. It does not appear, however, ever to have been a waterway.

12½ m. The *Hinemaia* stream is here crossed by a ford. The road then skirts the lake. In spring time, the masses of yellow kowhai (the *N. Z. laburnum*) which grow here are very pretty. On the rt. is seen the island of Mototaiki, a mass

of scoria. At one time the lake was the crater of a vast volcano. The island probably marks the last point of activity.

22 m. **Tauranga-taupo.** A large native settlement.

The road then makes a detour inland, passes through several streams, and crosses the Waikato R. by a bridge, about 3 m. from the spot where it flows into the lake.

25 m. **Tokaano.**

[It is possible also to ride along the W. coast of the lake from Taupo to Tokaano; but the track is much too rough for ordinary tourists.]

Tokaano. (Sometimes also spelt *Tokano*, or *Tokaanu*.)

Hotel: *Blake's.*

A small settlement at the S. end of the lake. Hot springs and other volcanic wonders are to be seen on all sides; perhaps the most curious being three large 'puias,' or circular basins, near together, which have the peculiarity of rising and falling at uncertain intervals, and of changing in temperature from boiling-point to cold.

A story is told of how some natives from Wanganui once came to visit their friends here. On the evening of their arrival they were taken for a bath in the warm water. The following morning they started out alone for another swim, not knowing the peculiarity of the puia; they jumped in, and were boiled to death.

Within a mile, a broad strip of hot red earth still marks the course of a huge landslip of boiling mud and earth, which came down in May, 1846, and destroyed the great Chief Te Heu Heu and a pa containing

fifty-four persons (see pp. [49], [56]). The Waihi pa is close to the spot. Hard by is the *Waihi waterfall**, which consists of three cascades, 25 ft., 140 ft., and 20 ft. in height, as beautiful as any in the N. Island.

Near this also is *Poukawa*, the scene of the labours of a devoted missionary, the late Rev. W. Grace. The noble life that he led is testified to by Dr. Hochstetter, who was his guest in 1859; but all his work was undone by the outbreak of Hauhaism, and Mr. Grace was obliged to flee. His son is now restoring the cultivations round his house.

There is an extensive R. C. Mission in this district.

The traveller should if possible spend some days at Tokaano. Many delightful excursions may be made. The scenery along the W. shore of the lake is bold and striking; the shore being composed of high volcanic country with precipitous basalt walls stretching from 1,500 ft. above the surface of the water to 600 ft. below. In every direction are seen volcanoes, some perfect, others almost total wrecks. Various Maori legends are told about every spot.

An easy afternoon's ride will take the traveller to the summit of *Pihangi* and back. This is on the track leading to Taumaranui. See below.

Those who are fond of mountaineering can make the ascent of *Tongariro*, *Ngauruhoe*, or *Ruapehu*; or the easier ascent of *Kakaramea* (4,259 ft.), the base of which is within 2 m. of Tokaano.

A charming trip of three or four days may be made round the mountain by *Waimarino*, *Ohakune*, and *Karioi*, returning by the E. side of the range, across the *Rangipo* desert.

Horses, Maori guides, and all information may be obtained at Peters' Stables at Tokaano.

FROM TOKAANO the tourist has the choice of two Routes.

- (1) By *Karioi* and *Pipiriki*.
 - (2) By *Taumaranui* and *Pipiriki*.
- [*New Zealand.*]

(1) TOKAANO TO KARIOI. 45m. A good coach road. The journey may easily be accomplished in one day. The traveller cannot fail to be delighted. All along the way, magnificent views of the range, and especially of the three great mountains, *Tongariro* (5,641 ft.), *Ngauruhoe* (7,481 ft.), and *Ruapehu* (8,878 ft.) may be seen on the rt. These gigantic lava-built active volcanoes are amongst the greatest wonders of N. Z. The Maori legend is as follows:—

Amongst those who came to New Zealand in the great canoe *Arawa* was the famous chief *Ngatoroirangi*. When the others had formed a peaceful home at *Maketu*, he, thirsting for fresh adventures, set out, accompanied by his son *Ngauruhoe*, to explore the new land. Passing over the plains, and skirting the lake, he cast his staff into the water; the great totara tree into which it grew may be seen to this day. Just then the clouds, which had hitherto concealed the mountain, parted asunder and disclosed the great cone of *Tongariro* which he immediately resolved to ascend. But the intense cold of the snowy height was too much for a lad who had but lately left the balmy breezes of *Hawaiki*; so *Ngatoroirangi* called to his friends in *White Island* to bring fire to warm the stiffening limbs of *Ngauruhoe*. The charge was speedily obeyed, some say by the mother of the boy, others by a mighty *taniwha*; as the messenger came in haste hot cinders were dropped all along the way, which are yet to be seen burning. When the relief arrived, alas! it was too late. *Ngauruhoe* was already cold and dead. *Ngatoroirangi* in sad despair threw the useless torch upon the summit of *Ruapehu*, and the smoke which even now rises from it shows it is smouldering there still.

The first mountain which comes in view is *TONGARIRO*, a volcanic cone with the top blown off. On its N. face can be seen the hot springs of *Ketelahi* and *Te Mari*. Just to the S. of it rises the perfect cylindrical cone of *NGAURUHOE*, built up of light scoria and ashes; from its crater is always issuing either a white column of steam or a gigantic pillar of dense black smoke. To the S. again is

RUAPEHU, the largest and loftiest mountain in the Island, which marks the southernmost point of the volcanic region. The vast crater of Ruapehu is surrounded by walls of ice, and is partly filled with a lake which is usually frozen hard; when the volcano is specially active, the ice melts and the whole lake becomes a boiling mass, giving forth volumes of steam.

Soon after leaving Tokaano the road crosses the *Waikato R.*, and then, after climbing the hill, passes along an elevated table-land, clothed with stunted vegetation that will almost remind the traveller of the Arctic regions, lying between the volcanic range on the one side and the deep blue of the *Kaimanawa Mts.* on the other. Several rivers, which have cut deep ravines for themselves through the pumice stone (which has been poured forth from the volcanoes farther N. during former eruptions) are crossed.

The traveller will notice in these cuttings the charred remains of forest trees which were destroyed by the eruption.

After about 30 m. the road passes through the *Rangipo* or *Onetapu* desert, a barren tract 4 m. broad, totally devoid of vegetation. At the southern end of this the *Wangaehu R.*, a marvellous stream of rushing milk-white water, highly charged with mineral salts and sulphuric acid, is crossed. (See p. [27]) 9 m. over the *Murumutu* plains then leads to Karioi.

45 m. **KARIOI**. A village, both English and Maori. Good accommodation for the night may be obtained. Karioi is situated at the foot of Ruapehu, and commands splendid views of the mountain and its glaciers.

KARIOI TO PIPIRIKI, 35 m. The road at first lies along the open *Murumutu* plains, and then enters a very pretty wooded country.

10 m. **OHAKUNI**. A track to the rt. here branches off to *Waimarino*. See Rte. 11.

Should the traveller wish to break his journey and stop here, rough accommodation may be obtained.

The country after this is very hilly, with deep ravines, and wild, magnificent forest.

35 m. **PIPIRIKI**. Inn.

On the *Wanganui River*.

If possible, a day should be spent here, a canoe hired, and an excursion made up the river. For the scenery, see below.

There was a military station on the rt. bank here during the native troubles in 1865. The remains of the earthworks may still be seen. Major Brassey was besieged there by the natives. His ammunition and supplies running short, it was necessary for him to obtain assistance at all hazards. The only means of doing so was to send a despatch to the Governor at *Wereroa*. The fear was, however, that a letter might fall into the hands of the enemy, and serious consequences might ensue if they learnt the true state of affairs. Many of them could read English, and some (who had been instructed by the R. C. missionaries) might understand French. The gallant Major therefore resolved to write his despatch in Latin. It consisted of the words 'Sumus sine rebus belli satis.' This expressive (if hardly Ciceronian) epistle was carried by a friendly native and delivered safely. It had the desired effect; the garrison was soon afterwards relieved, and the enemy cleared from the neighbourhood.

(2) From Tokaano it is possible also to go W. to *Taumararui*, on the *Wanganui R.*, and thence down by canoe to *Pipiriki*. This route enables the traveller to see some of the finest river scenery in N. Z., and to have a most enjoyable trip on the river; but is longer and more expensive than that already described.

TOKAANO TO TAUMARANUI. 38 m. ride.

The traveller will have obtained horses and guides at Tokaano. He should be careful not to go the shortest track, which saves but little in time, and omits the most beau-

tiful part of the scenery. The proper route is over the lofty ridge of *Pihangi*, an active volcano. From this point there is a magnificent view* over Lake Taupo and the undulating country beyond; the volcanic range, and, far away in the E., the *Kai-manawa* mountains.

From *Pihangi* the route descends rapidly to the shores of

12 m. **Roto Aira.** A beautiful little lake.

Some of the last skirmishes between the natives and the colonists took place near here, in 1869.

The route then strikes W. across a district covered with volcanic ashes and pumice stone, until it reaches the rich alluvial flat of the *Wanganui R.*

38 m. **Taumaranui**, a native village on the *Wanganui R.*, near its junction with the *Ongaruhe*. The projected route of the Rly. from *Marion* descends 2,000 ft. from the *Waimarino* table-land on the S., and crosses the *Wanganui R.* near this point, and then follows up the valley of the *Ongaruhe* towards the N.

In the time of the war an Englishman named *Moffat* lived at *Taumaranui*, and earned his living by making gunpowder for the natives. Some years afterwards, the natives, being jealous of him, resolved to shoot him. However he had one Maori friend who protested against this course; and when the others fired at *Moffat* he rushed forward and clasped him in his arms; but they, disregarding this, fired again, and the two friends fell dead. *Moffat* is supposed to have amassed a large sum of money which he buried somewhere, but it has never been found.

TAUMARANUI DOWN THE RIVER TO PIPIRIKI AND WANGANUI.

A journey of 136 m. From *Taumaranui* to *Pipiriki* (66 m.) the traveller must go by Maori canoe. At least three days must be allowed. From *Pipiriki* onwards he may go either by canoe, for which two

days should be allowed, or by steamer, which takes less than half a day.

Provisions for the canoe trip should be taken; also sleeping rugs and a small tent, unless the traveller is prepared to risk the accommodation of a whare at one of the native settlements.

The scenery throughout the whole journey is very fine; at every turn are seen fresh scenes of interest, the river taking sudden bends, at one time passing through rapids, at another through peaceful lake-like reaches between banks of bold papa rocks overhung with beautiful masses of ferns and shrubs. Richly wooded hills, broken by deep gullies, with occasional waterfalls, rise far overhead on either side. Perhaps the most striking scenery is that between *Taumaranui* and *Pipiriki*. The fall between *Taumaranui* and the ocean is 600 ft.

For the first 8 m. the river is rather open, then it becomes more shut in. At 13 m. the banks become bold and lofty, and a series of rapids is entered. The passage of these is not dangerous, as the Maoris know every turn of the river, and are well practised in steering their canoes. It is interesting to watch their skilful management.

18 m. The **Paparoa** rapid. The scenery is very fine. The river is divided into two channels by a rocky islet. There is a waterfall on the rt. bank.

26 m. Here the river *Ohura* joins on the rt., and falls over a papa ledge into the *Wanganui R.*

38 m. The **Ohei** rapid. A bold cliff on the rt. bank is passed, which resembles the fore part of a large ironclad. It is called *Te Rerenga-o-ko-Inaki*, from a Maori legend of how one *Inaki* here leaped into the river and ended his life. The traveller may twist this into whatever love-tale he pleases.

41 m. **Taurapokiore.** Here a huge landslip has come down on the l. and confined the river into a swift and difficult rapid.

The traveller will after this notice various streams flowing into the river. Some of them have cut deep into the papa rocks; others appear to be falling over buttresses of fantastic shapes.

52 m. Here the river *Tangarakau* joins on the rt. bank. There are some coal formations up the course of this river.

65 m. **Utapu**, a native village on the rt. bank.

After this there are some good reaches, with bold papa rock faces upon both sides. In these may be observed holes worn by the ends of canoe poles used for generations in poling up the stream.

72 m. The river *Manga-nui-o-te-ao* joins on the l., having flowed down from the snows of Ruapehu. It is a remarkable scene. It is well worth while to go up the *Manga-nui-o-te-ao* for a short distance; the cliffs are bold and covered with rich foliage; the effects of light and shade are beautiful.

The river now passes through the *Ngaporo* and *Autapu* rapids, between almost perpendicular cliffs richly clad with ferns and other vegetation.

On the rt. may be observed several caves in the rock; in the largest of these is a waterfall about 25 ft. high.

79 m. **Pipiriki.**

Here the former Rte. is joined.

FROM PIPIRIKI TO WANGANUI, 57 m. Two days by canoe; less than half a day by river steamer.

Just below Pipiriki the scenery is very picturesque.

2 m. Here a fine quiet reach is entered upon.

6 m. **Hiruharama** (Jerusalem). A native settlement on the l. bank, worthy of a visit. It has a R. C.

mission, and some extent of cleared land.

8 m. **Moutoa Island**, the scene of a famous combat.

In 1864, after the outbreak of Hauhaunism, **Meté Kingi** and his followers challenged the Hauhaus to prove the strength of their new deities by meeting them in battle. They accepted, and **Meté Kingi**, coming up from **Wanganui** with about 300 men, met **Matenè**, the Hauha chief, who was coming down the river with about half that number, on the island. The battle, though at one time doubtful, ended in the complete route of the Hauhaus. The victors lost twelve killed and thirty wounded; the Hauhaus left nearly forty dead on the island (including **Matenè**), and many more were shot in their attempt to escape by the river. Many prisoners were taken, and handed over by **Kingi** to the English, with an earnest request that they might soon be set at liberty; they were accordingly returned to **Kingi**, and afterwards lived peaceably with him.

10 m. **Banana** (London). An important native settlement or 'kainga.'

13 m. **Karaitea** (Galatea).

17 m. **Koriniti** (Corinth). A native village on the l. bank. Some good specimens of native work may be seen in the meeting house.

25 m. **Atene** (Athens). A picturesque bend of the river.

The site of the old river bed may be seen to the l. According to the Maori legend concerning the journeyings of **Taranaki**, the present course of the river was scouped out by the mountain when coming down from **Taupo**. (See Rte. 12.)

32 m. **Parakino**, on the l. bank (also known as **Kaitangata**).

From this point the river passes through more open scenery, and soon enters the parts occupied by European settlers. The region of tidal influence is soon afterwards reached.

50 m. **Upokongaro**, on the l. bank. After this, the scenery is of a quiet character.

54 m. **Aramoho**. The river here passes under the Rly. bridge, and soon afterwards enters the suburbs of Wanganui. A fine iron bridge crosses the river close to the wharf and the Rly. station.

57 m. **WANGANUI**. See Rte. 14.

[Another very beautiful if less interesting route is from Tokaano by coach to Waioru in the centre of the Murumutu plain, where a halt is made for the night; and the next day by Turangariri (see Rte. 8) to the terminus of the Rly. which is rapidly being extended from Marton via Hunterville (see Rte. 15) and is intended ultimately to unite with the line from Auckland via Te Kuiti.]

ROUTE 11.

AUCKLAND BY FRANKTON AND TE KUITI TO WANGANUI.

This Route cannot compare in matter of interest with that by Rotorua and Taupo; but if the traveller has already seen the central part of the Island, it enables him to explore a new and little known district, and to descend the Wanganui River without going over the same ground twice.

As facilities for accommodation, expenses, &c., are constantly changing, enquiries should be made before leaving Auckland.

AUCKLAND TO TE KUITI, 126 m. Rly. 26s. 3d., 17s. 6d.; R. 35s., 23s. 4d.

AUCKLAND TO FRANKTON. See Rte. 3.

85 m. **Frankton**.

For 10 m. the Rly. crosses the Rukuhia swamp, of a similar formation to that at Piako.

94 m. **Ohaupo**.

Hotel: Ohaupo.

A small settlement in a prosperous agricultural district. Many tons of honey are exported annually. The cattle trade is extensive.

97 m. **Lake Road**. The small lakes from which this and the next stat. (Nga roto) take their names, may be seen on the rt.

The road now goes through a rolling country to

100 m. **Te Awamutu**.

Hotel: Lewis'.

Churches: Ang.; Pres.; West.

This district has been the scene of many engagements during the war time. In 1862 Mr. (now Sir John) Gorst was living here as a Resident Magistrate, but was driven away, and the school he had established for the natives broken up. In the following year it was the headquarters of General Carey.

Three miles from Te Awamutu is the site of the Orakau Pa, the capture of which formed one of the most thrilling incidents in the Maori war.

The pa stood on a long rolling mound; northwards, the land sloped down to a patch of forest. From the S.W. a ridge curved round to the S.E. at a distance of about 300 yds., leaving a hollow between the pa and the crest of the ridge at the S.E. To the S. the ridge was steep, and about 40 ft. high. The ground was covered only with ferns and a few flax bushes. On this spot—chosen not so much on account of its natural strength as for other reasons—the natives under Rewi hastily constructed rifle-pits and defences. Gen. Cameron resolved to make

an attack with a force of 1,300 men, divided into three bands. The defending party, including women and children, cannot have amounted to more than one-third of that number. Yet, in spite of these fearful odds, with no better defences than flax and fern and their hand weapons, did the natives through two terrible days and nights—supported by nothing but a few gourds and raw potatoes, and without a drop of water—drive back one after another the assaults of the attacking party. By the end of that time, however, the sappers had done their work. Strong reinforcements arrived. A breach was made, and cannon brought up so as to bear directly on the native force. Then the General, struck with admiration at the gallantry of the little defending party, called on them to surrender, under a solemn promise that their lives should be spared. To this Rewi replied 'Ka whawhai tonu, aké, aké, aké!' (We will fight to the end, for ever, for ever, for ever!) Once more the General urged them at least to save the lives of the women and children by sending them into the English camp. But the old warrior merely answered, 'Maori women fight like Maori men.' Seeing with sorrow that there was no alternative, Cameron ordered an assault. For a time attack after attack was driven back by the wearied and famishing Maoris, with the courage of desperation, when suddenly the fearful truth flashed across them that their ammunition was almost spent. Then they called upon their long-forgotten deities—on Tu-matu (the god of terrible form) and Ta-whakabeke (the destroyer of men) for aid against their enemies; and commenced their final retreat. In an instant a cry ran through the English ranks, 'They are escaping!' In moments of intense excitement it is always hard to discover the exact details. One of the English soldiers who was present has reported that they marched out in a solemn column, the women, children, and great chiefs in the centre, as cool and steady as if they had been going to church. Another eyewitness said that they rushed forth headlong down the slope, and leaped sheer over the heads of the soldiers who were in a trench below the ridge. At least this is certain, that almost without ammunition or defence, a body of the natives did

force their way out, and, under a terrible and galling fire from the English troops, reach the swamp below, and thus escape down the river, taking with them a number of their women and children.

This was practically the end of the Waikato war. 1,193,306 acres were confiscated, and settlements of soldiers and others formed. On the hill of Kakepuku the traveller may still see the spot where Wiremu Kingi went to have a last view and to weep over the land he had lost. Those who have travelled in Spain will not fail to be reminded of 'El ultimo suspiro del Mori.'

3 m. from Te Awamutu is **Kihikihi**, which was formed as a military settlement. Rewi now lives there peaceably, in a comfortable English house.

8 m. from Te Awamutu is **Alexandra**, a settlement beautifully situated at the foot of the Pirongia Range, at the head of the navigation of the Waipa R.

Near the present town once stood the famous pa of *Matakitaki*, which was situated between the *Maungapiko* and the *Waipa* rivers, and was attacked by Hongi during a tribal war about 1822. The inland side of the pa was strongly fortified; but Hongi's force came in their canoes, and landed at a point of low land. The strength of the fortifications made it the more difficult for the besieged party to escape. A number of them who attempted to scale a lofty palisade fell back and were crushed to death by other fugitives pressing on behind. About 1,000 must have perished in the siege. Te Wherō Wherō, who was afterwards known as Pototau, King of New Zealand (see pp. [51], [57]), was amongst the few that escaped.

Alexandra formed a frontier town, being close to the boundary of the confiscated land; it was parcelled out to the 2nd Regiment Waikato Militia at the end of the war, in 1864. A short distance beyond Alexandra, just within the native territory is *Whatiwhatihoe*, which was built by the Maori King Tawhiao, when he resolved to relax his policy of isolation towards the Europeans. The first time he visited Auck-

land after the war, he was courteously received, and accordingly invited a number of Europeans to pay a return visit to him at Whatiwhatihoe.

About 3 m. S. of Te Awamutu, the *Punui R.* is crossed; this is the limit of the confiscated territory. The 'King country' is then entered, and cultivation left behind. Along the line are to be seen various pas, with patches of potatoes.

115 m. Otorohanga. Hotel.

A small settlement on the *Waipa R.* The great chief Wahanui lived in his old age in a comfortable house on the l. side of the Rly. The Native Land Court (for investigating and individualizing the title to land owned by natives according to tribal custom) now holds sittings here.

[From Otorohanga an excursion may be made to the exquisite Waitomo caves. There is a carriage road from the next station, Hangatiki; but as there are no carriages or horses to be obtained there, the only way to reach the caves is on horseback from Otorohanga. Mr. Hettit, of the Otorohanga hotel, will make all arrangements; as mails are few, it is better to telegraph to him previously. Unfortunately, the trains at present are so inconvenient that part of the excursion must be made by night. If the moon is shining, this is pleasant enough; otherwise, tourists had better arrange to drive from Te Awamutu.

Soon after leaving Otorohanga, the *Waipa R.* is forded. Then a path leads through fern and manuka; the track is soft and easy, but the scenery is not striking. At 6 m. the road from Hangatiki is reached; after this the scenery becomes richer and more varied, and a pleasant canter along the soft road for 5 m. takes the traveller to the beautiful valley in which the caves are situated. Here the horses must be left with the guide and the caves entered. These are much like other stalactite caves, graceful pendants hang down like delicate drapery from the roof, or form themselves into pillars by uniting with the stalagmites which rise to meet them. The great charm lies in their being as yet perfectly unspoilt; they are exquisitely

white, resembling sometimes crystal, sometimes wool; no torches have blackened the roof, and but few snobs have managed to desecrate the spot by breaking off specimens or scrawling their unworthy names. Fantastic resemblances to bulbs, figures, organ-pipes, and Gothic arches have already been discovered, the most curious being the *blanket** which is shown by a light being held behind it, when it appears exactly like a blanket, not only in shape and texture, but even in the colour of the lines and the stitching at the edge. The most lovely spot of all is the *glow-worm grotto**; myriads of tiny glowworms light up the roof, and are reflected in the water of the river beneath.

As all the country as far as the Mokau is of the same limestone formation, fresh caves are being constantly discovered.]

The country after this is remarkably pretty, well watered and timbered, and admirably adapted for settlement.

120 m. Hangitiki.

126 m. Te Kuiti. Inn.

This was at one time the capital of the King country.

Soon after this, the Rly. crosses the Waiteti valley by a viaduct. It then ascends rapidly, until the head waters of the Mokau are reached. At this point, the rails for the present cease; but a tunnel has been made further on.

The land in this district is all owned by Maoris. Horses and a guide must be obtained at Te Kuiti.

TE KUITI TO TAUMARANUI. 57 m. riding.

It is better to take two days over this part of the journey. Arrangements can be made for staying the night at the small village of *Porotaroa*, at the northern end of the tunnel of that name.

The country is rich, chiefly wooded, and partly open; the scenery varied, but not striking.

8 m. *Mokau River.* Lower down the river, which is here crossed, are

fine deposits of coal of which specimens were shown at the Great Exhibition of 1851.

22 m. Porotaroa.

About 5 m. after this, the scenery entirely changes. The track enters the deep, wide valley which has been covered, and partly filled, by tremendous showers of pumice-stone from volcanic eruptions. Manuka and other small shrubs grow at intervals through the pumice-stone.

30 m. *Ongaruha River*, the main tributary of the Wanganui. The track now goes along the river valley, until the junction of the Ongaruha and Wanganui rivers, near

57 m. Taumararui.

Thence down the Wanganui River. See Rte. 10.

[It is possible also to proceed by land via Waimarino and Ohakuni. 2 days' riding.

Taumararui to Ohakuni. 50 m.
Soon after starting, the traveller

fords the Wanganui R.; and, after crossing fertile flats for about 5 m., enters the wonderful totara forest* of the Waimarino. After about 25 m. of magnificent forest and bush country, the track passes out into the open flats, with an extensive view across the tussock-covered plains towards the volcanic mountains.

32 m. *Waimarino*, at the end of the plains of that name. Here there are some Government huts, and a pa at which a halt for the night may be made. At this point the vegetation becomes entirely different. The altitude is about 2,600 ft., the country open and park-like. Then the track passes through more forest and woodland scenery. Two enormous cañons, densely wooded and of great depth and beauty, are crossed.

50 m. Ohakuni. See Rte. 10.

Rough accommodation may be obtained here should the traveller wish to proceed to Pipiriki. Should he wish to go by Karioi, Turangarere, and Hunterville, he had better press on to Karioi.]

ROUTE 12.

AUCKLAND TO NEW PLYMOUTH¹.

AUCKLAND TO ONEHUNGA. 8 m. Rly. (See Rte 1.)

ONEHUNGA TO NEW PLYMOUTH. 160 m. Steamer.

The Union SS. Co.'s steamers go frequently. There are also steamers belonging to the Northern SS. Co. running between Onehunga and Waitara, whence there is a Rly. to New Plymouth (12 m.)

At Onehunga (Rte. 1) the traveller leaves the train and embarks on the SS. for New Plymouth.

The first part of the voyage is in a westerly direction across *THE MANUKAU*, an extensive and land-locked sheet of water, enclosed by pretty hills, some of them still well

timbered. Unfortunately it is shallow and, like most of the harbours on the W. coast, has a bar which can only be crossed, even by medium sized vessels, at high tide.

Along the coast outside the Bar can be seen at low tide some fragments of *H.M.S. Orpheus*, a steam corvette, lost here with 189 hands on Feb. 7, 1863. The ill-fated vessel was on her way from Sydney with stores for the ships of war then in N. Z.

¹ It is possible also to proceed from Auckland as far as New Plymouth overland. 126 m. Rly. to Te Kuiti and 8 m. ride thence to *Mokau River* (see Rte. 11). Thence down the river to its mouth by Maori canoe; and ride thence to New Plymouth. This way is however so rough that it cannot yet be called a tourist route.

waters. When at the entrance to the Manukau Harbour, she struck on a sandbank which had increased in size since the Admiralty chart had been published, and foundered.

On a clear day, some time after leaving Manukau Heads, the glorious cone of the extinct volcano *Mount Egmont* (8,260 ft.) appears in sight. Japanese visitors have confessed that it rivals their own *Fusiyama*; and Cook, somewhat fancifully, compared it to the Peak of Teneriffe. Perhaps the most striking view is from the S., where the solitary cone seems to stand up from the plain perfectly symmetrical.

According to a strange Maori legend, Taranaki (by which name the Maoris designate the mountain) originally stood at what is now *Lake Taupo*. *Tongariro* and *Taranaki* were rival suitors for the affections of *Ruapehu*; as she favoured *Tongariro*, *Taranaki* plucked up his roots and moved to *Rangatana*, where there is now a small lake. Looking back, the sight of the wedded bliss of his rival was too much for him, so he moved on to the *Waikato* district, and halted where *Lake Nukumarua* now lies. *Tongariro* and *Ruapehu* were still in sight; but in the other direction he espied *Poawha*, a female mountain which stood alone on the western coast. Charmed by her, he forgot *Ruapehu*, and settled down happily by her side. The hills on the eastern bank of the *Wanganui R.* are the offspring of *Tongariro* and *Ruapehu*; those on the western, of *Taranaki* and *Poawha*. The truth of the story is proved by the channel near *Atene*, which *Taranaki* cut on his way down the *Wanganui R.* (see Rte. 10), and by the existence of the *koaro* fish, which are found in *Taupo* and the other lakes where *Taranaki* stopped, but nowhere else in N. Z.

(This is but one of many Polynesian legends about the vagaries of mountains. It has been conjectured that it refers to some great volcanic disturbance which took place after the Maoris had arrived in N. Z.)

160 m. **New Plymouth Breakwater.** Here passengers land and take the train to

2 m. NEW PLYMOUTH.

Hotels: *Criterion*; *White Hart*; and others.

Churches: *Ang.*; *Pres.*; *R. C.*; *Wesl.*; *Bapt.*

Pop.: 3,100.

Conveyances: *Hackney Carriages.*

By distance: 1s. a mile for each person; 6d. each additional half mile, for each person. *By time:* 2 horse cab, 5s. an hour; each subsequent $\frac{1}{4}$ hour, 1s. 1 horse cab, 4s. an hour; each subsequent $\frac{1}{4}$ hour, 9d. *Double fares* between 6 p.m. and 8 a.m.

HISTORICAL SKETCH.

The district has had a strange and interesting history. According to Maori tradition, the first canoes which arrived here were the *Matahouira* and the *Aotea* (the name of the latter being still retained in the town of *Patea*). Next came the *Tokomaru* bringing the ancestors of the warlike *Ngatiawa* tribe, led by the chief *Manaia*. They soon dispossessed the peaceful tribes who had already settled in the neighbourhood, and in their turn sent out colonies N. and S.

In 1822 *Hongi*, the *Ngapuhi* chief from the Bay of Islands (see p. [51]), commenced his raid on the natives in the S.; his principal follower, *Waka Nene*, coming as far as *Taranaki*. A *Waikato* chief, *Te Wherowhero*, attacked *Pukerangiora*, on the *Waikato River*.

In 1831 an army of about 4,000 *Waikato* invaded the district. The pa of *Tikorangi* was easily taken; the stronger position at *Pukerangiora* was besieged and after twelve days was captured. The vanquished were treated with savage brutality by the conquerors, 500 being slain and the rest carried into slavery. The *Waikato* then proceeded southwards, to attack the *Ngamotu* pa at *Moturoa* (close to the present breakwater). This, however, was fortified not only in native fashion but also with four small cannon, the property of Europeans living with the *Ngatiawa*. Strengthened by these and the advice of their European friends, the *Ngatiawa* at length repelled the *Waikato* with great slaughter. One of these cannon may now be seen in the Recrea-

tion grounds at New Plymouth (see below).

These old tribal raids, however, were no more devoid of chivalry and romance than the mediæval wars which they so strangely resemble. The following story connected with the famous Whakarewa pa (the remains of which are still to be seen about 12 m. to the S. of New Plymouth) was narrated by a Maori chief to Sir George Grey, who has published it in detail in his *Poly-nesian Mythology*:—"There was, several generations since, a chief of the Taranaki tribe, named Rangirarunga. His pa was called Whakarewa; it was a large pa, renowned for the strength of its fortifications. This chief had a very beautiful daughter, whose name was Rau-mahora; she was so celebrated for her beauty that the fame of it had reached all parts of these islands, and had, therefore, come to the ears of Te Rangi-apitirua, a chief of the Ngati-Awa tribes, to whom belonged the pa of Puke-ariki, on the hill where the Governor's house stood in New Plymouth. This chief had a son named Takarangi; he was the hero of his tribe. He, too, naturally heard of the beauty of Rau-mahora; and it may be that his heart sometimes dwelt long on the thoughts of such great loveliness.

"Now in those days long past, there arose a war between the tribes of Te Rangi-apitirua and of the father of Rau-mahora; and the army of the Ngati-Awa tribes marched to Taranaki, to attack the pa of Rangirarunga, and the army invested that fortress, and sat before it night and day, yet they could not take it; they continued nevertheless constantly to make assaults upon it, and to attack the garrison of the fortress, so that its inhabitants became worn out for want of provisions and water, and many of them were near dying.

"At last the old chief of the pa, Rangirarunga, overcome by thirst, stood on the top of the defences of the pa, and cried out to the men of the enemy's army, "I pray you to give me one drop of water." Some of his enemies, pitying the aged man, said "Yes;" and one ran with a calabash to bring him water. But the majority being more hard-hearted, were angry at this, and broke the calabash in his hands, so that not a drop of water reached the poor old man; and this was done several times,

whilst his enemies continued disputing among themselves.

"The old chief still stood on the top of the earthen wall of the fortress, and he saw the leader of the hostile force, with the symbols of his rank fastened on his head; he wore a long white comb, made from the bone of a whale, and a plume of the long downy feathers of the white heron, the emblems of his chieftainship. Then was heard by all, the voice of the aged man as he shouted to him from the top of the wall, "Who art thou?" And the other cried out to him, "Lo, he who stands here before you is Takarangi." And the aged chief of the pa called down to him, "Young warrior, art thou able to still the wrathful surge which foams on the hidden rocks of the shoal of O-rongo-mai-ta-kupe?" meaning, "Hast thou, although a chief, power to calm the wrath of these fierce men?" Then proudly replied to him the young chief, "The wrathful surge shall be stilled; this arm of mine is one which no dog dares to bite," meaning that no plebeian hand dared touch his arm, made sacred by his deeds and rank, or to dispute his will. But what Takarangi was really thinking in his heart was, "That dying old man is the father of Rau-mahora, of that so lovely maid. Ah, how I should grieve if one so young and innocent should die tormented with the want of water." Then he arose, and slowly went to bring water for that aged man, and for his youthful daughter; and he filled a calabash, dipping it up from the cool spring which gushes up from the earth, and is named Fount Oringi¹. No word was spoken, or movement made, by the crowd of fierce and angry men, but all, resting upon their arms, looked on in wonder and in silence. Calm lay the sea, that was before so troubled, all timid and respectful in the young hero's presence; and the water was taken to Takarangi, and by him was held up to the aged chief; then was heard by all the voice of Takarangi, as he cried aloud to him, "There:—said I not to you, 'No dog would dare to bite this hand of mine?' Behold the water for you and for that young

¹ The spring of Oringi is still well known to the Taranaki natives, as also the site of the pa near it.

girl." Then they drank, both of them, and Takarangi gazed eagerly at the young girl, and she too looked eagerly at Takarangi; long time gazed they, each one at the other; and as the warriors of the army of Takarangi looked on, lo, he had climbed up and was sitting at the young maiden's side; and they said among themselves, "O comrades, our lord Takarangi loves war, but one would think he likes Rau-mahora almost as well."

'At last a sudden thought struck the heart of the aged chief, of the father of Rau-mahora: so he said to his daughter, "O my child, would it be pleasing to you to have this young chief for a husband?" and the young girl said, "I like him." Then the old man consented that his daughter should be given as a bride to Takarangi, and he took her as his wife. Thence was that war brought to an end, and the army of Takarangi dispersed, and they returned each man to his own village, and they came back no more to make war against the tribes of Taranaki—for ever were ended their wars against them.

'And the descendants of Rau-mahora dwell here in Wellington. They are Te Puni, and all his children, and his relatives. For Takarangi and Rau-mahora had a daughter named Bongouara, who was married to Te Whiti; and they had a son named Aniwaniwa, who married Tawhirikura; and they had a son named Berewha-i-terangi, and he married Puku, who was the mother of Te Puni.'

As early as 1825 establishments for European whalers had been formed at intervals along the coast. That at Moturoa was kept by 'Dicky Barrett' the owner of the gun referred to (p. 60).

In 1834 a whaling barque (Capt. Guard), ran a-shore 31 m. E. of New Plymouth. The captain's wife and children and the crew got safely to land, but were attacked by a party of natives. The men managed to escape and were sheltered by the Moturoa natives, but Mrs. Guard and the children were taken prisoners. Capt. Guard then went to Sydney and persuaded Governor Bourke to send H.M.S. *Alligator* and *Isabella* with a detachment of the 50th Regiment to rescue them. This led to the first actual encounter between British soldiers and the Maoris. Accord-

ing to Dr. Marshall, an eye-witness, the episode does not add to the glory of England. The captives had been kindly treated, and the natives were willing to restore them for a moderate ransom. The English cheated the Maoris out of the promised ransom and then shot a number of them after the captives had been restored, with no provocation and whilst a flag of truce was flying. The following day the soldiers amused themselves by playing football with the head of a chief. The captain's official report stated that twenty to thirty had been killed.

In January 1840 an association called 'The Plymouth Company of New Zealand' was formed in England, the Earl of Devon being Governor. In the previous year Col. Wakefield had consulted Dicky Barrett as to the suitability of the district for settlement. Land was purchased from the natives; and during the year 1841 three ships arrived bringing parties of immigrants (most of them sturdy yeomen from the W. of England); and these were followed by other vessels in 1842.

In 1844 however the great 'land question' arose. The settlers claimed to have purchased 70,000 acres from the natives. Mr. Spain, a commissioner sent out from England to enquire into alleged purchases of land, reduced the amount to 60,000. Even this decision, however, was not final; the governor (Fitzroy) being required to hold an independent investigation at Taranaki, decided not to confirm even Mr. Spain's award, and reduced the settlement to 4,000 acres. This decision was irrevocable. Under the next governor, Capt. (now Sir) George Grey, about 30,000 acres were repurchased.

By 1850 the European population had risen to nearly 1,200 inhabitants, and in 1853, under the Constitution Act, Taranaki became a province with a superintendent and a Provincial Council.

Soon, however, the land troubles began again. Although several chiefs resolved to sell no more land the Government continued making purchases. In 1859 Governor Browne purchased a large block of land at Waitara from an individual named Teira who claimed to be the sole owner; this Wi Kingi and other chiefs of the district denied, asserting that it was subject not to individual but to tribal

ownership. (It is in fact generally admitted that such a thing as private ownership of land with right of sale never existed anywhere amongst the Maoris, and to the misunderstanding on this point are due all the land disputes which brought about this lamentable war.) The Government nevertheless proceeded to take possession of the land; and this was the immediate cause of the Taranaki war, which lasted from Feb. 1860 to March 1861; from 1863 to the end of 1866; and from May 1868 to the middle of 1869. As it was but a part of the same war which was carried on in the other districts also, it may be said to have gone on without intermission from 1860 to 1871. The details are too intricate to be given here. On March 28, 1860 was fought the battle of Waireka (5 m. from New Plymouth, see Rte. 13) in which the Imperial troops and blue jackets and the Taranaki militia and volunteers took part. This was followed by the battle of Puketapuere (9 m. from New Plymouth). In the second war (1863-1866) both Wellington and Auckland became involved in the trouble. In 1866 General Chute marched with a strong force from the S. through the then dense and unexplored forest to the E. of the mountain, and to New Plymouth, and thence round the coast to Patea and Wanganui destroying all the cultivation and Maori pas on the way. The Government then made large confiscations of land belonging to the tribes that had taken part in the rebellion in order to meet the expenses of the war. The next war, which broke out in 1868, was fought with colonial troops alone, the imperial forces having left in 1867. The natives were gradually driven into the interior, and their principal leader, Titoko Waru, finally escaped through the Ngaire swamp. Peace was soon afterwards proclaimed.

In 1872 the purchase of land was recommenced, but the system of purchasing openly from the whole assembled tribes was now reverted to. By the end of 1874 the Provincial Council became possessed of 380,000 acres suitable for settlement. In 1875 the road to Waitara was opened. Some alarm was felt at New Plymouth in 1881 at the prospect of the renewal of disturbances at Pariahaka (see Rte. 13); but the native difficulty may now be regarded as practically at an end.

The district was described by Governor Hobson as 'the garden of New Zealand,' and every traveller will admit the accuracy of the description. Even were Mount Egmont not there, the richness of the vegetation would alone be sufficient to make the scenery charming. It is possible to see the sights of the little town in a single morning, all being within a short walk; but there are so many enjoyable walks and drives in the neighbourhood, that the tourist (especially if fond of sketching or photography), should if possible arrange to make a longer visit. If pressed for time, the traveller should take a cab, and drive along Carrington Road to the entrance of the **Recreation Grounds**. Walking through them, he will observe the *Lake*, which, with its masses of water-lilies, and groves of tree-ferns, makes a beautiful foreground to the view of the mountain. Close by is *Dicky Barrett's Cannon*. Leaving the Gardens by the Liardet Street gate (where the cab should be in waiting), he should next drive to the **Race Course**, in order to see the view from the top of the *Grand Stand*. Close by is **Marland Hill**: it was formerly surmounted by the Barracks, and is worth ascending for the view over the town.

St. Mary's Church (*Ang.*) in the Early English style, stands close to the foot of the hill, and is worth a visit; it was commenced in 1845, and thus ranks as the oldest stone church in the colony.

A drive of less than 1 m. leads to **Mr. Mitchinson's Gardens**, to which tourists are always welcomed. Close by is the **Cemetery**, in which is a monument erected to the memory of the soldiers of the 57th Regt. who fell during the war; and another to the victims of the massacre of 1869.

WALKS AND DRIVES.

A pretty drive of 2½ m. up the Avenue Road leads to the **Meeting of the Waters**.

Another drive of nearly 3 m. leads to the Waterworks at Puketotara, on the Waiwakaiho River. The scenery by the river is very pretty.

EXCURSIONS.

1. To the Breakwater. 2 m. by Rail or on foot.

Travellers who have not landed at the Breakwater should on no account omit going to see it. The strange conical hills, called '*The Sugarloaves*,' rising out of the water at once catch the eye. They are not (as one is at first inclined to assume) tiny replicas of Mount Egmont, but are of a totally different formation. The most lofty, *PARITUTU*, rises to a height of 503 ft. A well-cut zigzag path leads to the summit. It was a great stronghold of the Maoris; the pits they used for the storage of food are still to be seen on the summit. Close to Paritutu stood the Ngamotu pa, see p. 57.

The breakwater, commenced in 1881 with funds raised by a loan of £200,000, has been completed to 1,950 ft. It is 34 ft. in width on the top, and 42 at the base; the concrete blocks with which it is faced have an average weight of 26 tons. Whether this great work will ever be really satisfactory—financially or otherwise—is doubtful.

All along the coast will be noticed masses of black-looking sand. This is the famous 'iron sand,' of which so much was at one time hoped. Various companies have been formed, and many thousands of pounds have been spent in proving that it can be smelted; but how to do so at a remunerative rate has still to be discovered.

2. To Waireka and Oakura. (See Rte. 13.)

3. To Waitara. This excursion can be made either (1) by Rly. (12 m.) or (2) by Road (10 m.).

(1) The Rly. proceeds in a N.E. direction to

8 m. Sentry Hill Junc. Sta. (At this point the main line turns S. to Wanganui and Wellington.)

10 m. Waitara Road Sta.

12 m. Waitara Sta.

(2) The road passes through the suburb of Fiteroy, crosses the *Waiwakaiho Bridge* to

7 m. Hua village.

Close by is *MAHOETAHI*, the scene of a desperate encounter on Nov. 16, 1860, between the Waikato and the Volunteers assisted by the 65th and 40th Regts., resulting in a crushing defeat of the natives. This spot is also interesting as being, according to tradition, the site of the first settlement of the Maoris in the district.

Soon after leaving Hua, the traveller passes over *Waiongona Bridge*, and, 1 m. further, turns rt. along the *Waitara Road*. A short distance along this road on the l. side is *Kairau*, a small native village, which marks the site of No. 1 Redoubt, occupied by Gen. Pratt with 1,000 men in Dec. 1860. From this base he commenced the celebrated *Siege of Te Arei*. In the fields to the l. of the road will be noticed the remains of several redoubts. In one of these—No. 3—Mr. Simon Andrews, one of the few remaining pioneers, has built up his homestead, and from here the General ran the longest sap on record towards Hapurona's position at Te Arei. The remains are still to be seen running through the meadows parallel with the road. A special interest is attached to this No. 3 Redoubt, as here the Maoris suffered a crushing repulse, which turned the tide of battle in favour of the English.

In the early dawn of Jan. 23, 1861, about 140 natives, headed by Rewi Maniapoto, Hapurona, and others, crept unseen into the ditch of the redoubt, and were partly up the face of the parapet before they were discovered. A desperate hand-to-hand fight ensued, but the Maoris drew off on the approach of British support from Kairau,

leaving forty-five dead bodies in the trenches and many others outside.

Passing through the little village of Huirangi, known as No. 6, and 1 m. beyond, the traveller drives through a double line of trenches and is within the lines of Te Aerei. From here there is a fine view. A short distance further was the celebrated old native stronghold of Pukerangiora (see p. 57), and a few paces further is the edge of the precipice where 200 ft. below rushes the WAITARA RIVER; here it is that numbers of the Ngatiawa first threw over their children, then plunged headlong themselves to certain death rather than be taken alive by their inveterate foes, the Waikato.

Looking down from the brow of the hill, a fine panorama is obtained. Immediately to the l. is the site of the old I pa (so called from its shape), the scene of the first encounter in the war of 1860. In front winds the WAITARA RIVER. Between the spot where the traveller is standing and the Karaka Grove, but a little to the rt., is Puketakuere, the scene of the battle already referred to.

On June 27, 1860, 250 men of the 40th Regt. and 55 bluejackets under Capt. Seymour (afterwards Lord Alcester), attempted to drive the Maoris out of the pa, and after four hours' desperate fighting, had to retire with heavy loss.

A drive of 1 m. down a gentle slope leads into

10 m. **WAITARA.**

Hotel: *Masonic.*

Churches: *Ang.; West.*

The site is historically interesting, as being in the block of 600 acres bought from Teira in 1859; the mound called *Manukorihi*, on which Wi Kingi's pa stood, is close to the Rly. line. The town is now rapidly increasing. The *Meat-freezing works* are the most important industry.

[EXCURSIONS.]

From Waitara several pleasant excursions may be made; amongst others, (1) to **Tikorangi Hill**, a drive of 5 m.; (2) to **Urenui**; (3) the **Mimi Valley**; (4) **Pukearuhe** (the scene of the 'White Cliffs' Massacre in 1869); (5) and more adventurous tourists can proceed by **Paranihinihi**, the *Tongaporutu River*, **Kawau**, the *Mohakaitino River* to the **Mokau**, and so to **Te Kuiti** and **Auckland**. (See Rte. 11.) For this a guide must be obtained at Pukearuhe.]

4. To the **Ranges**. A drive of 13 m. along the Mangorei Road takes the traveller to the spot where the carriage must be left. The Ranges are all wooded, but, with attention, the track is easily followed. The ascent is at first gradual, until a plateau is reached called *Grayling's Clearing*. Then the track becomes perceptibly steeper, and soon another plateau is gained. This is a Government clearing, from which a fine echo may be heard; a good place for luncheon. A stiff pull soon leads to the summit. The time usually taken from the place where the carriage is left is about 3 hrs. The summit is 4,000 ft. above sea level, and commands a splendid view.

5. To the **Summit of Mount Egmont***. The best time of year for this excursion is from Feb. to April, when the mountain is almost free from snow and the weather is generally favourable. The ascent is tedious, as the mountain is steep, and the loose scoria affords no firm foothold.

At a height of about 2,500 ft. the forest gradually changes, the undergrowth becomes less dense than it is below, the trees begin to be stunted; and at 3,500 to 4,000 ft. the mountain sides are covered with a thickly-matted scrub, the foliage is shaved off with the winds like a closely-trimmed fence, and the stems are

twisted and gnarled into all kinds of fantastic shapes. Above this, grasses, rushes, and moss extend about 1,000 ft. higher, and these in their turn give place to huge masses of rock, scoria, snow, and ice to the summit.

The ascent can be made in several directions. For convenience the principal routes are given here all together.

ASCENT NO. 1. From *NEW PLYMOUTH* by the *Egmont Road*. The traveller should leave *New Plymouth* about noon, and drive for 9 m. along the junction road, and then for 5½ m. up the *Egmont Road*, which extends along what may be called a spur of the *Mountain*, and lies between the *Waiwakaiho* and *Mangaoraka Streams*. A journey of about 6 m. up a gentle incline leads to the *Forest Reserve*, which is reached after an easy ride or drive of about 3 hrs. (14½ m.) from *New Plymouth*. Here the vehicles must be left, as the road ends, and there is only a bridle-road for the remaining 4 m. to the point known as the *Camp*. At an elevation of 3,200 ft., there is a small grassy clearing with an *Accommodation Hut* where travellers must stay the night.

The start for the summit should be commenced not later than 7 a.m.

The spur becomes narrower and sharper, and rises more abruptly, until, after a tramp of from 15 to 20 min., the scrub having dwindled down to about 3 ft. in height, a magnificent view is obtained of the country from the W. round to the S.E. Looking W. towards the sea lie *New Plymouth*, the *Sugar Loaves*, and *Breakwater*; towards the N. *Waitara*, the *Urenui Bight*, and the *White Cliffs*; and to the E. the grand peaks of *RUAPEHU*, *NGARUHOE*, and *TONGARIRO* (see Rte. 10) covered with perpetual snow. Immediately below are various townships, clearings, and homesteads. From here, and even more so from a point about 1,000 ft. higher, the view, though not so extensive, is clearer

than that from the summit of the mountain. To the l. is the precipitous side of the ravine, already seen at the camp: and to the rt. is a similar one—containing one of the sources of the *Waiwakaiho River*. Leaving the ravine just before it flattens out into the mountain, and turning slightly to the l., after a little climbing the traveller comes to a large bed of moss, green and smooth as a lawn, and continues rising on this to a height of about 5,200 ft. This is on a level with *Humphries' Castle*, and this is the further point spoken of as commanding a splendid view. Before leaving here, a stranger, unless with a guide, should take particular notice of the position of the *Castle*, as it should be his guide in descending. The spurs and ravines are so much alike that, without some such landmark, he might get confused, and descend a wrong ravine, and have the unpleasant experience of camping in the bush for a night without fire, food, or bedding. From the above point he turns off sharply to the rt. to avoid loose scoria, and travels up the W. edge of the spur on which the *Castle* stands. The walking is now principally on rock or large scoria, and is much less fatiguing than on the small scoria or gravel; which is convenient to come down over, but must be carefully avoided, where possible, in going up. After toiling slowly up the ridge to a height of about 7,500 ft., the foot of the rocks which surround the crater is reached. These rocks or peaks, as they may be called (parts of the lip of the crater), are three in number. The W. peak rises to about 80 ft., the E. to about 60 ft., and the N. to about 35 ft. above the level of permanent ice. There are thus three openings, by which the crater is reached, and subsequently the peaks. The best way, on arriving at the foot of the northern peak, is to turn l. (E.) pass under the peak, involving a little climbing over and up some masses of rock, and thus without much

difficulty reach the N.E. entrance. Here the snow comes down on the scoria, and the traveller can pass easily from one to the other, considering the slope, and up the thin coating of snow (about 4 to 6 in. in summer) which rests upon the ice, steadying himself by digging a pointed stick into the snow and ice, he will thus soon reach the highest part of what may be called the *Crater*, and will find himself standing apparently on the summit of a huge billow of snow. To the W., E., and N. stand the peaks before mentioned; towards the S. all has been broken away. The peak usually ascended is the W. or highest one, and this is easily accomplished by crossing the crater to the S.W. base of the peak and climbing up the latter over some rocks; the view from this point is glorious. Far away to the S. glisten the snowy peaks of the *Southern Alps* in the South Island; on three sides lies the ocean. Apparently immediately below though nearly 20 m. distant is the shore of the circular promontory of Taranaki, extending from Waitara on the N. to Hawera on the S. Beneath are the various towns, villages, clearings, and homesteads encircling the mountain, the swamp lying near the Ponakai Range, the *Stony River* (Hangatahua) like a silver thread winding its course to the sea, and the numerous rivers which take their rise in the mountain—all can be clearly traced. To S.E. are two green-and-yellow patches, like small meadows; these represent the *Ngairu Swamps*—thousands of acres in extent. To the E. tower the snow-clad peaks of *Ruapehu* and the cones of *Ngauruhoe* and *Tongariro*; and to the N. are the *Paranini Cliffs*, 1,000 ft. in height, though apparently just above the sea. New Plymouth *Breakwater* is dwarfed to the size of a walking-stick, and the *Sugar-Loaves* look like thimbles. *Humphries' Castle*—3,000 ft. below—is only a point, but it is one to be carefully watched

in returning. After luncheon; a visit may be made to the *Ice Cave*. Climbing down on the S.W. side of the mountain the traveller comes to a ledge of rock and ice, and enters into a cave of ice directly under the upper ice dome of the crater. Stalactites of ice hang in profusion; and in very warm summers when the snow is thin on the crater, a sea-green light shines down through the dome. Chilled to the bone the traveller soon emerges and, climbing back on the crater, commences the descent of the mountain.

Passing out of the *Crater* by the N.E. entrance, and keeping well over to the E. to avoid having to climb down rocks, a ridge of loose scoria is soon reached. Down this fair progress can be made, and the traveller keeping *Humphries' Castle* in view, should make for it, and, crossing a small ravine at the foot of the scoriaspur, will soon reach the moss. Careful walking is here required to prevent slipping. Soon now the traveller passes under the *Castle*, runs the gauntlet through the prickly shrub known as the *Wild Irishman*, and finally arrives at the camp he left in the morning. It is possible to return to New Plymouth the same evening.

The time occupied in the ascent of the mountain, from the camp to the summit, varies very much. It has been done by young bushmen in a little over 2 hrs. But the usual time for men is from 3 to 4 hrs., and for ladies from 4 to 6 hours, the return journey occupying about half the time taken in the ascent. For a mixed party of ladies and gentlemen a fair time for the ascent would be about 5 hrs., and for the return about 3 hrs. Allowing 1 hr. on the summit,—and most people will find that enough,—9 hrs. should be sufficient for an easy journey to and from the camp. The journey back to New Plymouth occupies from 4 to 5 hrs., and therefore, to those who have not much time at their disposal, an absence of 1½ days from New Plymouth will suffice for the whole trip, and few who make the ascent will grudge the time, labour, or expense.

The cost of the trip will be as follows:—For a party of not less than four—Horse and carriage fare 5s. each way (including driver, who will take charge of horses and meet party returning next day).

All things necessary for the trip may be procured from Mr. Butterworth of New Plymouth.

Mr. Harry Peters, whose postal address is Inglewood, will provide a guide for £1.

ASCENT No. 2. From *NEW PLYMOUTH* by way of the *Ranges*.

This route, as far as the summit of the Ranges, has already been described (p. 62). The way is often called the *Old Route*, having been popular in former times; it is now seldom taken. It is long and tedious, requiring three or four days to do it properly. On the other hand, it commands splendid views from the summit of the *PONAKAI RANGES*, and affords an opportunity of seeing *BELL'S FALLS*, which are very beautiful. For this ascent a guide is absolutely necessary. Messrs. Coad, who live on the Mangorei road, can be recommended. Their charges are from 10s. to 12s. a day.

ASCENT No. 3. From *STRATFORD*. (See Rte. 13.)

The advantages Stratford claims as a base of operations for an ascent of Mt. EGMONT consist in (1) its being the nearest town and Rly-sta. to the summit, the distance, as the crow flies, being exactly 12 m., and the actual distance traversed not more than 14 m.; (2) the Rly-sta. being 990 ft. above sea-level; (3) the first portion of the journey being of so gradual a slope that horses can be ridden to a height of 4,000 ft.; (4) the ascent and descent being possible in one day.

Having arrived at Stratford over-night, and arranged for horse, guide, provisions, and early breakfast, 7 a.m. should see the traveller in the saddle. (Here a word of warning: Remember that the main part

of the journey has to be done on foot and see that the clothing is loose.) A 7 m. canter leads to the boundary of the *Forest Reserve*. The wide open road is at an end; the track wanders between the trunks of mighty *pinus* and *ratas* until, with a change in the character of the bush, the grade becomes steeper. The forest hereabout becomes weird and peculiar, fully justifying its name of *The Goblin Bush*. Another stiff rise or two and the first halting-place is in view—a rough shanty, in a small clearing. A second breakfast may well be taken here, cooking utensils being kept in readiness, and water to be procured at a short distance. A little further and the rapidly-dwarfing bush gives place to scrub. A glance back, and the whole immense tract of forest is seen spread out below—in the distance, the forms of the mighty *RUAPEHU*, *NGAURUHON* with his cloud of steam, and *TONGARIRO* a little more to the N.; in the foreground are the clearings and homesteads of the settlers; and conspicuous to the S.E. the *Ngairu Swamp*. Another stiff bit for the horses, and they tread the level top of the ridge. There are some small clearings here. The horses are ridden some distance farther and tethered on the tussock grass, a considerable expanse of which intervenes between the scrub and the barren rocks of the upper regions. The riders, now dismounted, alpenstocks in hand, sandwiches and flasks safely stowed away, turn their faces to the mountain side, and continue along the crest of the ridge, having the dry narrow gorge of the *Manganui* to the rt.; while to the l. is a wider one, with the infant river *Kapuni* flowing peacefully along, little recking of the terrible tumble it will presently have over the rocks of *DAWSON'S FALLS*. The route turns sharply to the rt., and making a descent crosses the gorge. The traveller should choose the path of solid rock, avoiding the treacherous shingle and the loose terribly exhausting scoria, and climb over the glisten-

ing expanse of snow to the highest peak.

Luncheon and a rest may be taken at the top.

The descent is, as may be supposed, much easier than the ascent, the principal difficulty being to avoid excess of speed. Five o'clock should find the traveller at the camp, where only a short stay should be made, as it is well to be clear of the bush by dark. If he is going to New Plymouth, it will be well to catch the through train, which leaves Stratford in the evening (see time tables).

From the camping-ground many objects of interest are accessible, including *Dawson's Falls* and *Kendall's Cascade* on the *Kapuni*; *Fantham Peak*, the picturesque and seldom-visited *Gorge of the Manganui*, with its waterfalls, &c. (for all of which see below).

The cost of the trip will be as follows: Hotel: Tea, bed, and breakfast, two nights, 10s. (or if one night only, rather less); horse hire, one day, 6s.; guide, one day, 12s.; provisions, 3s.; total, 31s. By making up a party of, say, four, the charge for the guide and provisions would be shared, reducing the expenses of each person to 21s.; but parties of more than six are not recommended. Messrs. G. and H. Curtis, of Stratford, undertake to supply horses, guides, and provisions at short notice, and have also on hire tents and blankets for parties who wish to spend a few days camping out. Mr. T. H. Penn, of Stratford, will be happy to afford tourists any information in his power.

ASCENT No. 4. From MANAIA. (See Rte. 13.) The trip from Manaia to the summit of Mt. EGMONT and back to Manaia has been done in 15 hrs., about half that time being spent in the saddle; but the most pleasant way is to start from Manaia after mid-day dinner, camping at Dawson's Falls, and leaving again at daybreak next

morning for the top of the mountain. This will allow plenty of time to return to Manaia by the middle of the afternoon, and, if desired, to reach Hawera (see Rte. 13) the same evening.

DAWSON'S FALLS are reached by the Manaia Road, which stops at the Forest Reserve line, and the track which succeeds the road is known as Dawson's Track. This goes between the *Kapuni* on the right and a branch of the *Kaupokonui* on the left—both clearly marked mountain streams. Wherever possible, a view should be obtained of the *Kapuni River*, with its crystal waters in all their varying beauty.

A splendid view of Dawson's Falls is obtained from a point about 400 yds. below them. They are, though only 64 ft. in height, well worth seeing.

A Maori tradition tells how a slave named Rereanokea escaped from his captors and took to the mountain, and how, being hotly pursued, he preferred death by jumping over the Falls to recapture with horrible torture, and thenceforth gave his name to the Falls, which they retained till the late Mr. Dawson re-discovered them.

One of the best views of the surrounding country is obtained by crossing the stream and ascending about 100 ft. on the opposite bank. The track from the Falls at present runs along the ridge for a time, and then drops down into the bed of the *Kapuni*; thence to *KENDALL'S CASCADE*, where the real climbing begins. This Cascade comes from *Chadwick Glacier*, between *Fantham Peak* and *Egmont* proper, and is one of the most beautiful views on the track. The traveller should not proceed by the spur immediately in front, but cross over to his left a distance of about 20 yds., and start on the loose scoria. From here to the top no further directions are needed. There are other routes to the top from the Cascade, but they should not be attempted without a guide, and for safety the traveller

should return by way of *Fantham Peak*.

Under *Chadwick Glacier* will be seen a large hole from which the Kapuni rushes. The steep incline at the top of the mountain is very easily climbed. From the S. lip the crater looks rather difficult to cross, but the difficulty is more imaginary than real, and should not deter anyone from reaching the highest point. A free use of the hatchet is sometimes necessary to cut steps, if the ice be very slippery.

Cost. Horses about 5s. per day. Guide (not absolutely necessary) 10s. to 20s. per day. Horses may be engaged from the Manaia, Waimate, or Commercial stables (all at Manaia). It is best to write or telegraph beforehand. Supplies may be obtained at Davy and Falkner's or at Cullen's stores at Kaponga, and tents can also be hired there.

Hotel charges at Manaia, 6s. per day. There is also an accommodation house at Kaponga (Melville's).

ROUTE 13.

NEW PLYMOUTH TO WANGANUI.

107 m. Rly. 22s. 4d., 14s. 11d. ; R. 29s. 9d., 19s. 11d. (For the coach route, see below.)

This journey can be done in less than a day ; but as express trains only run on certain days, the traveller must consult the monthly guide as to the best day on which to start.

It is best to take a seat on the l. side of the Rly. carriage, as the train reverses at Sentry Hill, and after that the views of *MOUNT EGMONT* are on the rt.

The route at first lies through the suburbs of the town, and then through open country divided into small farms and well cultivated.

8 m. *Sentry Hill*. (Refreshments may be obtained at the station on Tuesdays and Fridays.)

The junction for the Waitara branch. The scene of many skirmishes during the wars.

The line soon enters the forest, which is each year being rapidly and ruthlessly destroyed by ever advancing settlement. It is one of the misfortunes of the N. Island of N. Z. that settlement seems always to destroy the beauties of nature. Nothing can be more hideous than the blackened logs and stumps which

mark the place where the bush has recently been burnt ; and even the stiff rows of gums and pines, with which the settlers love to ornament their homesteads, form but a sorry substitute for the rich beauty of the natural forest. Fortunately no 'improvements' can take away the glorious view of the mountain to the rt.

17 m. *Inglewood*.

Hotel : *Inglewood*.

Churches : *Ang. ; R. C. ; West.*

Pop. : 400.

A thriving little settlement commenced in 1875. Land to the E. is rapidly being taken up. The Rly. gradually rises for 27 m. when it attains a height of 1,122 ft. above the sea level.

30 m. *Stratford*. A settlement on the *Patea R.*

Hotel : *Stratford*.

Churches : *Ang. ; Pres. ; R. C.*

It was at one time proposed that the Rly. to connect Wellington with Auckland should branch off here, but the scheme was abandoned in favour of the *Marton* route. A road, however, will be made from *Stratford* to the

Wanganui R. (about 50 m.), which may then become an alternative route for tourists.

For the ascent of Mount Egmont from this point, see Rte. 12.

34 m. **Ngairu**. It was through the swamp here that Titoko Waru and his followers escaped (see Rte. 12).

Soon after this the railroad leaves the forest, and passes out into the fertile Manaia plains.

45 m. **Normanby**. Soon after leaving Normanby the traveller sees the Hawera Racecourse on the rt.

48 m. **Hawera** (Refreshment stall at the station).

Hotels: *Commercial; Empire.*

Churches: *Ang.; Pres.; R. C.; West.*

Pop.: 1,300.

A singularly ugly township in a rich agricultural and pastoral district. It has, however, a good recreation ground and a fine racecourse. The view of the mountain from Hawera is magnificent. Large numbers of moa bones have been found in the neighbourhood.

[A pleasant detour may be made by starting from New Plymouth by coach and going round the W. side of the mountain, viâ Opunaki to Hawera. The road is good and the constantly changing views of the mountain are magnificent. Nearly the whole way the country is thickly studded with small farms. Skirmishes took place all over this district during the Taranaki wars.

The traveller will also have the opportunity of seeing Te Whiti, the famous Maori 'Prophet of the Mountain,' at his home.

NEW PLYMOUTH TO HAWERA. 70 m. coach.

A coach leaves New Plymouth three times a week in the morning and reaches Opunaki the same

evening. The following morning a coach starts from Opunaki very early in the morning, so as to catch the train at Hawera which reaches Wellington that night. It is much pleasanter to spend two whole days on the road, the second day being by buggy, hired at Opunaki.

5 m. **Allen's Hill**.

A fight took place here on Oct. 2, 1861. Lieutenant Downes of the 57th Regiment obtained the V.C. for bravery. A short distance to the rt. of the road is the site of the battle of Waireka (see Rte. 12). The outlines of the Maori trenches may still be seen. On March 28, 1860, a company of the 65th Regiment, some bluejackets, local militia and volunteers (in all about 275 men) were hotly engaged with a Maori force for some hours. Reinforcements arrived at dusk, stormed and captured the fort and turned the fortunes of the day. The Maori loss was very severe.

7 m. **Tapuae R.** A small but pretty stream.

9 m. **Oakura stream.** A small township.

The second Taranaki war commenced here in 1863. A party of English soldiers on their way from Tataraimaka to New Plymouth were fired on by an ambuscade and nine killed.

11 m. **Ahuahu**.

Here Capt. Lloyd and his party were surprised by the natives. His head was cut off, and sent round to the various tribes in the neighbourhood in triumph.

13 m. **Tataraimaka.** An exceedingly pretty district between the mountain and the sea. The tree-ferns are as fine as any in N. Z.

14 m. **Okato.** A small township once a military settlement.

25 m. **Pungarehu.** An old station of the armed constabulary.

11 m. to the l. is **Parehaka**, a Maori town of about 1,200 inhabitants (the number constantly varies). This is the residence of Te Whiti, the Prophet of

the Mountain. He is always ready to receive visitors courteously. In 1881 he held a series of meetings, at which he impressed his audience with his views as to the wrongs of the Maoris. He and his followers then commenced ploughing up some land belonging to European settlers. A body of 2,000 volunteers and armed constabulary was sent against them; Te Whiti, his principal follower Tohu, and others were arrested. Most of the natives soon returned to their homes; and as soon as matters were quiet, the men who had been arrested were released.

Here the lighthouse may be seen on the rt.

28 m. Rahotu. A small village.

The road now enters a stony district of curious geological formation, abounding in small hillocks.

Beautiful little streams descend from the mountain.

44 m. Tenamu. A small bay. The steamer *Lord Worsley* was wrecked here, at the time of the war.

45 m. Opunaki.

Hotel: *Middleton's.*

A small town, situated on a curious bay of the sea. Here the coach stops for the night.

60 m. Ohakeho.

65 m. Manaia.

Hotel: *Lewis's.*

Churches: *Pres.; R. C.; West.*

Pop.: 400.

In the centre of the town stands a granite obelisk, which has been erected to the memory of the men who fell during the war of 1868-69. The road here passes through a very fertile district of the Waimate Plains. The *Waimate Pa*, from which the district takes its name, stands on a promontory jutting into the sea. Being protected on the land side by a small lake, it was considered impregnable by the Maoris, but was shelled by H. M. S. *Alligator* in 1835 (see Rte. 12).

For the ascent of Mount Egmont from Manaia, see Rte. 12.

If the traveller is driving by buggy, a pleasant detour may be made by *NORMANBY*. The country is rich and thriving, and the view of the mountain from this side, where the great cone seems to stand out alone in the heavens, is perhaps the most striking of all.

70 m. Hawera.]

The route now continues through open country, fertile and prosperous, but windy and not striking. The valleys are in some places beautiful with native bush and tree-ferns; in others with masses of flax and toi-toi.

66 m. Patea (Refreshments may be obtained at the Station on Tuesdays and Fridays).

Hotels: *Albion and Central.*

Churches: *Ang.; Pres.; R. C.; West.*

Pop.: 730.

A bleak-looking township on the river of the same name, which is navigable for small steamers to within a mile of the town. The town was at one time known as *Carlyle*, but the native name is fortunately now chiefly used.

71 m. The *Whenuakura R.* is here crossed.

75 m. Waverley.

This was the scene of the *Wairoa* redoubt. This and *Patea* were held by the Colonial forces during the war of 1868, when the rest of the district was in the hands of the natives.

82 m. Waitotara. A small settlement on the river of the same name.

In 1864-65 this district was occupied by some thousands of Imperial troops. At that time all the country was a mere tangle of fern, tutu bushes, toi-toi, and flax. The Maori stronghold, the *Weraroa Pa*, was situated on an eminence on the l. bank of the

river, inland of the Rly. Some idea of its real or supposed strength may be given by the following quotation from a letter from General Cameron to Sir George Grey, then Governor of N. Z. :—'I consider my force insufficient to attack so formidable a work as the Weraroa pa. It would be necessary to establish two posts to keep our communication open with Wanganui, and we should have to furnish escorts daily for convoys. This would reduce my force to 700 or 800 men, which would not be sufficient to provide for the protection of the camp in such a country, and at the same time carry on all the laborious operations of a siege. Instead of 1,100 men, my present available force, I should require 2,000.' The pa was, however, captured without any loss of life, by the Colonial forces and friendly natives, under Sir George Grey.

The road from this to Wanganui (26 m.) is pretty and good for driving.

Some small lakes will be seen in the neighbourhood.

86 m. Nukumaru.

In approaching this station is passed on the l. the site of Gen. Cameron's camp, which was attacked in a daring manner by the natives

in the campaign of 1865. The graves of several soldiers killed in this attack are on a fern ridge to the rt. of the Rly.

On the height to the l. is the site of the *Taurangaika Pa*, a strongly fortified position, protected by works of fern and earth, and containing many complicated covered ways, which was built by the natives during the war of 1868, but captured soon afterwards.

Not far off is *MARAHANU*, a fine sheep station belonging to the Hon. Robert Pharazyn, through which the Rly. passes for some miles.

95 m. Kai Iwi. The site of an old Wesleyan Mission Station.

100 m. Brunswick.

From this point the Rly. rapidly descends the valley of the *Wanganui R.*

104 m. Aramoho Junction (Refreshment room at Station).

The main line goes on hence to *Palmerston*; a branch line leads between pleasing fields, gardens, vineyards, and villas to

107 m. WANGANUI. See Rte. 14.

ROUTE 14.

WANGANUI AND NEIGHBOURHOOD.

WANGANUI.

Hotels: *Rudland*; *Victoria*; *Steam Packet*; *Pier* (near the Railway Station); and others. Good lodgings may also be obtained.

Club: *Wanganui* (non-residential).

Churches: *Ang.*; *Pres.*; *R. C.*; *West.*; and others.

Pop.: 5,000.

Wanganui may be approached (1) By rail from New Plymouth. See Rte. 13. (2) By rail from Welling-

ton. See Rte. 15. (3) By boat down the river. See Rte. 10. (4) By sea.

This is a thriving town situated in a valley, on the banks of the splendid *Wanganui River*, about 4 m. from the ocean, and containing several factories, breweries, and mills. Some wine is also made here. English fruits grow admirably. Unfortunately at this, as at all other harbours on the W. coast, there is a bar; but it can be crossed by vessels drawing 9 or 10

feet of water. Steamers ply between this and other ports, and direct shipment is made to England by lightering to vessels lying outside the bar.

According to the Maori legend, the site was once beneath the sea level. At that time several 'taniwhas' dwelt in the river, and one of these monsters, named Tutaiporoporo, lived at what is now Potiki, a native village across the river, whence it used to issue, destroy passing canoes and devour the crew. At length an old man named Aokehu resolved to slay the dreaded taniwha. He provided himself with the tooth of a great fish called tuatini, which he notched like a saw, made a kind of box, into which he got, and floated down the river to Potiki. The hungry monster at once opened its jaws and swallowed the box. Aokehu, when safely inside, proceeded to cut his way out, and thus killed the monster; whereupon (although the connexion between the two events does not appear clear to the dull mind of the Pakeha) the sea receded, and left the sites of Wanganui and Potiki dry land!

Wanganui was one of the early settlements of the N. Z. Company. It was commenced in 1840; before that time it had only been visited by a few whalers. The settlement progressed slowly until 1847, being hindered by the 'land question;' various Europeans declaring that they had purchased vast tracts of land (which in several instances were the same) from the natives, and they on the other hand maintaining that they had only sold a small tract far inland. The matter was settled without any bloodshed. In 1847, however, more serious troubles began. A chief having been accidentally wounded by a midshipman, 'utu' (or vengeance) was taken by the murder of Mrs. Gilfillan and three children at Matarawa (see Rte. 15). The murderers were, however, pursued, captured, tried by court martial, and hanged. Immediately after this a desultory war between the two races began; at one time the town was actually invested and several houses in the suburbs burnt. Sir George Grey visited the settlement in person, and landed some soldiers and sailors from a man-of-war which was lying off the

bar. A skirmish took place in St. John's Wood (on a hill near the town) which ended the disturbance in July, 1847.

Since then the town has been safe from attack, but it has been frequently agitated by the different native wars which occurred both further up the coast and inland; and the Wanganui Militia and Volunteers, assisted by friendly natives, have been more than once called on to take the field against the natives; notably during General Cameron's campaign in 1865, and again in 1868 when the enemy were in possession of the country to the N.W. within 12 m. of Wanganui. For many years, however, all anxiety has ceased, and the singularly peaceful-looking town and neighbourhood have been gradually increasing in population. The climate is remarkably pleasant and healthy.

PUBLIC BUILDINGS, OBJECTS OF INTEREST, &c.

A few minutes walk from the Rly. Station leads to *Victoria Avenue*, the principal street in the town, which runs from the bridge towards the N. In this street are situated several churches, banks, and good shops. A short way up the street, a turn to the rt. leads into *Queen's Gardens*, a hill once the site of a Blockhouse, now a pleasure garden. From the summit is a good view over the town and suburbs, with hills further off, and snow-clad *Ruapehu* in the distance. In the garden is placed a *monument* to the soldiers who fell during the war.

A little way to the l. of *Victoria Avenue* is another hill, which also marks the site of a Blockhouse; it is now called *Cook's Garden*. The view from this is very similar.

Not many of the buildings call for observation. The *R. C. Ch.* (with the *Convent* attached) is perhaps the most pleasing. In the *churchyard* at the *Ang. Ch.* are some monuments.

Further up the *Avenue*, on the l. is the *Wanganui Collegiate School*, a *Ch. of England High School*, built on ground presented by Sir George

Grey when Governor to Bp. Selwyn for educational purposes. It is now one of the largest boarding schools of the sort in the Australasian Colonies. The *Chapel* is small but well-proportioned, built of native woods, and is fortunately not made to look like stone, as is the case with too many buildings in N. Z.

The traveller should here turn to the rt., and by any of the streets leading in that direction make his way to the river, and return to the Station along the bank. Close to the river, near the *Court House*, is a *monument* which bears the following inscription in English and Maori:— 'To the memory of the brave men who fell at Moutoa, 14th May, 1864, in defence of law and order, against fanaticism and barbarism. This monument is erected by the Province of Wellington.'

Wanganui also possesses a well-endowed *Girls' College*, and several *Government Schools*; a *Hospital*; a good *Public Library* and *Free Reading Room*.

EXCURSIONS.

(1) To the **Flag Staff Hill**. Cross the river by the *town bridge*, and ascend the hill on the other side. The view from the top is fine.

(2) To the **Heads**. A Rly. of 4 m. length leads to the *Heads*, a favourite spot for sea air and bathing.

Hotel: *Castle Cliff*; comfortable rooms may also be obtained. The *meat-freezing works* are established here.

(3) **Up the River**. See Rte. 10.

For short trips, good rowing boats may be hired.

There are several pretty *drives* in the neighbourhood, but none calling for special remark. The tourist who is tired of hard travelling, will find Wanganui a pleasant place for a few days' quiet rest.

ROUTE 15.

WANGANUI TO WELLINGTON.

151 m. Rly. 31s. 6d., 21s.; R. 42s., 28s.

This journey can easily be made in one day; but travellers wishing to do it all by daylight must halt for the night at Palmerston.

4 m. **Aramoho Junction**. Here the main line is reached. Travellers may have to change trains. The Wanganui R. is crossed by a bridge 600 ft. long. After this, the country is open, with occasional wooded valleys.

9 m. **Matarawa**. The scene of the Gilfillan massacre in 1847. See Rte. 14.

The line now rapidly ascends, rising 380 ft. in 4 m.

13 m. **Fordell**.

The line now descends again, and soon crosses the *Wangaehu R.*, which flows down from *Ruapehu*. From the mineral springs on the mountain it has acquired an acid taste.

18 m. **Wangaehu**. A Maori settlement. Much of the land here belongs to the natives. The country now becomes flat and uninteresting to all except agriculturists. The Rly. then enters the valley of the *Turakina*, and crosses the river.

24 m. **Turakina**.

33 m. **Marton**. The town is about half a mile from the Station.

Hotels: *White Hart; Club;* and others.

Churches: *Ang.; Pres.; West.; Lutheran.*

Pop.: 1,000.

The county town of the Rangitikei county, situated in a rich district.

34 m. *Marlon Junction.*

[Here the line branches off which is ultimately to join that from Auckland to Te Kuiti. Settlement is progressing as rapidly as the line is opened. The line ascends steadily all the way.]

5 m. **Overton.** The line passes close to the beautiful residence and grounds of Mr. F. Arkwright. The house is an admirable instance of the old English style, slightly adapted to the climate. The grounds, which are laid out with great taste and skill, command charming views of the *Porewa R.* and valley, with distant ranges of mountains.

16 m. **Hunterville.**

19 m. **Rangatira.]**

The Rly. continues to pass over open country, somewhat monotonous.

38 m. **Greatford.** Here a coach starts for the little town of Bulls, 4 m. distant.

The Rly. soon enters the valley of the Rangitikei R. *Westoe*, a pretty country seat, once the residence of Sir Wm. Fox, may be seen on the l. Then the Rangitikei R. is crossed, and the *Manawatu County* is entered. The land becomes more undulating. Much of it once consisted of dense bush, which is being rapidly cleared.

The whole *Manawatu-Rangitikei* district was purchased from the natives by Dr. Featherston, Superintendent of the Wellington Province, in 1865. In 1872 an association, called the 'Emigrants' and Colonists' Aid Corporation,' was formed in London. The Duke of Manchester was Chairman of the Board of Directors. They purchased a block of 100,000 acres, and sent out emigrants in large numbers. The settlement did not at first progress as rapidly as was anticipated, but now (although it has to some extent lost its original character as a special settle-

ment) it is steadily increasing in population and prosperity.

43 m. **Halcombe.** A small township in the 'Manchester Block.' Named after Mr. Halcombe the agent for the Corporation.

51 m. **Feilding.** The first township formed by the Corporation, commenced in 1874. Named after General Feilding, who selected the block on behalf of the Corporation. The nominal population is 1,400; but the so-called town is so scattered that it is rather a collection of small farms than a village. The native bush has nearly all been cleared, and the monotonous plain is ugly; but the *Ruahine* range on the l., will always form a fine background. The land is very rich.

53 m. **Aorangi.** A small native settlement.

61 m. **Palmerston North** (Refreshment room at Station).

(Not to be confused with Palmerston in Otago.)

Hotels: *Commercial; Club; Clarendon;* and others.

Churches: *Ang.; Pres.; West.; Lutheran.*

Pop.: 4,500.

A rapidly increasing borough, with meat-freezing and other industries. If the land which has been sold in 'town sections' and 'suburban sections' is ever all built over, it will be an enormous city; at present it is very scattered.

The train usually stops a quarter of an hour at Palmerston.

[From Palmerston a branch line goes to Woodville and Napier, by the *Manawatu Gorge*. See Rte. 9.]

65 m. **Awa Puni.** A small native settlement, with a runanga house, visible from the Rly.

67 m. **Longburn.** A small but rapidly growing settlement. Meat-

freezing works have been established here.

At this point the Government line is left, and the train proceeds along the private line belonging to the Manawatu Co. Their trains have a 'dining car' in which a good plain meal may be obtained at a moderate charge whilst the train is in motion.

[From Longburn the Government line goes on to Foxton. It runs through a rich flat agricultural county, a great part of which has lately been reclaimed from the swamp by judicious draining.

7 m. **Oroua Bridge.** A large native settlement with a fine runanga house.

14 m. **Carnarvan.** Here a branch line, worked by the county, runs inland through the Oroua Downs estate, which formerly belonged to the late Hon. R. Campbell, but is now occupied by numerous settlers all the way to Sanson.

20 m. **Foxton.** Near the mouth of the Manawatu R. A small township dependent chiefly on the flax industry. It is a port for small steamers which ply to other ports along the coasts.]

The Rly. still proceeds through bush (now being rapidly cleared) with occasional swamps of raupo, flax, and toitoi. Several saw-mills are passed. All the way along the picturesque *Tararua Range* may be seen on the l., and to the rt. is *Kapiti Island*.

82 m. **Shannon.**

90 m. **Levin.**

94 m. **Ohau.** The stream, from which the station takes its name, is crossed soon after.

105 m. **Otaki.** About a mile from the station is the little town of Otaki.

Hotels: *Ferry; Telegraph.*

Churches: *Ang.; R. C.*

This is an important native settlement. The district was the scene of the labours of the Rev. Octavius Had-

field, for many years a devoted missionary, afterwards Ang. Bp. of Wellington and Primate. At that time there was a large native population at Otaki, Waikaneï, and Kapiti, many having been driven there during tribal wars. The settlement itself, however, has always been peaceful. Te Rau-paraha came here after the Wairau massacre (see p. [56], and Rte. 17), and afterwards ended his days here in peace. Close to the church is a monument erected to his memory. The *Ang. Ch.*, which was built by the natives in 1852, is an excellent instance of the native style adapted to a Christian church.

Soon after leaving Otaki, the *Otaki R.* is crossed.

114 m. **Waikaneï.** A native settlement on the river of the same name.

124 m. **Paikakariki.** A favourite resort of Wellington people who go for change of air.

From this for 40 m. N. extends the 'Forty mile beach,' along which the coach used to go before the Rly. was constructed.

The line now passes through several tunnels and curves round a few miles of ridgy bush country as it approaches *Porirua Harbour*, an arm of which it crosses on a cylinder bridge.

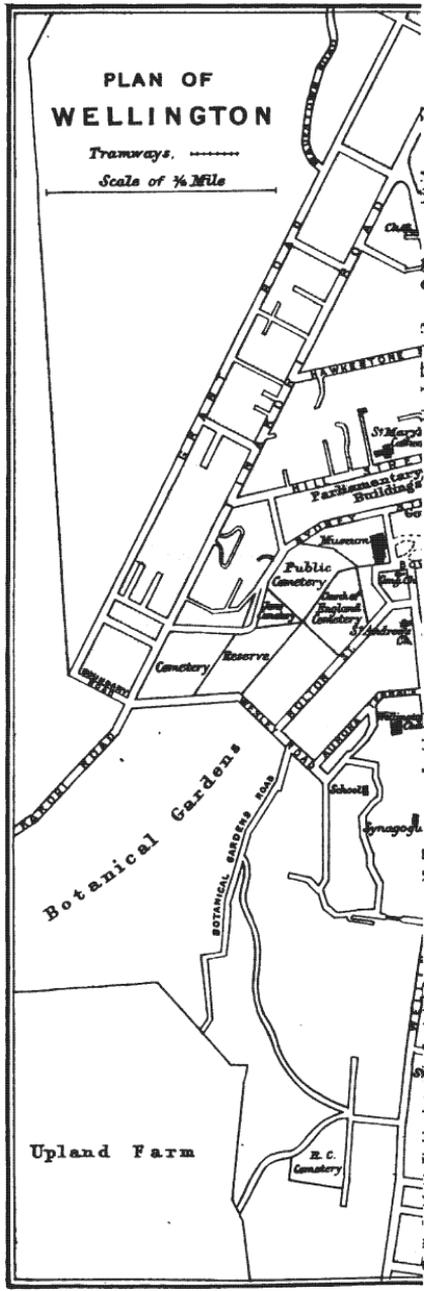
135 m. **Paremata.** On the beautiful but shallow *Porirua Harbour*.

138 m. **Porirua.**

In this neighbourhood once stood the dense forest of *Porirua*, now nearly all cleared. The two famous chiefs, Te Rau-paraha and Rangihaeata, were supreme in the district. In 1846 Maoris from here marauded the European settlers in the Hutt valley. Governor Grey seized Te Rau-paraha, and carried him away by sea to Wellington. Rangihaeata came to *Porirua* to aid his friend, but arrived too late; the steamer was already leaving the harbour. The following are extracts from the *Lament*, in which he gave vent to his feelings:—

PLAN OF WELLINGTON

Tramways. -----
Scale of 1/4 Mile



Tawa dis-
 rising
 ls.
 ghest
 e the
 rough
 ween
 the l.
 , and
 our is
 e. 16.
 cabs
 time :
 hour,
 of an
 . and
 meet
 amer,
 ., are
 from
 have
 they
 Har-
 every
 charge
 t can
 week.
 yharf.
 l take
 ellers
 o the
 where
 rates,
 n the
 Har-
 ansfer
 o an-

74

free:
here:

A
line
along
the
a 'd
mea
char
[F]
line
throu
a gr
recl
drai

7
settle

14
line,
thro
form
Cam
num

20
the
ship
dust
whic
coast

T
bust
with
flax,
are
pict
seen
Kap

82

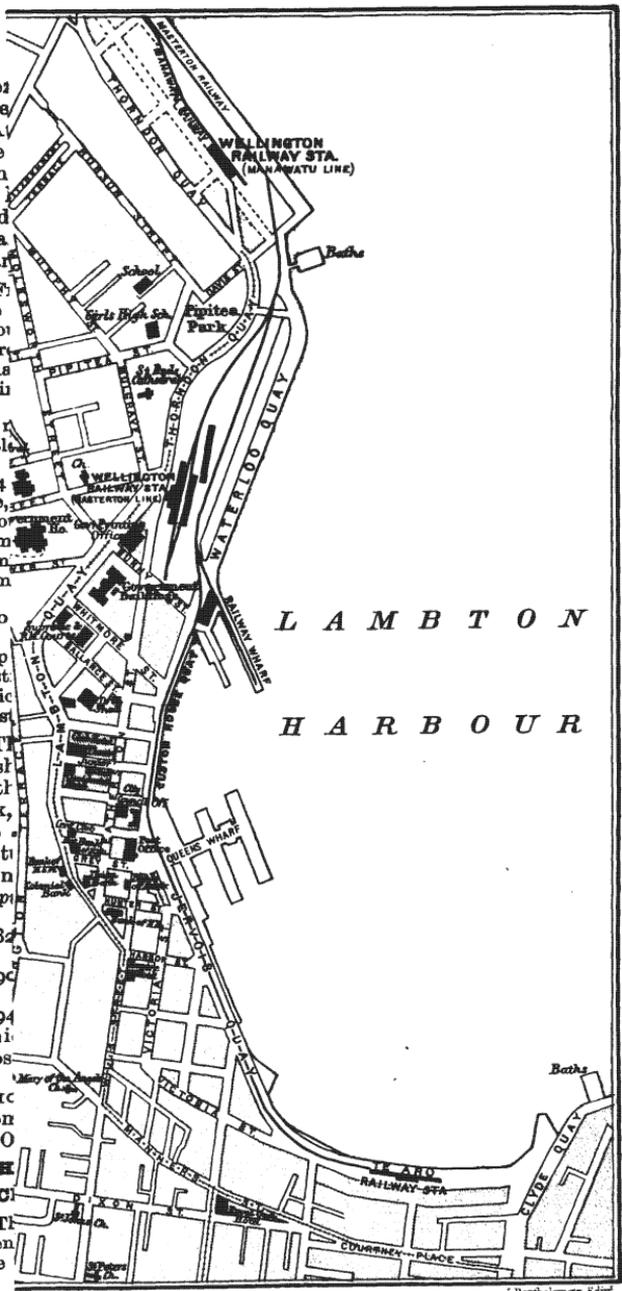
94

whi
cros

ic
fron
of O

H
Cl

T
men
the



L A M B T O N
H A R B O U R

'Baha, my chief, my friend,
Thy lonely journey wend;
Stand with thy wrongs before the
God of Battles' face,
Bid him thy foes requite.
Ah me! Raukawa's foul desertion
and disgrace!
Ah me! the English Ruler's might!

'One counsel more, the first I gave,
Break up thy forces, comrade brave;
Scatter them round about the land
In many a predatory band;
But Porirus's forest dense
Ah! thou wouldst never stir from
thence,
There, saidst thou, lies my best de-
fence;
Now, now, of such design ill-starr'd,
How grievously thou reap'st the full
reward.'

The Rly. then runs up the *Tawa Flat*, a closely-settled farming district.

148 m. **Johnsonville**. A rising township with large cattle yards. Thence the line rises still to

149 m. **Khandallah**. The highest point on the line, 490 ft. above the sea.

The line then passes through several tunnels and twists between hills. The best views are to the l. Soon the line descends rapidly, and the beautiful Wellington Harbour is reached.

154 m. **WELLINGTON**. See Rte. 16.

ROUTE 16.

WELLINGTON AND NEIGHBOURHOOD.

WELLINGTON.

Hotels: *Club; Occidental; Royal Oak; Empire; Albert;* and others. Good lodgings may be obtained.

Clubs: *Wellington*, a fine building in a central position (residential); *Central* (non-residential).

Churches: *Ang.; R. C.; Pres.; Wesl.; Methodist;* and others; also a *Synagogue*.

Pop.: 35,000.

Conveyances: *Tramcars* run frequently between Thorndon and Newtown. The *cab fares* are so elaborate that they occupy six pages in the local guide. They vary according to distance and hills that have to be climbed, from 1s. to 3s., with an additional charge from the Manawatu Station or the wharf (passengers arriving by steamer without luggage should therefore walk along the wharf and not engage a cab until they reach the land). *Hansom cabs*, double fares. Double fares between 8 and 9 p.m., and on Sundays;

greatly increased rates for cabs ordered for night work. *By time:* one-horse carriage 4s. the first hour, 1s. each subsequent quarter of an hour; two-horse carriages, 5s. and 1s. 3d.; 40 lbs. of luggage free.

Licensed express vans for luggage meet steamers and trains.

For persons arriving by steamer, arrangements as to luggage, &c., are convenient. Those coming from ports beyond the colony must have their luggage examined. If they wish to leave it in bond, the Harbour Board officials (who meet every steamer) will take it free of charge to the bonded sheds, where it can be stored for 1s. per ton per week. The Custom House is on the wharf. The Harbour Board officials will take it there; and then (if travellers wish) remove it free of charge to the 'Free Luggage Store,' shed F, where it may be stored at similar rates, and obtained at any time from the day or night watchmen. The Harbour Board officials also transfer luggage from one steamer to an-

other. Licensed porters also meet all steamers. All cabmen, express men and porters, must show a printed scale of fares when asked. In the Harbour Board offices adjoining the wharf is a comfortable waiting room for lady travellers, with every convenience; open week-days 8 a.m. to 6 p.m. At other times the watchman in charge will open it when required.

Boat hire. Rowing boats 1s. 6d. the first hour, 1s. each subsequent hour; sailing boats 2s. an hour.

HISTORICAL SKETCH.

Wellington was, of course, named after the great Duke, the name being given by Gibbon Wakefield. *Port Nicholson* (as the outer harbour is called) was so named by Cook, who visited the place. It is said that the peninsula at one side of Port Nicholson was at that time an island. The district was first settled by the N. Z. Company in Jan. 1840, the spot originally chosen being at the N.E. end of the harbour, and the name *Britannia* (pronounced *Petone* by the Maoris) was given to the settlement, but the floods in the Hutt river, which flows into the harbour at that end, and the want of deep water there soon led the settlers to migrate to the S.W. end, the site of the present city. At that time there were two pas, named *Te Aro* and *Pipitea*; hence one part of the town is still known as *Te Aro*, and the name of the other pa is preserved in Pipitea Street in *Thorndon*. The town is shut in by hills; but much has been done to extend its limits by reclamation works; and houses are rapidly spreading up the slopes.

In 1847, when N. Z. was divided into two provinces, Wellington became the residence of the Lieutenant-Governor of *New Munster* (Mr. Eyre, afterwards Governor of Jamaica). This arrangement was abandoned in 1853, when under the Constitution Act, the colony was divided into six provinces, of which Wellington was one. In 1864 the Government was transferred from Auckland to Wellington. In 1876, here as elsewhere, Provincial government was abolished.

In 1848, and again in 1855, N. Z. was

visited by serious earthquakes. One result was to raise some parts of the land round Wellington Harbour some 4 or 5 ft. Evidence of this upheaval may be seen in the raised beach upon which the Rly. runs on approaching Wellington. What had been reserved as a basin for ships is now the cricket ground.

The forts which protect the harbour were (like those at the other ports of the Colony), erected under the supervision of Lt.-Gen. Sir Wm. Jervois, and Col. Cantley, R.E., in 1884.

The city has been lighted with the electric light since 1888.

Wellington may be approached either by the Manawatu Rly. (see Rte. 15), by the Masterton Rly. (see Rte. 9), or by sea. Steamers up to 6,000 tons can lie alongside the wharves, which are in the middle of the town, close to the Post Office.

Although Wellington cannot compare in size or interest with some of the other cities of N. Z., tourists will find enough to enable them to spend some days there pleasantly. It is beautifully situated at the S.W. end of the lake-like harbour, the hills round which can never be entirely spoilt, although the dense forest growth with which they were once covered has been barbarously destroyed. The climate is pleasant, without any extremes of heat or cold; the only drawback being the frequent winds. The 'season' at Wellington is during the session of Parliament, which usually lasts from May to October. As soon as the recess begins, the members disperse, and the town relapses into its summer quietness. There is, however, always a good deal of pleasant society at Wellington.

PUBLIC BUILDINGS, PLACES OF INTEREST, &c.

Government House is a comfortable-looking building, without much pretence to architectural beauty, standing in a pretty garden. Internally, it is well planned, and the rooms of good proportions.

The **Parliamentary Buildings** are a semi-Gothic pile. The *Library* contains a large and valuable collection of books. Visitors are allowed to read there during the recess, if introduced by a member. The two *Chambers* (for the Legislative Council and House of Representatives) are worthy of inspection. Englishmen will not fail to notice how much more complete they are in their arrangements than the House of Commons. The debates are open to the public; a short visit to one will probably satisfy a traveller.

The **Museum** (which is close to Government House) is noticeable chiefly for its splendid *Whare-puni* (Maori house),* which was carved by artists of the Ngatikaipoho tribe in 1842, and purchased by the Government. The interior length is 43 ft. 8 in., and the width 18 ft., and the apex of the roof 12 ft. above the floor. The figure on the post to the rt. of the entrance represents Rahrarui Rukupo, the designer; the other figures represent various ancestors of the tribe. The carved walls have been raised on a plinth 2½ ft. above the original level, so that the eye of the visitor when standing may be at the same elevation as if he were sitting on the floor of the house in its original state, according to Maori custom. In order to admit sufficient light, the reeding which originally filled the spaces between the pillars at one end of the house has been removed, and replaced by stained glass.

Visitors should not omit to see the live *Tuatara*s* (*Sphenodon punctatum*), see p. [44].

The Museum also contains the complete type collections of the minerals, fossils, birds (including moas), fishes, timbers, and vegetable products of N. Z. which have been described in the various publications of the Geological Survey Department.

The **E. C. Cathedral** is a prominent feature. The proportions are

good, but unfortunately the style is not suited to a wooden building.

St. Paul's Church (the Ang. Pro-Cathedral) was at one time a well-proportioned building; but subsequent additions, though necessary for utility, have spoilt the symmetry. The stained-glass windows are good.

The **Government Buildings** stand close to Government House. It is the stock remark that they are the largest wooden structure in the world; they are certainly not the most beautiful. The officials in the various departments are always courteous in giving information to travellers on any subject connected with their department.

The most noticeable educational buildings are *Wellington College*, *St. Patrick's (R. C.) College*; also the *Girls' High School*.

WALKS AND DRIVES.

The **Botanical Gardens** are close to the town, one entrance being near the Museum. They are rather reserves of virgin bush than gardens, but have been richly planted as an arboretum, and contain charming walks through valleys shaded by tree-ferns and a variety of native trees and shrubs, and fine views from the top of the hill.

Pleasant afternoon walks may also be made to the summit of *Mt. Victoria* (the signal station) or any of the hills which rise above the town.

Wellington can boast of but few drives. There are good roads to *Island Bay*, where there is a *Racecourse*; round *Mt. Victoria*, returning by *Kūbirnie*; to *Karori*; and along the harbour to the *Hutt*, at the N.E. end, where are *McNab's Gardens* and near them another *Racecourse*. The *Hutt* may also be reached by Rail; see Rte. 9.

Travellers who are fond of fishing may drive from the *Hutt* over the hill to the *Wainuiomata* (8 m.), an

excellent trout stream in a pretty valley of the same name.

EXCURSION TO PICTON, BLENHEIM, AND NELSON. A delightful trip, taking at least four days. See Rte. 17.

EXCURSION TO PALMERSTON NORTH

AND WOODVILLE, RETURNING BY MARTERTON. For the first part of this Excursion, see Rte. 15, and for the latter, see Rte. 9. It takes two days, and enables tourists who do not intend to make a prolonged tour through the N. Island, to see something of its scenery.

ROUTE 17.

WELLINGTON TO PICTON, BLENHEIM, AND NELSON.

The traveller having now completed his tour of the N. Island should proceed through the S. The route that is most recommended is to cross to *Picton* and thence to go by *Blenheim*, *Nelson*, the *West Coast*, and the *Otira Gorge* to *Christchurch*. Those who are pressed for time may proceed by sea from *Picton* to *Nelson*. The *West Coast* route is more beautiful than by the *East Coast*; and either is preferable to the direct route by sea to *Lyttelton* (port for *Christchurch*). Travellers who do not intend to make the tour of the S., but have a few days to spare at *Wellington*, may make an excursion to *Picton*, *Blenheim*, and *Nelson*, and return to *Wellington* by sea; or vice versa, according to the time when the steamer starts, which is regulated by the tide.

WELLINGTON TO PICTON, 53 m. The U. S. S. Co.'s steamers ply frequently, the time occupied being about four hours. After leaving the heads, the steamer turns to the W., passes the bold headland of *CAPE TERAWHITI*, (near which several unsuccessful attempts at gold-mining have been made), and then strikes across *COOK'S STRAITS*. On entering *TOBY CHANNEL*, between *ARAPAWA ISLAND* and the mainland, the rough water is left, and the steam up the Sound for nearly 20 m. is beautiful, the hills on each side being thickly covered

with bush. Soon the island is left, and the steamer enters *QUEEN CHARLOTTE'S SOUND* (so named by *Cook* when, on Jan. 30, 1770, he first hoisted the British Flag on a small hill overlooking the Sound, and took formal possession of the country in the name of King George the Third).

Picton.

Motel: *Terminus.*

Churches: *Ang.; Pres.; R.C.; West.*

Pop.: 800.

A charmingly situated little town, at the head of the Sound. It will doubtless become of considerable importance when the fishing industry is developed, and the mines in the district are properly worked; but at present it is stationary. Many *Wellington* residents come to *Picton* during the summer, to enjoy the sea fishing (which is very good), boating, bathing, excursions through the Sounds, and rambles over the hills.

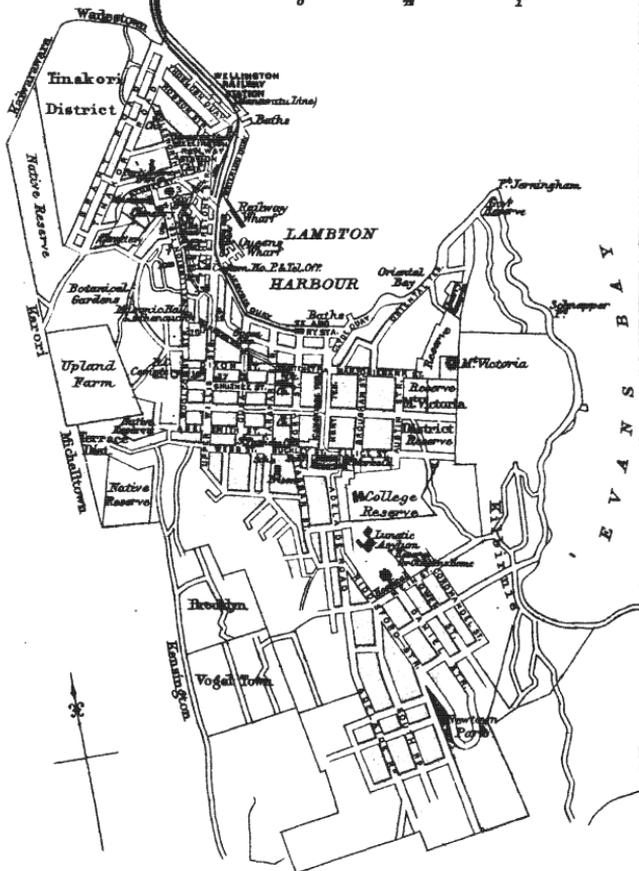
From *Picton* there are three ways of going to *Nelson*: (1) By sea; (2) By *Cullensville* and *Havelock*; (3) By *Blenheim*.

(1) **PICTON TO NELSON BY SEA. 85 m.**

On leaving *Picton* the steamer proceeds for about 2½ hours through the *Queen Charlotte Sound* to *Cook's Straits*. The scenery in the Sound is very fine; several picturesque islands

ENVIRONS OF WELLINGTON

Scale of 1 Mile



Reference

- | | |
|-------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1 St Pauls Cathedral | 10 Synagogue |
| 2 St Marys Cathedral | 11 National Bank |
| 3 Government House | 12 Union Bank |
| 4 Congregational Church | 13 Bank of New Zealand |
| 5 St Andrews Church | 14 Empire Hotel |
| 6 Supreme & E. H. Court | 15 St Mary of the Angels Ch. |
| 7 Wellington Club | 16 St Johns Church |
| 8 Club Hotel | 17 St Peters Church |
| 9 Occidental Hotel | 18 Royal Oak Hotel |
| | 19 Gov. Printing Office |

Vertical line on the right side of the page.



with foliage down to the water's edge are passed; the hills on both sides of the Sound being high and covered with bush. On opening out into Cook's Straits the revolving light on 'The Brothers' islands may be seen at night to the S. About two hours after leaving the Sound the steamer passes through the *FRENCH PASS*, a narrow channel between *D'URVILLE ISLAND* and the mainland. Owing to a low ridge of rocks which juts out from the island, the Pass at its northern entrance is only a few chains wide, and can only be navigated at high water, so that vessels leaving Picton and Wellington are timed to suit the tide, which rushes through the narrow channel with great force. There is a *lighthouse* at the northern entrance to the Pass.

D'URVILLE ISLAND was named after *Captain Dumont D'Urville*, of the French navy, who was sent out to N.Z. by his Government on an exploring expedition in 1827. The island is owned by the natives and is very rugged. Indications of copper have been seen. Three or four hours after leaving the Pass the *Port of Nelson* is reached. The harbour has a narrow entrance through which the current runs with great swiftness, the rise and fall of the tide being about 14 feet. The harbour is a remarkable one, being protected from the sea by a natural boulder bank on which a lighthouse stands. Ships of large draught can only enter at high tide.

(2) **PICTON BY CULLENSVILLE AND HAVELOCK TO NELSON.** This journey takes two days.

The scenery is very fine, and travellers who do not intend visiting the mining districts of Westland or Otago will have a good opportunity of seeing something of N. Z. gold-mining.

A steamer leaves Picton almost every morning at about 9 o'clock.

7 m. *The Grove*. Here travellers take the coach, which passes through

a low open valley, with high wooded ranges on either side to

10 m. **Cullensville**, a mining township.

Hotels: *Grand National*, and others.

Pop.: 200.

As the coach stops about three hours, the travellers may inspect the mining operations. The workings are alluvial, the gold being obtained from the beds of creeks and terraces; the deposits are found at a depth of from 10 to 120 ft. Quartz reefs also exist in the neighbouring ranges, and the *Wakamarina* district which have been considerably opened up. The gold field (including *Wakamarina*, *Mahakapawa* and *Waikahako*) is about 25 m. from E. to W. by 12 m. from N. to S. Pop. of the district about 600. Yield of gold per month about 200 oz.

The coach leaves Cullensville between 3 and 5 p.m. (according to tides) for the *Mahakapawa wharf* about 1½ m. from Cullensville. Here the traveller takes the boat for *Havelock*. The waterway is very shallow and only suitable for small boats. When the tide is high the scenery is fine, rich vegetation growing down to the water's edge. Large quantities of soles and other fish are caught on these flats. About 6 o'clock the boat reaches

22 m. **Havelock**. Here the traveller stays for the night. Here the route joins that from *Blenheim*. See below.

(3) **PICTON BY BLENHEIM AND HAVELOCK TO NELSON.** *Picton to Blenheim*, 18 m. Rly. (3s. 9d., 2s. 6d.; R. 5s., 3s. 4d.), 20 m. road. Coaches run daily. The Rly. and road run parallel.

Travellers who have spent the night at Picton and have time to spare will find it pleasant to walk to *Tuamarina* (13 m.) and then take the train on to *Blenheim*.

On leaving Picton the road rises

rapidly to 3 m. *Elevation*, 253 ft. above the sea. After this the road slowly descends, and for some way skirts along a swampy district at the foot of the hills.

6 m. Koromiko.

13 m. *Taumarina*. A station close to the stream of the same name. The scene of the celebrated Wairau massacre which took place on June 17, 1843; the monument to the twenty-two victims of that unhappy tragedy being in the little cemetery on the hill above the station.

In April, 1843, the N. Z. Company sent a party of forty men to survey the land in this district. The chiefs, Te Rauparaha and Rangihaeata, who denied that the land had ever been sold, urged that no survey should be made until the Commissioner, Mr. Spain (see Rte. 12), had held an inquiry and made a report on the subject. Nevertheless the surveyors proceeded with their work. The natives accordingly removed the surveyors' tents and valuables from the land which they claimed as their own, and burnt a reed hut that the surveyors had erected. A warrant was immediately issued by the police magistrate at Nelson, to arrest the chiefs on a charge of arson. A party of forty-nine men led by the magistrate (Mr. Thompson) and Captain Wakefield proceeded to execute the warrant. Coming up the N. bank of the Wairau, they found the natives sitting in groups on the other side of the Tuamarina, and then halted, facing the creek, with the fern hills in their rear. Thompson then asked the natives to place a canoe athwart the creek, that he and some of his followers might cross over and explain to the chiefs the purpose for which they had come. A colloquy ensued, which lasted some time, and ended by Thompson telling Te Rauparaha that if he would not come peaceably he must be taken by force, and calling on the men on the other side of the stream to advance. A shot was fired—accidentally, it is said; whereupon the firing became general. The English, who were undisciplined and ill-armed, fled; but amongst the Maoris killed was Te Ronga, the daughter of Te Rauparaha

and wife of Rangihaeata. Captain Wakefield waved a flag of truce, but some of his men, whilst moving up the hill, turned from time to time and fired. Te Rauparaha wished to save the lives of Captain Wakefield and the others who had surrendered; but Rangihaeata, seeing the dead body of his wife, rushed up, demanded 'utu' (vengeance), and slew them all. The Maori loss was five killed and eight wounded. The Rev. Mr. Ironside, a Wesleyan missionary stationed at Cloudy Bay, came to the spot as soon as he heard of the massacre; he found the bodies lying un mutilated, and reverently buried them.

Soon afterwards the Commissioner arrived and, after holding an inquiry, reported that no evidence of the purchase of the Wairau district had been adduced by the Company's agent. It was subsequently purchased by Sir G. Grey on behalf of the Colony, in 1847.

After leaving Tuamarina, the road and Rly. diverge, but both pass over the rich Wairau plain, and cross the river.

15 m. *Spring Creek*. A large meat-freezing establishment has been erected here, the force used being supplied by the river.

Shortly before reaching Blenheim, the *OPAWA R.* is crossed by a bridge, which serves for both road and Rly.

18 m. Blenheim.

Hotels: *Criterion* (very comfortable); and others.

Club: *Marlborough* (non-residential).

Churches: *Ang.*; *Pres.*; *R. C.*; and *West*.

Pop.: 3,200.

A thriving little town in a rich agricultural and fruit-producing district. The R. (*OPAWA*) is pleasant for boating; there are some pheasants in the neighbourhood, and many quail.

Blenheim was the capital of the Province of Marlborough from its separation from Nelson in 1859 until the abolition of the Provinces in 1876.

[From Blenheim a coach runs to Kaikoura. See Rte. 21.]

BLENHEIM TO NELSON, 78 m. A coach runs three times a week, taking about twelve hours.

Leaving Blenheim by the *South Road*, the Rte. lies over the rich agricultural plain to

7 m. **Benwick.**

The *WAIKAU R.* is then forded, and the *KAITUNA VALLEY* entered, and followed down to

28 m. **Havelock.**

Hotels: *Masonic; Commercial;* and others.

Churches: *Ang.; Pres.; R. C.*

Pop.: 300.

The town is situated in the *PELORUS SOUND*, and is the centre of a saw-milling district.

[From Havelock it is possible to return to Picton by steamer and coach. See above.]

The road skirts the Sound for a short distance, and then enters another valley. At *Cooper's Hotel* the coach halts.

From this for many years the only way to Nelson was by a horse-track over the *Maungatapu* (2,500 ft.). The neighbourhood was unhappily associated with the murders of *Mathews, Kempthorne, Dudley, and De Pontius* in 1866, for which *Burgess, Kelly, and Levy* were hanged, *Sullivan* having turned Queen's evidence.

A pleasant stay may be made at *Cooper's* by travellers fond of sport. Deer, quail, hares, and pigeons may be found; and the trout fishing in the *Pelorus R.* is excellent.

The road then crosses the *PELORUS R.* and passes through the thickly-wooded district of the *Rye Valley*, with fine rimu, rata, black birch, and other forest trees. The view from the summit, looking back, especially when the rata is in bloom, is magnificent. The descent into the *WANGAMO A VALLEY* then commences; the road then turns to the l., ascends the *Wangamoa Valley* and crosses a high saddle at the head of the valley into *Happy Valley*, and thence by the *Wakapuaka road* into

78 m. **NELSON.** See Rte. 18.

ROUTE 18.

NELSON AND NEIGHBOURHOOD.

NELSON.

Hotels: *Masonic; Trafalgar; Commercial;* and others. Comfortable rooms may be obtained at *Warwick House* (Hardy Street); *Panama House* (Collingwood Street); and other lodging houses.

Churches: *Ang.; R. C.; Pres.; Wesl.; Cong.; Bapt.;* and others.

Club: *Nelson* (non-residential).

Pop.: 7,300.

Conveyances: *Hackney Carriages.* Fares by distance: For each passenger, from the wharf to any

stand 6d.; from any stand to the Rly. Stat., Victory Square or Bot. Gardens 6d.; double fares between 6 and 8 a.m., and between 9 p.m. and midnight. By time: For one-horse vehicle 4s. the first hour, 9d. each subsequent quarter of an hour; for two-horse vehicle 5s. and 1s. 14 lbs. of luggage free.

Nelson may be approached (1) By sea (see Rte. 17); (2) By rail from Bellgrove (see Rte. 19); (3) By road from Havelock (see Rte. 17). The rail which will connect Nelson with the W. coast and with Christchurch will not be completed for some years.

HISTORICAL SKETCH.

The settlement of Nelson dates from Feb. 1, 1842; it was the third planted by the N. Z. Company, the earlier ones being Wellington and New Plymouth. Captain Wakefield decided that it should be located somewhere in this district, and sailed from Wellington to Blind Bay, anchoring under Astrolabe Island. The natives having reported a good harbour and site for a town at Wakatu (Nelson) he sent a boat to explore, and ultimately fixed upon the present site. A remarkable feature of the harbour is that it is formed by a boulder bank about 9 m. in length, extending from the entrance at the Arrow Rock to Mackey's Bluff. According to the original scheme, the land was to be sold at high prices, and the money so obtained devoted to the expense of emigration, the establishment of the settlement, and providing for the religious and educational requirements of the settlers. Difficulties with the natives soon arose; the Maori chiefs contending that the land had never been sold by them. This culminated in the Wairau massacre in June, 1843 (see Rte. 17). Since then, however, all has been peaceful. In 1852 the coal seams to the W. of Nelson began to be worked, and in 1856 the gold in the Motueka district. Under the Constitution Act of 1853 Nelson became a Province, with a superintendent and provincial council; in 1857 Marlborough separated and became a separate Province. In 1860 a number of settlers, driven from Taranaki by the war (see Rte. 12), took refuge at Nelson. Funds even beyond what were required were liberally subscribed for their relief; the unexpended balance, after lying at the Bank for thirty years, was ultimately expended in the purchase of Trafalgar Park. In 1876, here as elsewhere, provincial government was abolished. The present provincial district contains about 6,700,000 acres.

The prevailing scenery is bold and grand (the loftiest mountain, Mt. Franklin, attaining a height of 7,671 ft.), with fertile valleys well adapted for agriculture and fruit-growing. The largest area of agricultural land is contained in the Waimea Valley, near the city. This is a picture of English rural scenery. The principal wealth of the

provincial district is its minerals. The climate is soft and genial.

Nelson was of course called after the celebrated Admiral, and the streets of the city bear names connected with him and his victories.

PUBLIC BUILDINGS, &c.

The public buildings of interest are few. The **Ang. Cathedral Christ Ch.**, is strikingly situated on a commanding mound in the centre of *Trafalgar Square*. The site is memorable in the early annals of the Colony. At the time of the Wairau massacre it was feared that the Maoris might make a descent upon the town; and this mound was entrenched in order to form a place of refuge in which the women and children could be defended. Happily, however, it was not needed. The present building stands on the site of an earlier church: it is of wood and dates from 1887; the interior decoration is a very happy combination of the various native timbers. The Bishopric of Nelson was founded in 1857, Dr. Hobhouse being the first Bp. On his resignation in 1864 he was succeeded by Dr. Suter, who resigned in 1891. The present Bp. is Dr. Mules. *All Saints Ch.* in Vanguard Street possesses a small set of tubular bells, which when heard on a calm Sunday morning will remind the tourist of an English village. The *Pres. Ch.* recently erected is a light and elegant structure; but none of the other churches call for any special remark. There is a large *R. C. Convent and School* in *Collingwood Street*.

In *Hardy Street* is a small but comfortable **Public Institute and Library**, to which is attached a small museum. Adjoining it are the **Government Buildings**, containing the offices of the various public departments, and the Hall formerly used for the *Provincial Council*, now utilized for public meetings, &c.

Nelson has long been celebrated for its educational institutions. The

College for Boys, which was part of the original scheme, is situated on the Waimea Road, about a mile from Trafalgar Square. There has lately been added an excellent **High School for Girls**, which is situated in Trafalgar Street, S.

The **Lunatic Asylum and Hospital** for the provincial district occupy beautiful sites, and are surrounded by pleasing grounds on the Waimea Road just beyond the College. About $\frac{1}{2}$ m. further is *Bishopdale*, the residence of the Ang. Bp. which was considerably enlarged and beautified during the episcopate of Bp. Suter. A small *Theological College* is attached.

WALKS, DRIVES, AND EXCURSIONS.

(1) To the top of **Botanic Hill**, 471 ft. A zigzag path with an easy grade leads to the summit, from which is obtained a beautiful view. From *Trafalgar Square* to the summit is about half an hour's walk.

(2) To the **Reservoir**, 3 m. A pretty drive through the town and up the *Brookstreet Valley* between lofty hills. After the reservoir has been inspected it is well to go on to the dam which is a little further up, and is picturesquely situated. In the bush by the roadside ferns grow luxuriantly.

(3) Up the **Matai Valley**. A short and pleasant drive, to the E. of Nelson, on the old road to *Blenheim* across the *Maungatapu*. In the *Matai R.*, which runs alongside the road, and is forded several times, are good spots for bathing, and excellent trout fishing may be obtained in the season. As the road is uneven, it is better to ride than drive.

(4) Round the **Three Bridges**. One of the most picturesque country drives at Nelson, through the greater part of the *Waimea Plain* with its English-looking lanes, and fields of barley and hops. The villages of *Bishopdale*, *Stoke*, *Richmond*, *Appleby*, *Waimea West*, *Brightwater* (where a halt may be made for refreshments), and *Hope* are passed; and the return made through *Richmond* again. The whole excursion occupies five hours.

(5) To **Cable Bay**. Start from Nelson by the *Wakapuaka road* (which leads to *Havelock*; see Rte. 17). The view is best when the tide is high. After about 9 m. to *Suburban North*, *Happy Valley* is reached; a turn to the l. is taken, and a drive through the bush leads to the *Cable Station* (16 m. from Nelson), the offices of the Eastern Extension Cable Company, and of the N. Z. Government lines. A small *Maori pa* and cultivation is situated about 1 m. from the Cable Station.

(6) To **Bellgrove** by train. See Rte. 19.

(7) To **Collingwood**. Those making a prolonged stay at Nelson may enjoy a summer excursion to Collingwood. From Nelson to *Motueka* is 32 m. by coach, or two hours by steamer. At *Motueka* (**Hotels**: *Post Office*; *Motueka*. **Churches**: *Pres.*; *R. C.*) a halt may be made, and horses and buggies obtained for an excursion to the *Takaka Valley* and **Collingwood** (**Hotel**: *Commercial*; **Church**: *Ang.*). From Collingwood several excursions may be made, the favourite one being to the stalactite caves, about 10 m. distant, for which horses, guides, and lights can be obtained at Collingwood.

ROUTE 19.

NELSON TO WESTPORT, GREYMOUTH AND HOKITIKA.

This Route is best taken as part of a tour from Nelson to Christchurch. The whole tour should occupy ten days; but it may be shortened to six by omitting Hokitika, and even to five by omitting Westport. The tour is very beautiful, and the road fairly good all the way.

It is possible to start in the morning and reach Longford the first evening; but travellers having time to spare will do well to leave Nelson in the afternoon and spend the night at Foxhill.

NELSON TO BELLGROVE. 22 m. Rly. 4s. 7d., 3s. 1d.; R. 6s. 1d., 4s. 1d.

The line passes through the Waimea Plain, dotted with farms and homesteads.

2 m. Bishopdale. So called from its being the residence of the Ang. Bp. of Nelson. See Rte. 18.

5 m. Stoke. A pleasing village with a pretty little stone church.

8 m. Richmond.

13 m. Brightwater.

17 m. Wakefield.

21 m. Foxhill. **Hotel** (very comfortable).

22 m. Bellgrove. The present terminus of the Rly., which is however being extended by a tunnel through *Spooner's Range* to *Norris' Valley*, a further distance of 6 m.

[From Bellgrove it is possible to go to Christchurch across the mountains to the *Hammer Plains*, and thence to *Cutverden*, and so on by rail. There are small inns at which the traveller can stop; but the journey across the moun-

tains must be made on horseback. The trip takes at least four days.

BELLGROVE TO HAMMER PLAINS. 91 m. riding.

At first the scenery is not remarkable, but the beauty increases as the road ascends the mountains. The district is densely timbered with black and red birch.

39 m. Top House. Inn. Here the traveller halts for the night.

The road then proceeds through the Wairau Gorge, the scenery being very fine.

49 m. The Rainbow. Inn.

63 m. Tarnedale. The highest inhabited station in N. Z., being 4,500 ft. above the sea. Travellers can stay at the station for the night.

91 m. Jollie's Pass.

Here the *Hammer Plains* are reached, and the hot springs may be visited. For the rest of the way, see Rte. 21.]

BELLGROVE TO WESTPORT. 121 m. coach.

This route was first explored by Brunner in 1846.

The road ascends *Spooner's Range*, bare rolling mountains of loose sedimentary formation covered with bracken and coarse grass; from the summit the view over the *Waimea Plain*, *Blind Bay*, and *D'Urville's Island* is fine. It then descends through the somewhat desolate *Norris's Gully*, where Californian Quails abound.

10 m. The *Motueka R.* is crossed by a bridge.

The road then turns l. up the *Motupiko Valley*, passes a small Inn, crosses a low saddle, and ascends the *Clark Valley* until it reaches

26 m. THE HOPE SADDLE (2,000 ft.).

Here the real beauty of the journey begins. If the day is fine, the coach-driver will kindly stop for a few minutes on the top, if requested, to allow travellers to enjoy the view*. Facing S.E., *Gordon's Knob* (5,459 ft.) is seen 10 m. off. To the rt. are the *Red Hills* which divide the valleys of the *Motueka* and the *Wairau*. Further to the rt. is the *St. Arnaud Range* (6,000 ft.) at the end of which rises *Mt. Travers* (7,666 ft.). Next come the *Spencer Ranges*, stretching away to the S., amongst which will be seen the snowy peak of *Mt. Franklyn* (7,671 ft.) 30 m. distant. To the rt. again are *Mt. Murchison* (4,813 ft.) 10 m. distant, *Mt. Hope* (4,070 ft.), *Mt. Owen* (6,100 ft.), and *Mt. Arthur* (5,500 ft.).

The road then descends rapidly with many sharp curves, and soon enters the densely-wooded valley of the *Hope*. At the junction of the *Hope* and the *Buller* the valley opens out on a larger and grander scale, and the Gorge scenery commences, which continues to Westport. The characteristic feature of this scenery is the dense luxuriance of the vegetation. The mountains are clothed in verdure from base to summit, and although they are in some places precipitous, few rocky crags are visible. The beauty and variety of the ferns, from the mammoth fern downwards, is especially remarkable.

The road then proceeds along the *Valley of the Buller R.* which takes its rise in *Lake Roto-iti*, 60 m. from *Nelson*.

40 m. The junction of the *Rotorua* from the E. with the *Buller R.* After this the scenery is very lovely.

42 m. *Granity Creek* is crossed by a bridge.

47 m. The *Owen* is crossed by a bridge. Some of the mountains, rivers, &c. in this neighbourhood have been called after English men of science, and amongst others will be recognized the names of (*Charles*) *Lyell*, (*Roderick*) *Murchison*, and (*Richard*) *Owen*.

59 m. The junction of the *Mangles* and *Buller* rivers. Nearly opposite this the valley narrows and the river passes between some remarkable conglomerate rocks. The strata, turned up edgewise, form a series of parallel walls: one of them extending for some 200 yds. along the *Buller*, and rising in places to a height of 20 ft. above it, separates the river from the road, which has a lower wall for its natural parapet and a perpendicular cliff rising 600 ft. on its further side. In mid stream, and on the opposite bank, the succession of these odd natural walls continues.

60 m. *Longford*. At the comfortable accommodation house here the coach stops for the night. There is a telegraph station close by.

The river here, as in many places in N. Z., can only be crossed in a box swung upon a wire, the passenger pulling himself over by means of a cord attached to either side of the river bank. It is chiefly miners and bushmen who have recourse to this method of transit.

63 m. The *Matiri R.* is crossed by a bridge, and then for about 2 m. the road proceeds along a gallery cut in the rock over the *Matiri Bluffs*, from which a beautiful view is obtained across the *Buller R.* over the *Four Rivers Plain*, so called from the *Matakītiki*, *Matiri*, and *Maruia* which discharge into the *Buller* in the neighbourhood.

Then the road descends and reaches 67 m. *Fern Flat*, at the entrance to the *Lyell Gorge*, and proceeds through magnificent gorge scenery until it reaches

84 m. *Lyell*.

Hotel: *Fennell's*.

Churches: *Ang.; R. C.*

A curiously situated little mining town, once more prosperous than at present.

[From here it is possible to take a

boat and go down to Westport (28 m.) by water. The services of an experienced boatman should be secured, as there are many rapids; but the beauty of the river scenery repays the tourist for all trouble and any possible danger.]

1½ m. after leaving Lyell, the Buller is crossed by a girder bridge of two spans.

93 m. The *Inangahua R.* is crossed by a bridge immediately above its junction with the Buller.

Inangahua Junction. Inn.

At this point the road to *Reefton* branches off. One day may be saved by going on to *Reefton* direct, omitting *Westport*; but as far as the most beautiful part of the Buller Valley is that below *Inangahua*, this course is not recommended.

The road now continues down the l. bank of the Buller, here a mighty river which in times of flood has been known to rise 60 ft., sweeping all before it. The moist climate of the W. Coast makes the vegetation of this part specially luxuriant, and in combination with the bold shapes which the limestone mountains here assume affords most striking scenery.

About 100 m. at an elbow in the river's course the road is carried, partly by means of galleries, along the face of 'Little Hawks Craig,' a conglomerate cliff which rises perpendicularly from the water's edge. A few miles further the gorge abruptly terminates and the traveller sees the plain before him. At the mouth of the gorge the coach is conveyed across the river by a ferry, worked by means of the current; but unless the traveller is particularly desirous of seeing the town of *Westport* he is recommended to pass the night at the small *Inn* on the l. bank of the river, amidst the attractive scenery of the defile, rejoining the coach next morning on its recrossing the river to return up the gorge¹.

¹ If the coach does not run on the following day, and the traveller desires to proceed on his journey, he can arrange to have a buggy from *Westport* to meet him.

By stopping in the pass the traveller saves a tedious hour's drive at the end of a long day and another hour the following morning. On the other hand the accommodation is limited and rough. After a wearisome drive of 18 m., mostly through swamp land, the coach reaches

121 m. Westport.

Hotels: *Stewart's*; *Hughes's* (both in *Palmerston St.*, close to the Rly. Station).

Churches: *Ang.*; *Pres.*; *R. C.*; *Meth.*

Pop. 2,000.

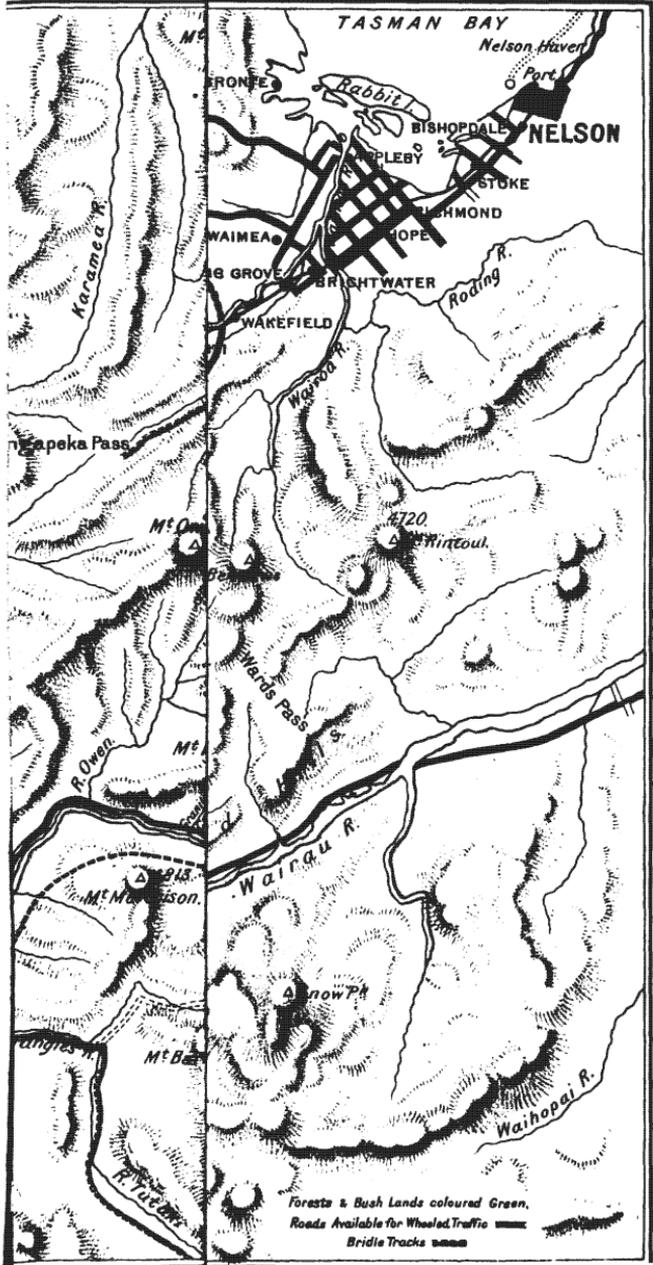
A flourishing town, chiefly dependent on the coal mines of the district, which is estimated to contain 140,000,000 tons.

Tourists should first inspect the *Harbour Works*, which were designed by Sir John Coode, and commenced in 1886. Two groins are being constructed in order to confine the large volume of water which comes down the Buller into a definite channel, and cause such a scour as to wash the Bar away. The estimated cost to complete this work is £500,000, to be raised by loan.

EXCURSION.

An interesting excursion of one day may be made to *Coalbrook Dale*, the principal mine in the district, belonging to the *Westport Coal Company*. The average annual output is about 200,000 tons; the quality being equal to that of the best *Welsh coal*. The traveller takes the train for 10 m. along the *Ngakawau* line as far as *Waimanaroa*, and then proceeds by the branch line belonging to the *Westport Coal Co.* for 2 m. to *Conn's Creek*. From this a beautiful winding track of an easy grade leads up through the forest to the township of *Denniston* (altitude 1,800 ft.) 4 m. Travellers who do not wish to walk, can procure horses (inquiries should be made at the *Hotel* at *Westport* previously). The manager of the

INTERVENING CO



Forests & Bush Lands coloured Green,
Roads Available for Wheeled Traffic 
Bridle Tracks 



Colliery at Denniston is always courteous in showing the mine to visitors.

The coal from the mine is let down to Conn's Creek by a steep incline of more than 1 m. in length, with a grade from 1 in 3 to 1 in 1½; the loaded waggons drawing up the empty ones, and the whole regulated by powerful hydraulic brakes.

WESTPORT TO REEFTON. 48 m. coach.

The road, the same as that previously traversed, is retraced to

28 m. *Inangahua Junction.* Inn.

Here the coach halts for lunch. The road now goes through an uninteresting wooded country partly cleared to

48 m. **Reefton**, where the traveller stops for the night.

Hotels: *Dawson's*; *Stevenson's*.

Churches: *Ang.*; *Pres.*; *R. C.*; *Meth.*

Pop.: 1,100.

A flourishing town, in a wide valley, the principal centre of quartz reefing in N. Z. The average annual yield of the district has for many years been of the value of £100,000. This was the first town in N. Z. lighted by electricity.

Reefton is at present the terminus of the Rly. which is to connect Greymouth and Nelson, and is being constructed by the Midland Rly. Co.

REEFTON TO GREYMOUTH. 47 m. Rly. 12s. 3d., 8s. 4d.; R. 16s. 8d., 11s. 1d.

The line passes through beautiful woodland country, with much settlement at the various open spaces.

20 m. **Totara Flat.**

25 m. **Ahaura.** Hotel: *Gilmore's*.

Churches: *Ang.*; *R. C.*

Pop.: 200.

A small town on the river of the same name. If the traveller has time to spare, a stay may be pleasantly made here, as the excursions

up the river are beautiful. Adventurous travellers may make their way by a mountain track across to Hamner Plains (see Rte. 21) in three days.

Just after leaving the town, the *Ahaura R.*, an affluent of the *Grey*, is crossed by a bridge.

The line then proceeds down the *Valley of the Grey*, with the *Paparua Range* (which is beautifully wooded, to the summit) on the rt. In many of the gullies, gold miners are at work; and at the base, important deposits of coal exist. One of these, the *Black Ball*, is now in process of development.

36 m. The *Arnold R.*, the boundary between the Nelson and Westland provincial districts, is here crossed.

39 m. **Brunner.** The seat of the Grey Coal Mining Co.'s operations, the average annual output being 160,000 tons. The coal is bituminous, and specially suitable for steam and gas making.

47 m. **Greymouth.**

Hotels: *Gilmer's*; *Albion*; and others.

Churches: *Ang.*; *Pres.*; *R. C.*; *West.*

Pop.: 3,200.

The most important town on the West Coast. Harbour Works, similar to those at Westport, are in progress here; but as the set of the ocean currents and the trend of the coast are more difficult at this point, the result of the works has so far not been so satisfactory.

Tourists will notice a curious custom which is still maintained here, though it has long since died out in Europe; all through the night the watchman at intervals calls out the time and the state of the weather.

EXCURSION.

A pleasant excursion of one day may be made to **Lake Brunner**. A Rly. is being constructed by Lake Brunner to the *Teremakau R.*; but i

is not yet open. The road (15 to 20 m.) is good; horses and carriages may be hired at Greymouth. The road is pretty, passing through woodland scenery; and the lake, which is surrounded by grand mountains, very beautiful.

GREYMOUTH TO KUMARA. 10 m. Horse Tram. (Endeavour to secure seats beside the driver.)

The wooden tram-road at first skirts the sea coast, amongst sand hills and large patches of N. Z. flax.

In clear weather a glimpse of snow mountains is seen to the S.W. beyond lines of distant headlands; further on the road enters the bush luxuriant with ferns of every description which crop up between the wooden rails and overhang the track, until at

6 m. it ends abruptly on the precipitous edge of the *Teremakau River*.

The traveller is taken across, a distance of 700 ft., in a 'cradle' suspended on wires and drawn by an endless rope, worked by steam. There is nothing to alarm the most timid tourist, as the 'cradle' is like a large omnibus, and the motion perfectly smooth.

The tram-road then proceeds as before through a beautiful forest, marvellously rich in ferns. Amongst the other species which cling to the trunks of the trees may be noticed the *Kidney Fern* with its odd lobe-shaped frond.

10 m. **Kumara.**

Hotels: *Stewart's; Kumara; Crown;* and others, all somewhat rough.

Churches: *Ang.; Pres.; R. C.; West.*

Pop.: 1,100.

Close to this mining town are some of the most extensive hydraulic sluicing operations in the Colony. Several sludge tunnels run into the *Teremakau R.*, and the debris thus carried down partly dams it up and alters its course until a flood comes down and washes it all away.

If the tourist does not intend to proceed to *Hokitika*, he will have time to see the workings early in the morning whilst waiting for the coach for the *Otira Gorge*. Two hours will be enough to give him a general idea.

KUMARA TO HOKITIKA. 18 m. coach.

The scenery is somewhat uninteresting; decayed mining townships and deserted workings being passed. Nature is however striving to repair the damage done by man, and the vast heaps of debris are becoming covered with lichens and ferns.

15 m. **Arahura.** Here is a small native settlement, and school.

18 m. **Hokitika.**

Hotels: *Commercial; Empire.*

Churches: *Ang.; Pres.; R. C.; West.*

Pop.: 2,700.

HISTORICAL SKETCH.

The Maori population of the W. coast was never large, yet there were many tribal wars. The *Ngaitahu* held most of the country. The *Ngatimaoe*, reduced in number by wars with their hereditary foes, retired to the mountains W. of *Lakes Hawea and Wanaka*; some writers consider that it is not impossible that a few of them may still be discovered in the hitherto unexplored districts of the S.W.; but most probably they are extinct. The traces of native settlements found near those lakes are doubtless relics of this tribe. Some of the *Ngaitoa* tribe at one time came down from *Golden Bay* and settled at *Mawhere* (*Greymouth*), but they afterwards returned to the N. The present native population of the W. coast is about 50.

Exploration in the district commenced in 1846. In 1857 Grey coal was discovered. In 1860 the whole country from *Lake Rotoroa* to *Milford Sound* was purchased from the natives for £300.

In 1864 *Hokitika* was founded; the next year the famous 'gold rush' took place, miners flocking thither, mostly arriving by sea, but some crossing the

mountains from Christchurch. Large quantities of gold were found, and their newly acquired fortunes in too many cases squandered by the diggers with lavish folly. Many claims in the Grey district are said to have yielded their owners 1 lb. of gold a day; but no one thought of saving. Prices were enormous, flour being £150 a ton. Greymouth was founded in 1865. In 1866 a road was made from Christchurch to Hokitika (150 m.) at a cost of £150,000; in the same year the yield of the gold fields in the district amounted to the value of £1,400,000.

In 1867 the Province of Westland separated from Canterbury. The new province (now provincial district) contains about 3,045,760 acres, of which only 172,000 are open country. Here as elsewhere provincial government was abolished in 1876. The present population is about 17,000.

Hokitika, once the capital of the province, is now the county town. Although it has much decayed since the prosperous days of gold mining, it contains several breweries, tanneries, and other permanent industries, and nice villa residences. A Rly. is now in course of construction connecting it with Greymouth.

EXCURSIONS.

(1) To **Lake Mahinapua**, 6 m. A pleasant excursion of one day, best made by boat up the *Mahinapua R.*, a small tidal stream, the reflection of the almost tropical vegetation on the banks of which is very beautiful. On entering the lake (which is about 3½ m. long, and shaped somewhat like the letter L) on a fine day is obtained a panoramic view* of the main Alps, extending as far down as *Mt. Cook*. The reflection of the snowy range in the waters of the lake will remind travellers of similar effects in the Italian lakes.

(2) To **Lake Kanieri**, 17 m. Horses and carriages may be obtained at Hokitika. The road is good, and very lovely; the growth of ferns being marvellous. The lake is surrounded by hills, with dense and varied bush growing down to the water's edge.

(3) To **Ross**. See Rte. 29.

ROUTE 20.

HOKITIKA BY KUMARA, THE OTIRA GORGE AND SPRINGFIELD TO CHRISTCHURCH.

This delightful trip should, if possible, be taken by all tourists. Those who come overland from Nelson (see Rte. 19) will probably stop at *Kumara*, and not go on to Hokitika, thus avoiding the early start from that place. Those who have gone by the E. coast (Rte. 22) or by sea to Christchurch should cross the mountains and return the same way; unless they have time to stop and see the neighbourhood of Hokitika, they also may stop at *Kumara*. The

best time of year is the end of January, when the rata is in blossom.

The road was made in the year 1866 by the Provincial Government of Canterbury.

It is frequently discussed whether it is better to make this tour from E. to W. or from W. to E. On the one hand, it is better to have the most beautiful part of the journey—that is, the western—last; on the other, it is well to creep up the

lovely Otira Gorge as slowly as possible, and then hurry rapidly down the less beautiful eastern side.

The trip may be best done by forming a party, and hiring a special coach (£5 a day; a coach will take a party of five) for a day when the ordinary coach is not running; in that way tourists will be sure of finding room at the Bealey Hotel, and if not pressed for time, they can stay a day or two at some of the wayside accommodation houses, which though simple are comfortable.

Travellers should provide themselves with warm clothing and waterproofs.

HOKITIKA TO SPRINGFIELD. 119 m. coach.

For the first part of the journey, see Rte. 19.

19 m. Kumara (see Rte. 19).

The road then passes up the valley of the *Teremakau R.* In other parts of the world there are higher snow mountains, larger glaciers, and deeper gorges, but in few places is such grand mountain scenery found in combination with such luxuriant vegetation, as in this valley. The mountains seen here are higher than those on the Buller Road, and tower above the forest line (about 4,000 ft. above the sea) in fine bold rocky shapes culminating in *Mt. Rolleston* (8,000 ft.), which overhangs the Otira Gorge. At first, the most prominent object before the traveller is *Mt. Alexander*, with its snow-covered summit rising to a height of 6,460 ft. Through the lovely bush, with its marvellous undergrowth of tree-ferns, a succession of mountain views unfold in ever-varying combination.

37 m. The *Taipo R.* is crossed by a bridge and the road then passes beneath some splendid trees called 'The Avenue.'

44 m. *Jackson's Accommodation House.*

This is a good place for tourists to stay who wish to visit *Lake Brunner* (see Rte. 19). Horses, buggies, and guides can be obtained at *Jackson's*.

The road still continues along the valley of the *Teremakau*, until the *Otira* (or *Otairi*) *R.* is reached, and then proceeds up that river, and the real grandeur of the Gorge scenery commences. The brilliant masses of rata which clothe the sides of the gorge, and the delicate white blossoms of the lacebark lower down, will delight the eye.

After fording the river,

59 m. The *Otira Hotel*, where the coach stops for lunch, is reached.

On leaving the hotel the steep ascent of the *OTIRA GORGE** commences. Travellers will do well to walk up the hill, stopping at intervals to look back and enjoy the glorious view. The road ascends by a very steep zigzag, and has to contest the passage with the brawling torrent that descends from the *Glacier of Mt. Rolleston* on the rt. At places the road is carried along a narrow rocky ledge, where sufficient width is obtained by brackets and stays fixed securely to the rock. As it winds out and in, round the steep rocky face, the traveller's progress seems to be barred at every turn, but it is reassuring to know that during all the years that this road has been opened no accident has occurred to the coach going either up or down the gorge.

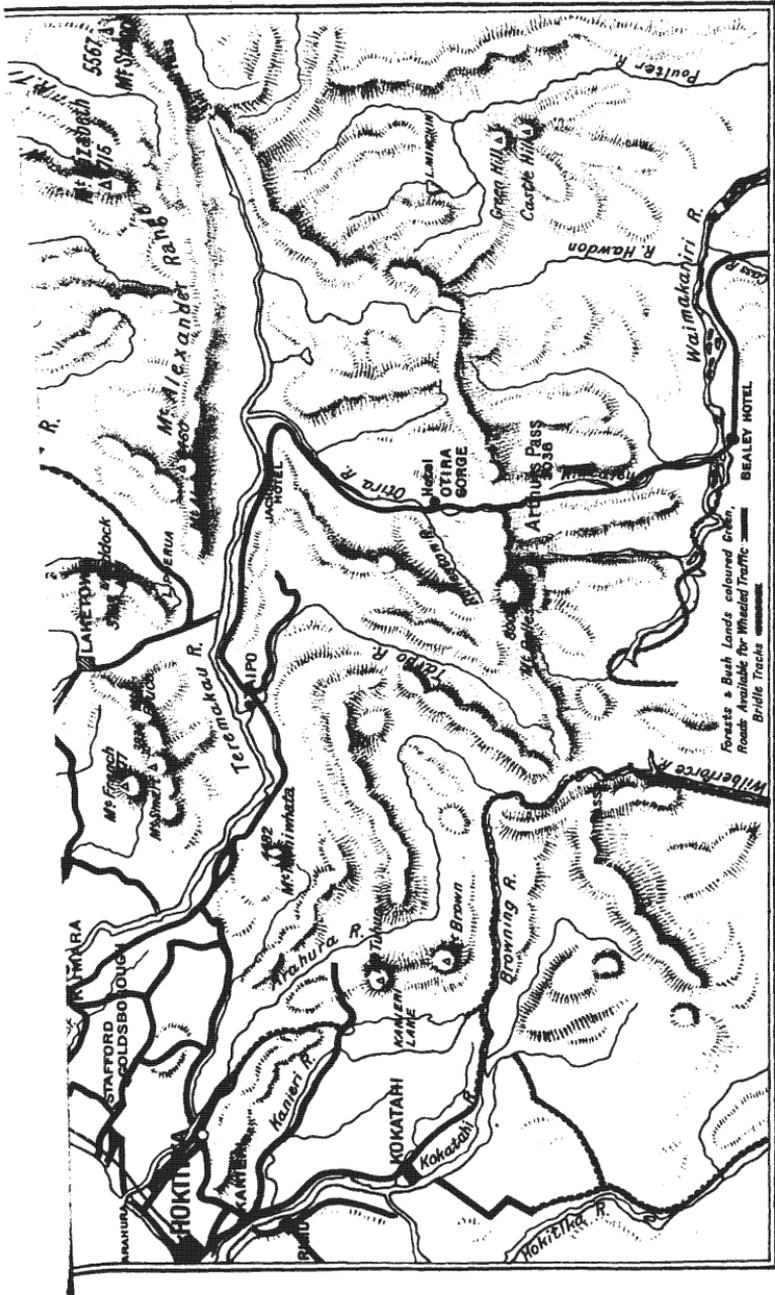
The vegetation becomes less luxuriant as the top of the Gorge at *Arthur's Pass* (3,038 ft.) is reached. Alpine flowers are seen here, and amongst them must be noticed the lovely Alpine lily (*ranunculus tyalli*).

Shortly after passing the summit

63 m. is a post, marking the division between Westland and Canterbury.

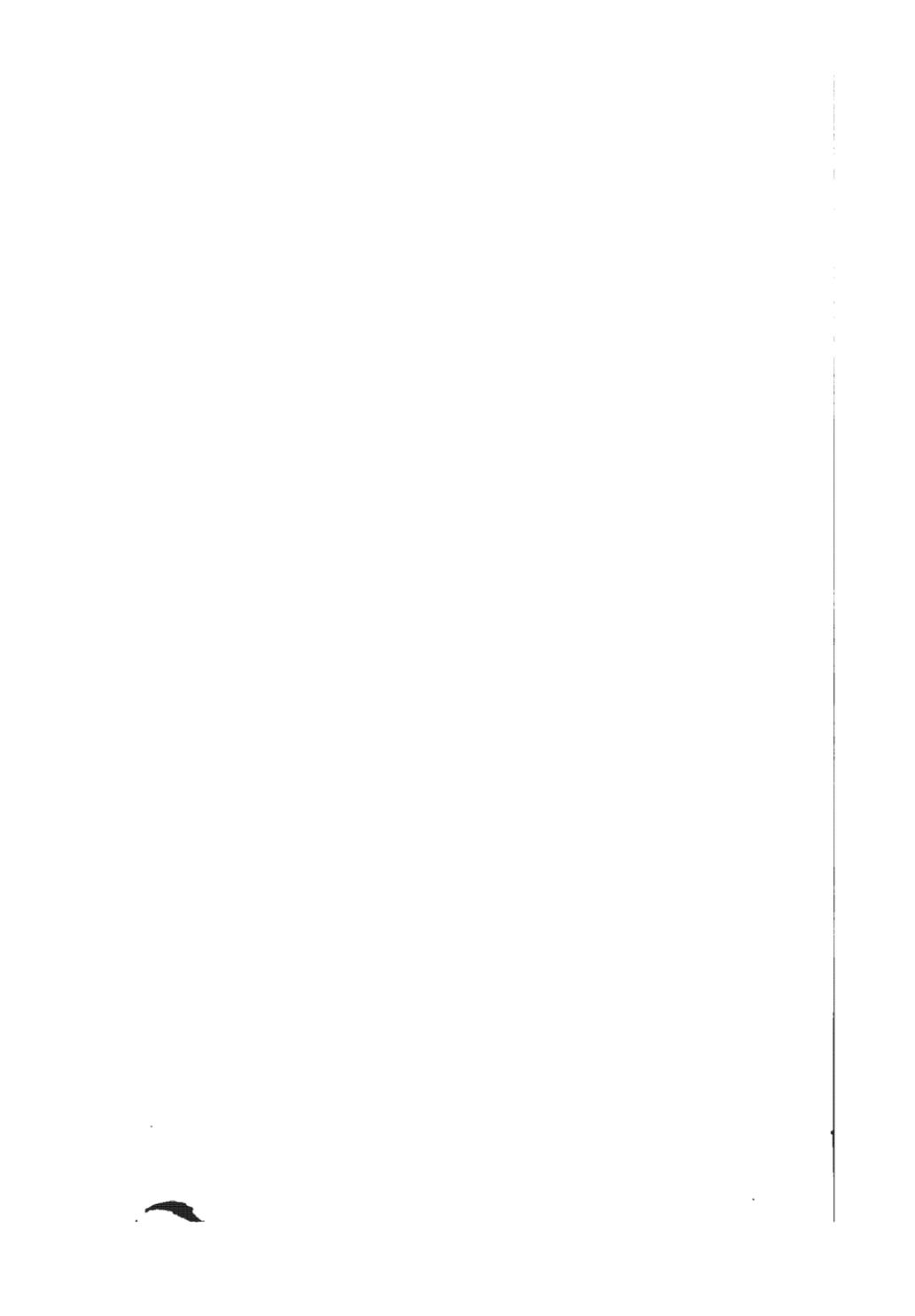
High up on the rt. rise the *ROLLESTON MOUNTAIN* and *GLACIER*.

The road is now comparatively level for some distance. It then descends rapidly by a winding course,



J. Bealshaw, Ed.

London, John Murray, Albemarle Street.



through manuka scrub and stunted birch, along the bed and banks of the wild *BEALEY RIVER*.

Several waterfalls may be seen on the descent, but the finest is the Devil's punch-bowl (500 ft.) on the l.

68 m. the bottom of Arthur's Pass is reached. After this, the ever-changing track, often crossing the straggling river from side to side, follows the desolate stony valley of the *Bealey*, as it winds between the mountains which rise abruptly on either side, until it reaches the valley of the *WAIMAKARIRI*. The river of that name is crossed by a long winding ford just before reaching

74 m. **Bealey Hotel.** Here the coach stops for the night. Travellers who have time to spare, and wish to benefit by the mountain air, can stay for a few days and enjoy the excursions in the neighbourhood. The most beautiful of these are to the *Rolleston Glacier* and to the glaciers at the head of the *White R.*; either excursion can be made in one day; horses and guides can be obtained at the Bealey Hotel.

The scenery on leaving this becomes less beautiful, as the birch trees are stunted, and soon disappear entirely, leaving the ground clothed only by the monotonous tussock.

The road proceeds along the flats of the *Waimakariri River* for some distance, and then ascending by a steep incline cut in the face of the mountain, passes round the *Sugarloaf Hill* and descends to (83½ m.) the ford and the *Accommodation House* on the *Cass River* (1,890 ft.): then after skirting *Lake Grassmere* it crosses over a slight rise to *Lake Pearson*, and at (91 m.) *Craigie Burn* (2,150 ft.) passes through a large sheep station. The homestead is seen to the left.

98 m. The *Broken River* is forded; and soon after *Cloudesley's Accommodation House* (2,370 ft.) is reached.

Near this l. is 'Flock Hill,' so

called from a quantity of white rocks strewn over it, in the distance resembling a flock of sheep.

Close by is the large sheep station named 'Castle Hill,' from the strange castle-like rocks which may be seen on both sides of the road.

104 m. *The Springs.* Here the coach changes horses, and the road then rapidly rises to

106 m. *Lake Lyndon* (2,730 ft.). The peculiarity of this lake is that no river flows into it, and very seldom does any water flow from it.

The road then rises for a short distance up 'Starvation Gully' and reaches

107 m. A saddle of *Mt. Tortlesse* (3,100 ft.) called *Porter's Pass*. The descent (1,037 ft.; 3 m.) is done in about 12½ minutes. The level of the *Canterbury Plains* is thus reached. *Accommodation House.*

The road then crosses the *Porter R.* and proceeds over the plain, slightly descending, and crossing the *Kowai River* to

119 m. **Springfield Hotel.**

Here the coach stops, travellers lunch, and prepare to continue their journey by train.

A stay may however be made here by those who wish to ascend *Mt. Tortlesse* (6,500 ft.). It is an easy excursion of one day; guide unnecessary. The view from the summit over the *Canterbury plain* is very extensive.

SPRINGFIELD TO CHRISTCHURCH. 44 m. Rly. 9s. 2d., 6s. 2d.; R. 12s. 3d., 8s. 3d.

The whole line is a steady descent from 1,252 ft. to 13, across a well cultivated plain.

6 m. **Sheffield.**

15 m. **Darfield.**

20 m. **Kirwee.**

30 m. *Rolleston Junction.* Here the *Christchurch-Dunedin line* is joined. See Rte. 23.

44 m. **CHRISTCHURCH.** See Rte. 22.

ROUTE 21.

BLENHEIM TO CHRISTCHURCH BY KAIKOURA, WAIUAU AND
CULVERDEN.

163 m. coach and 69 m. Rly.

This Rte. cannot compare in grandeur or interest with that by Nelson and the W. coast; but part of it is very beautiful, and it forms a pleasant change for those who have already been the other way.

The journey only takes four days; but according to existing coach arrangements, a day must be spent at Kaikoura. Travellers leaving Blenheim on Monday morning cannot (unless they take a special coach) reach Christchurch before Friday evening.

As the stopping places are few, and not at the most convenient intervals, tourists will do well in providing themselves with some luncheon beforehand.

BLENHEIM TO KAIKOURA, 98 m.

The road soon leaves the Blenheim plain, and enters a wild, treeless district, winding about between hills covered only with yellow tussock-grass. A few sheep and innumerable rabbits are seen, but few other signs of life.

15 m. Awatere. A small hotel in the valley of the river of the same name. Here the coach halts for breakfast. The lofty peak of *TAPUANUKA*, 9,462 ft. high, may be seen on the rt. On the l. is the sea, with the lighthouse on *Cape Campbell* (which was named by Cook when he sighted it on January 14, 1770).

The road continues to pass through sheep-runs, with a little planting near the larger houses. As the road crosses the paddocks, many gates have to be opened.

27 m. Clifford Bay. A curious effect

may often be observed here. What at first looks like an inlet of the sea is seen on coming down the hill to be only a mirage. Some small lakes, which are sometimes dry, are passed.

28 m. Flaxbourne. The extensive sheep-station of Sir Geo. Clifford. Here the coach stops for lunch.

After leaving Flaxbourne, the road passes through some more country of the same character, and then goes down to the sea shore. For the rest of the way to Kekerangu, it is in places sandy and very heavy. The steep hills to the rt. are bold, but bare; occasionally fine views of the mountains further inland are seen.

54 m. Kekerangu. The station of Mr. Symons, in a peaceful valley. At the small inn here the coach halts for the night. Close to the homestead is a little cemetery, containing the graves of some who were lost in the *Taiaroa* on April 11, 1836.

The road then continues along the sea shore; the cliffs become more wooded and beautiful. *Waipapa Point*, on which the *Taiaroa* was wrecked, is seen.

73 m. The CLARENCE (Waiua-toa) R. is crossed by a bridge; the view up the valley is beautiful. At the little inn, the coach halts for breakfast.

After this the great beauty of the road commences. The hills are covered with bush; the road, after winding round the *Ohau* hill, skirts the shore, but is better for travelling than it was near Kekerangu. A Native reserve is passed through, with some faint traces of fortified pas, which were destroyed in tribal wars. Several caves are seen in the

rocks. In front, the promontory of Kaikoura is to be seen, and the houses of the town gradually come in sight.

89 m. **Maungamanu.** A small Native settlement on the *Hapuka R.*, which is here forded.

98 m. **Kaikoura.**

Hotels: *Club; Commercial; and others.*

Churches: *Ang.; Pres.; R. C.*

Pop.: 400.

A scattered township, strikingly situated in a small plain with the promontory on the S., the sea on the E., and the glorious range of the Kaikoura mts. on the N. The most noticeable of these are *Mt. Fyffe* (5,500 ft.), *Kaitarau* (8,700 ft.) and *Whakari* (8,500 ft.). This range was named by Cook 'The Lookers-on,' from the behaviour of some of the natives when they visited his ship at Kaikoura in Feb. 1770. On the hill just above the town are the ruins of several pas, destroyed during the raids made by the natives of the N. Island on the feebler tribes of the S.

At Kaikoura coaches are changed.

KAIKOURA TO CULVERDEN. 68 m. coach.

This is a drive of great beauty, through a wild mountainous district, with splendid views of the *Seaward Kaikouras* on the rt., and of less important ranges on the l. It is a tiring drive, as for some distance the road is a mere track along riverbeds. In wet weather the rivers are not infrequently impassable.

18 m. *Green Hills.* A station belonging to Mr. Bullen. Here a halt is made to rest the horses, as there is no change before Waiau. Refreshments are provided for travellers.

26 m. The *Conway R.* is forded, and the Provincial District of Nelson is entered. The road then winds round the '*Whale's Back*,' a remarkable hill of volcanic formation, composed of

tufa and lava which has forced its way through the limestone of which the district is composed. On the l. is passed *Mt. Cookson*, near the top of which are some curious caves and holes of great depth, in which many moa bones have been found. The road then follows down the bed of the *Mason R.* for some distance; then crosses a thickly-wooded tongue of land into the *Wandel R.*, and follows its bed until it joins the *Mason*, and then again goes down the *Mason*.

51 m. *Highfield Station*, the property of Mr. H. Wharton, is passed on the l.

52 m. **Waiau.** A small settlement at the junction of the *Mason* and *Waiau* rivers.

Hotel: *Waiau.*

Here the coach stops, and the traveller may rest for the night, unless he is anxious to press on to *Culverden* the same day.

[A very pleasant detour may be made by more adventurous travellers, by taking the route from *Kaikoura* to *Waiau* by the *AMURI BLUFF*. There is no coach, and for the first part of the way it is necessary to go on horseback. A horse may be hired at Kaikoura, and (if the traveller is unwilling to complete the journey on horseback) arrangements made for a buggy to be sent up from *Waiau* so as to meet the traveller at *Boat Harbour*. In this way it is possible to make the expedition in one day.

KAIKOURA TO BOAT HARBOUR (*Claverley*). 25 m. riding.

The track skirts along the beach; the scenery is not to be surpassed by any in the Riviera. On this coast are large indications of the existence of diamonds; and small stones which have been found here have been pronounced by Mr. Streeter to be genuine diamonds.

BOAT HARBOUR TO WAIAU. 35 m. driving.

The road goes up the *Conway R.* for 8 m. It then passes *Hawkwood*; goes in sight of *Parnassus*, a sheep station near the *Waiau*; follows up the *Leader R.*; and winds through the hills to the township of *Waiau*.]

On leaving Waiau, the *WAIU R.* is crossed by a long bridge.

The road is then over a flat grass country, with occasional agriculture, all the way to Culverden.

61 m. Rotherham. Soon after leaving Rotherham, a fence of rabbit-proof netting is passed through. This was erected by the Government, at the instance of Mr. J. D. Lance, in order to arrest the spread of the rabbits southward.

A water-race by which water is brought from the Waiau R. is crossed.

67 m. A signpost here marks the way to the *HANMER SPRINGS*. They are usually reached by coach from Culverden, 24 m., coach daily.

[The road to the Hanmer Springs crosses the plain and passes through the *Watau Gorge*, commanding fine views of the mountains. The Waiau is crossed by an iron bridge, 180 ft. above the water.

Hanmer Plains.

Hotels: *Jollie's Pass Hotel; Jack's Pass Hotel.*

The former is 2½ m. from the Springs, the latter 1 m. The managers of the Hotels provide carriages free to persons visiting the baths twice a day. The baths are twelve in number, with an open swimming bath; they are under the control of the Government. (Terms, 4s. for six baths.) The baths have for many years proved very efficacious for skin diseases, rheumatism, and liver complaints.]

68 m. Culverden.

Hotel: *Culverden.*

CULVERDEN TO CHRISTCHURCH. 69 m. Rly. 14s. 5d., 9s. 7d.; R. 19s. 3d., 12s. 9d.

7 m. Balmoral. Here the *Hurumui R.* is crossed, and the Provincial District of Canterbury entered.

12 m. Medbury. After leaving the station, the house and woods of *Horsley Down*, the property of Messrs. Mallock and Lance, may be seen on the rt.

20 m. Waikari. After this the line passes through the *Weka Pass* of limestone formation, interesting to geologists. Many remarkable fossils have been found. On some rocks here have been found paintings of a rude character (now unfortunately much injured) which archaeologists have considered to be of ancient Maori, or even pre-Maori work; indeed it has even been argued that they are Tamil, and must have been executed by exiles from Ceylon! Copies may be seen in the Christchurch Museum.

On leaving the pass, the house and grounds of *Glenmark*, the residence of Mr. J. H. Moore, may be seen on the l. Here were found the largest collection of moa bones ever discovered: they are now in the Christchurch Museum.

29 m. Waipara. Here the *Waipara R.* is crossed.

36 m. Amberley.

43 m. Sefton.

47 m. Ashley. Here the *Ashley R.* is crossed.

49 m. Rangiora Junction.

[From here a branch line runs to Oxford West, 21 m., and so round to Kaiapoi, or on to Springfield. (See Rta. 20.)]

56 m. Kaiapoi.

Hotels: *Kaiapoi; Middleton; and others.*

Churches: *Ang.; Pres.; West.*

Pop.: 1,600.

A flourishing town on the *Waimakariri R.* which is navigable for small steamers up to the town. There are several mills and factories, the most noticeable being the woollen factory, at which nearly 600 hands are employed. N. Z. wools are here worked up into cloth, flannel, and blankets. Mr. Blackwell, the Managing Director, kindly affords every facility to visitors who wish to inspect the works.

Near Kaiapoi is a small native settlement, composed of the remnant of the once famous *Ngaitahu* tribe, which suffered severely from the raid of Te Rauparaha in 1830 (see p. [53]). The ancient stronghold, which is still in a good state of preservation, is about 4 m. from the present town of Kaiapoi. It was on a promontory, which projects into a deep swamp, and was thus protected on all sides but one. Along this side it was defended by a double line of palisades and a deep ditch, with two outworks. It was besieged for some months, but Te Rauparaha at last carried a sap, the lines of which still exist, up to the palisade, piled up brushwood, and burnt the palisade; his followers then rushed in, and a general massacre ensued. But the labours of the missionaries have not been without their effect. Some years afterwards, when Bp. Selwyn came to preach to the natives at Kaiapoi, he was accompanied by a son of the once dreaded Te Rauparaha.

The present Maori reserve is about 2,640 acres. The Maoris are slowly decreasing in number. At present they are about 150. They possess a school and runanga house.

[From Kaiapoi a branch line runs to *Oxford W.*, 27 m., and so on to *Rangiora*, or to *Springfield* (see Rte. 20).]

61 m. **Belfast.** A large meat-freezing establishment may be seen on the l. This has all the latest improvements, and is well worthy of a visit, if the traveller has not already seen one of the sort.

65 m. **Papanui.** A suburb of Christchurch. A steam tram runs from the station in to Christchurch, 3 m.

68 m. **Addington.** Large government workshops for manufacturing railway plant may be seen on the l. and the showyards on the rt.

69 m. **CHRISTCHURCH.** See Rte. 22.

ROUTE 22.

CHRISTCHURCH AND NEIGHBOURHOOD.

CHRISTCHURCH.

Hotels: *Warner's**, close to the Cathedral; *Coker's**, nearer the Rly. Sta. (charges at each 10s. 6d. per day, £3 3s. per week); *Clarendon* (8s. per day, £2 2s. per week); *Terminus*, close to the Rly. Sta. (7s. 6d. per day, £2 per week). Good lodgings may be obtained.

Clubs: *Christchurch*; *Canterbury* (both residential).

Churches: *Ang.*; *Pres.*; *R. C.*; *West.*; *Cong.*; *Bapt.*; and others; also a *Synagogue*.

Pop.: 45,000 (including suburbs).

Conveyances: *Trams* run frequently from the centre of the

city to the Rly. Sta., to Sydenham, to Sumner, to Papanui, and to New Brighton. There are also frequent *coaches* to the Port Hills, Halswell, Sunnyside, Richmond, Fendalton, Riccarton, and other suburbs.

Cab fares. By time: Within the boundary, for fifteen minutes, 1s. 6d.; for one hour, 4s.; each subsequent quarter of an hour, 1s. Outside the boundary, for one hour, 5s.; each subsequent quarter of an hour, 1s. By distance: Within the boundary (including the Rly. Sta.) 1s.; for each $\frac{1}{2}$ m. beyond the boundary, 6d. **Half fares extra for each passenger beyond two. Half fares extra between 10 p.m. and midnight;**

double fares between midnight and 7 a.m.

Horses and vehicles of all kinds for excursions can be obtained at *Dela-main's* in Gloucester St., and *Clarkson's* in Cashel St.

Boat hire: *Boats and Canoes* for going up the river may be hired at Cambridge Terrace West, close to the Hospital; and for going down the river, at the N. end of the E. Town Belt.

HISTORICAL SKETCH.

Capt. Cook sailed along the E. coast in 1770, and called what was subsequently found to be a peninsula, 'Banks' Island,' after Sir Joseph Banks. The first European settlement in the district was the French settlement at Akaroa (see p. 102).

In 1843 two brothers named Deans, from Riccarton in Ayrshire, settled at a spot then known as Potoringamotu, which they called after their old home. It is said that they also named the river the Avon, after the Avon which flows into the Clyde; but this has been disputed, others maintaining that it was named after Shakespeare's river. In the meantime, the N. Z. Company purchased from the natives the greater part of the S. Island, and bought from the French the claims on Banks' Peninsula which they had acquired from the natives.

In 1849 the Canterbury Association purchased from the Company 'all that tract of waste and unappropriated land situated in the middle island of N. Z., being bounded by the snowy range of hills from Double Corner to the river Ashburton, by the river Ashburton from the snowy hills to the sea, and by the sea from the mouth of the Ashburton to Double Corner, and estimated to contain 2,500,000 acres, more or less, with the exception of certain buildings and the land marked out as appurtenant thereto, situate on Banks' Peninsula, and purchased by the N. Z. Company from the Nanto-Bordelaise Company, and with the exception of certain property acquired by purchase and exchange with M. de Belligny, such lands so excepted being reserved to Her Majesty, her heirs and successors.'

The object of the Canterbury Association—which consisted of men of high position, the Archbishop of Canterbury being the President—was to found a settlement, the colonists of which should be members of the Ch. of England, with a Bp. and clergy; to establish schools and a college properly endowed. Indeed, in the matter of education, the views and hopes of the Association were very far reaching, they hoped that the influence of the system to be established would extend not only to Australia but would attract students from India and China.

The cost of rural lands to settlers was to be £3 per acre, in sections of not less than 50 acres; of this money 10s. was to go to the cost of forming the settlement and paying for the land; £1 per acre was to be devoted to the Religious and Educational Fund; £1 per acre to the Immigration Fund, and 10s. to survey, roads, bridges, &c. The price of a half-acre allotment in the capital was to be £24, and of quarter-acre allotments in other towns, £12. These prices were paid by all the first settlers. The scheme, however, was at a later time considerably modified.

In 1848 surveyors were sent out to make preparations for the arrival of the colonists. On Sept. 7, 1850, four ships, bearing a party of emigrants of all classes (commonly called *The Canterbury Pilgrims*) left Plymouth; the first of these arrived at Lyttelton on Dec. 16. Canterbury is thus the youngest of the N. Z. settlements. For some little time Lyttelton, now the port of Christchurch, and separated from it by a ridge of steep hills, remained the principal settlement, the difficulty of crossing the hills being very great. By the end of 1851, 3,000 persons had arrived from England, many also from Australia; the town of Christchurch had been commenced, and an agitation started for the erection of Canterbury into a separate province. (At this time the Lieutenant-Governor of New Munster, whose jurisdiction extended all over the South Island, resided at Wellington. Sir G. Grey proposed to add five members from Canterbury to the Provincial Council of New Munster, but his action in the matter was disallowed by the Home Government.) In 1853, under the Constitution Act, Mr. J. E. Fitz Gerald was elected superin-

tendent of the province, and the Provincial Council met. Christchurch was not however made a municipality until 1862. In 1876, when the Provincial Governments throughout the colony were abolished, Canterbury ceased to be a province.

The **Situation of Christchurch** in a dead, flat plain, with but little native timber, though suitable for a town, was not prepossessing. But what nature lacked, art has abundantly supplied. The distant mountains to the W., especially in winter and spring, when covered with snow, form a beautiful background to the city, whilst to the S. the *Lyttelton Hills* rise to a height of 1,600 ft.

The city has been admirably laid out; the roads which follow the winding banks of the river break the monotony of the straight streets; large plantations of English trees have been made in the parks, squares, avenues, and private gardens; the general character of the buildings, many of them excellent specimens of architecture, whether built of grey stone, brick, or wood, is very pleasing; and the tapering spire of the Cathedral, rising from the centre of the city, completes the English appearance of the whole. All travellers, whether coming from Europe or elsewhere, will agree in thinking Christchurch a model city.

PUBLIC BUILDINGS, PLACES OF INTEREST, ETC.

If the traveller is pressed for time, he should take a cab to the Cathedral, and thence walk along Worcester Street, making a short detour to the rt. at the river, to see the Provincial Council Chamber, the Art Society's Gallery, and the Supreme Court; then returning to Worcester Street to Canterbury College, the Museum, the Public Gardens, and Hagley Park. Several days, however, may be pleasantly spent in Christchurch and its suburbs if time permits.

[*New Zealand.*]

The **Cathedral**, in the centre of the city, is built in the Early English style, from designs by Sir Gilbert Scott, R.A., the local architect being Mr. Mountford.

The foundation stone was laid Dec. 16, 1864, by Bp. Harper. The extreme length of the building when finished will be 203 ft.: the height of the Tower and spire is 210 ft. Only the nave, aisles, tower, and spire are as yet completed (consecrated Nov. 1, 1881), but the foundations of the choir and transepts are laid. The funds have been supplied partly from the estate reserved for the Dean and Chapter at the commencement of the settlement, partly by private subscription; the *Tower, Steeple, and peal of ten bells* were presented by the Rhodes family. During the earthquake of 1887, the top of the spire was overthrown, but it has since been restored.

Over the *W. door* is a relief, in Bath stone, of the Saviour seated in glory; unfortunately the stone has been injured by the weather.

The *Font* was presented by the late Dean Stanley, of Westminster, to the memory of his brother, Captain Owen Stanley, R.N., who hoisted the British flag at Akaroa in 1840.

The *Pulpit*, in marble and alabaster, is a memorial to the late Bp. Selwyn. The alabaster panels were executed in England; the rest is local work.

The Cathedral contains several *memorial windows*, all executed by Messrs. Clayton and Bell; and some *memorial panels*.

The *Roof* is composed of native black-pine timber. Visitors should not omit to ascend the tower, from which the view is very fine.

There is a daily Choral service in the Cathedral, and the Chorister boys receive a good education in the 'Cathedral School' near the river.

The first Bishop of Christchurch (Rev. J. C. Harper, D.D.), was consecrated in England 1856; on his resignation the present Bishop (Rev.

Churchill Julius, D.D.) was consecrated in the Cathedral 1890.

Opposite to the Cathedral is the **statue of Mr. J. R. Godley**, who came out as Agent of the Canterbury Association, in 1849, and returned to England in 1852. It was executed by Woolner and erected by the Provincial Council; it is considered a faithful portrait.

Proceeding down Worcester Street, the **City Council Chambers** (a red brick building) are seen on the rt.

A slight detour to the rt., along the river, leads to the **Provincial Council Chamber**, a beautiful building in the early Decorated style, commenced in 1858. The wooden buildings adjoining are still used as Government offices.

A little beyond the Government Buildings, in the Market Place, is the **Supreme Court**, a stone building which contains besides the Court of Justice, a valuable **Law Library**.

Returning to Worcester Street, the **Boys' High School**, an admirable building in the same style as the Provincial Council Chamber, is seen on the l. This school was endowed with a grant of land by an Act of the General Assembly, in 1878, and has proved a great success; about 150 boys are now being educated here.

Just beyond this is **Canterbury College** the University College of Christchurch, which is affiliated to the University of N. Z. The style is peculiar, segmental arches being substituted for the ordinary pointed ones, but it is effective; and the large Hall, 80 ft. by 35 ft., is especially well worthy of a visit. The College was founded by the Provincial Government, and is under the charge of a *Board of Governors* who also have under their control the Museum, the Public Library,

the Boys' High School, the Girls' High School, the School of Art, and the Lincoln School of Agriculture. There are five Professors, beside lecturers; instruction is given in Classics, English, Mathematics, Chemistry, Geology, and Engineering.

At the end of the street stands the **Museum**. It was endowed by the Provincial Government, but its excellence is due to the untiring energy and ability of the late *Sir Julius von Haast, K.C.M.G.*, who was appointed Provincial Geologist in 1860. He presented a large number of moa bones, found by himself, to various foreign museums, and in return received presents for the museum of various highly interesting objects. He thus laid the foundation of the present collection of Assyrian, Egyptian, Etruscan, and mediæval curiosities, which has been since added to by private donors. The Museum contains a very large number of geological, mineralogical, and botanical specimens, stuffed animals from all parts of the world, native birds (several of which are now extinct), shells, &c. The pictures, which at present occupy one hall, are intended to be removed to a gallery of the Art Society. Travellers from England will probably be most struck with the skeletons of the extinct giant bird—the moa—which fill one room, the height of the tallest one is 16 ft., and its bones are very massive; the wing is represented by a small rudimentary bone hardly noticeable unless sought for. The *Maori House*, which was originally designed by Hone Taahu as a residence for Henare Potae, a Chief of the Ngatiporou tribe, is inferior to the one at Wellington, but contains a number of native curios, including those collected by Captain Cook during his visits to N. Z.

To the rt. of the Museum are the buildings and grounds of **Christ's College**, an institution bound up

with the history of the settlement. It was part of the original scheme that there should be a College with two Departments, a Grammar school for boys under 17, and a College proper for young men above that age. It was endowed with a fund provided by the early settlers for educational and church purposes. Donations of various kinds, including money and books, were made by friends in England; one of these being a gift of land, which formed a special endowment for the 'Somes Scholarships.' The Grammar school was first opened in 1851 at Lyttelton by Rev. H. Jacobs (afterwards Dean of Christchurch), and moved to a house in Oxford Terrace, Christchurch, in the following year. The College was incorporated by an Act of the Provincial Council in 1855, which granted to it 10 acres of land adjoining the Park, as a site for the Grammar School. The first part of the present buildings was commenced in 1857. Since then the school has continually grown, and has earned a high reputation throughout the Colonies. The system of education is modelled on that of English public schools. The Chapel is handsome, and the other buildings, though of a humbler character, are pleasing in appearance and well adapted to the objects for which they are intended. It is, however, the situation of the school—in the city and in the country at the same time—which gives it a charm that no tourist will fail to observe.

The plan for the Senior Department has been much modified. The funds at first proved sufficient only for a good grammar school. When Canterbury College (see above) was established, it was obvious that a rival institution was out of the question. The Senior Department of Christ's College has therefore taken the form of a hostel for Church of England students attending Canterbury College, and a College for Theological students. It at present occu-

pies a large house near the School of Art.

On the other side of the Museum, across the road, is the **School of Art**, another Gothic building worthy of a visit. It was opened in 1882, in order to foster the systematic study of practical Art, and the knowledge of its scientific principles, with a view to developing the application of Art to the common uses of life, and to the requirements of trade and manufacture. Instruction is given on the South Kensington system. The classes are largely attended.

Opposite to the School of Art are the **Public Gardens**, containing about 80 acres, beautifully laid out, and almost surrounded by the river, the willows on the banks of which are a striking feature. Travellers who have been to Cambridge may be reminded of the Cam at the backs of the Colleges. Near the main entrance is the **statue of Mr. W. S. Moorhouse**, who was three times Superintendent of the Province. It was designed by Lawson, and erected by public subscription. In different parts of the garden are being collected trees and plants from various countries—the most interesting groups are those representing Australia, Japan, Great Britain, and N. Z. The gardens are constantly being enriched by the exchange of seeds and plants with those of other countries.

Adjoining the Gardens are the **Acclimatisation Grounds**, in which fish are hatched to be turned out into the rivers and lakes of the district. The grounds also contain a small collection of birds and animals.

Two footbridges over the Avon lead from the Public Gardens into **Hagley Park** (400 acres), well planted with English and American trees, and containing cricket grounds,

shady footpaths, and delightful grass rides.

The **Public Library** is in Cambridge Terrace West. The Reading Room and reference library (which contains upwards of 8,000 volumes, besides many magazines and newspapers) is open to the public free of charge. To the lending library, which contains 12,000 volumes, the subscription is 10s. a year.

The **Girls' High School** was opened in 1877, and was removed to the present Gothic stone building in Cranmer Square in 1881. Many of the pupils have carried off distinctions at the University of N. Z.

The **Monastery of the Sacred Heart of Notre Dame des Missions** is situated in Barbadoes Street, not far from the Rly. Sta. It is of red brick relieved with white stone, and is under the direction of 'Les Sœurs de la Mission,' who conduct a High School for young ladies. The **E. C. Pro-Cathedral** and the residence of the Bishop adjoin the monastery.

Several other religious and educational buildings, &c. though not perhaps calling for detailed mention, are worthy of a visit as good specimens of architecture. Amongst these are the **Normal Schools** in Cranmer Square, the **Church of St. Michael (Ang.)** in Oxford Terrace West, the **Church of St. Andrew (Pres.)** in Tuam Street, and the country churches at Avon-side and Riccarton; the **Hospital**; and the **Lunatic Asylum**, a very large building about 3 m. from Christchurch on the Lincoln Road.

In **Lancaster Park**, to the S.E. of the city, is a good cricket ground.

Boating on the Avon is very pleasant, especially on the upper part of the river, where it flows between the Public Gardens and Hagley Park.

EXCURSIONS.

The drives in the neighbourhood of Christchurch are pleasant and home-like, through quiet villages with pretty gardens and orchards, and rich agricultural land. The principal are:—

(1) To **New Brighton (Hotel: Patterson's)**. 5 m. tram or omnibus. A favourite seaside resort for Christchurch residents.

(2) To **Sumner (Hotel: Morton's)**. 8 m. tram or omnibus. Also a seaside resort, situated at the foot of the Lyttelton Hills.

Here is situated the Deaf and Dumb Institution. Near the town is a cave in which many moa bones were found.

(3) To **Lyttelton**. 7 m. rly. Travellers who have not reached Christchurch by sea should not omit to make this trip. The line runs through the suburbs of Opawa, Woolston, and Heathcote, and then enters the Lyttelton tunnel.

One of the great difficulties which the early settlers had to contend with was that of communication between the Port and the Plains. At first, the only means of conveying goods to Christchurch was by sea in steam lighters to the estuary of the Avon, and up the river Heathcote. In 1857, the road between Christchurch and Sumner was opened, but it was soon afterwards resolved to make a tunnel through the hills. The execution of the work was mainly due to the energy and perseverance of Mr. W. S. Moorhouse, the Superintendent of the Province. The tunnel is 2,866 yds. in length—the longest in the Southern Hemisphere. The line was opened in 1867, being the first rly. constructed in N. Z.

Lyttelton.

Hotels: *Mitre*; and others.

Churches: *Ang.*; *Pres.*; *R.C.*; *West.*

Pop.: 4,000.

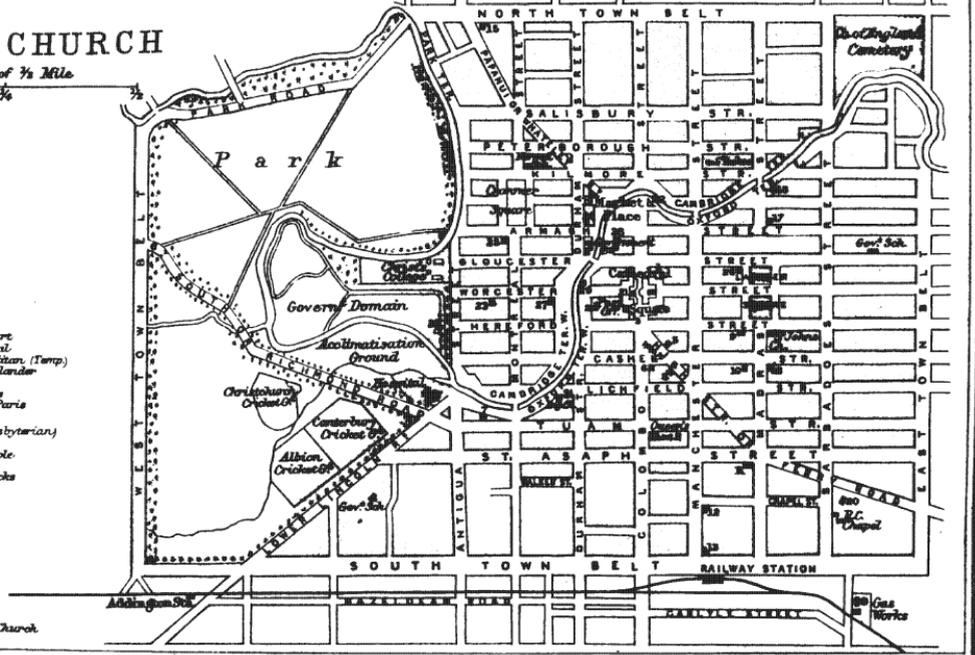
CHRISTCHURCH

Scale of 1/2 Mile
0 1/4 1/2



Reference

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------|
| Hotels | |
| 1 Warners | 8 White Hart |
| 2 Clarendon | 9 Occidental |
| 3 Harford | 10 Metropolitan (Temp) |
| 4 City | 11 New Zealand |
| 5 Empire | 12 Colours |
| 6 A.I. | 13 Tennyson |
| 7 Royal | 14 Cafe de Paris |
| Churches | |
| 15 North Belt Church (Presbyterian) | |
| 16 Baptist | |
| 17 Students of Truth Temple | |
| 18 St Pauls (Presbyterian) | |
| 19 Salvation Army Barracks | |
| 20 Convant | |
| 21 Godley Statue | |
| 22 Moorhouse Statue | |
| 23 Boys High School | |
| 24 Supreme Court | |
| 25 Girls High School | |
| 26 Christchurch Club | |
| 27 Canterbury Club | |
| 28 Working Mens Club | |
| 29 Municipal Office | |
| 30 Public Library | |
| 31 St Michaels Church | |
| 32 United Methodist Free Church | |



Copyright

London. John Murray, Albemarle Street.

J. Bartholomew, Edin.



Porters. Persons arriving by steamer will find licensed porters in attendance. They are obliged to work for any persons wishing to hire them between 6 a.m. and 8 p.m., except on Sundays. *Charges*:—for carrying a load not exceeding 56 lbs. for a distance not exceeding $\frac{1}{2}$ m., 1s.; for each additional 56 lbs. or part thereof, an additional 1s.; each additional $\frac{1}{2}$ m. or part thereof, an additional full fare. Double fare between 8 p.m. and 6 a.m.

N.B. Porters must show their licences, if required. Travellers should see that they are not overcharged.

The town is historically interesting as being the point of arrival of 'the Canterbury Pilgrims.' It was named after the 4th Lord Lyttelton, who had taken an active part in the Association. Previous to that time, the harbour had been known to whalers as Port Cooper. The first church in the settlement was commenced here in 1852; it was at one time intended that this should be the cathedral.

Lyttelton is of great importance now as the principal port of Canterbury. The harbour is completely landlocked, and is surrounded by rugged hills some 2,000 ft. in height. There are fine wharves, alongside which ships drawing 25 ft. of water can lie in smooth water, protected by two breakwaters, 1,400 ft. and 2,010 ft. long, which enclose an area of about 100 acres, and are well lighted by electric light.

The export trade in frozen meat is very considerable and is annually increasing. In the season 1889-90, 1,445,109 carcasses (mutton), besides 48,019 'pieces' of beef (8,198,393 lbs.), were shipped from this port alone.

From Lyttelton a coach road runs to Sumner 4 m. and thus to Christchurch.

Steamers of the Union S.S. Co. ply regularly between Lyttelton and all the larger ports; smaller vessels go to Kaikoura; also to Pigeon Bay and other bays on the N. of Banks' Peninsula.

(4) To **Lincoln**. 14 m. rly. The same distance by road; the drive is pretty. The rly. after passing the suburbs, runs through an agricultural district.

14 m. *Lincoln Sta.* (junction for *Little River*, the terminus for Akaroa (see below); the main line goes on to *Southbridge*, 31 m.).

At Lincoln is the *School of Agriculture*, which is under the control of Canterbury College, and was founded for the purpose of imparting a thorough knowledge of agriculture, both scientific and practical. The buildings (which accommodate the teaching staff and forty-five students) are in the Elizabethan style, of brick and stone. There are also complete farm buildings, with all the latest improvements, and a farm of 660 acres. All the subjects, theoretical and practical, useful to a farmer, are here taught, for the moderate charge of £40 a year, which includes board, residence, and tuition. The school is always full.

(5) To the *Belfast Meat-freezing Works* and the *Kaiapoi Woollen Factory*. See Rte. 21.

(6) To *Hanmer Springs*. See Rte. 21.

(7) To **Akaroa**. This pleasant excursion can be made in one day, returning the next. It is possible to go (a) all the way by sea from Lyttelton, 50 m., in about four hours; or (b) by sea to Pigeon Bay, 15 m., and thence by coach 16 m.; or (c) by rail from Christchurch to Little River, 36 m., and then by coach 20 m.

Taking the route (b) by Pigeon Bay, the road lies up a valley to the Pigeon Bay saddle, 3 m. through land once thickly covered with bush, but now nearly all cleared; and thence descends to Duvanchelles Bay, where it unites with the road from Little River.

The Little River Route (c) is the most popular.

14 m. **Lincoln** Junc. Sta. (see above). Here the line branches off from the Southbridge line.

LAKK ELLESNEERE, a vast salt water lagoon, may be seen on the rt.; hills on the l.

36 m. **Little River Terminus Sta.** Near this is a small native settlement.

Little River is really a pretty little lake on which an annual regatta is held.

From **Little River Sta.** the coach ascends to a lofty saddle by a road which was cut through dense and beautiful bush; now the hillsides are quite bare. After crossing the saddle the road descends rapidly, to **BARRY'S BAY**, giving glimpses from time to time of the upper part of **Akaroa Harbour**. From **Barry's Bay** it passes close to *Massacre Point*, the scene of **Te Rauparaha's** massacre (see below), and enters *Duwan-chelles Bay*, a pretty inlet of **Akaroa Harbour**. After this, the road, which is in many places very steep, skirts the harbour and dips into several bays, all cultivated, until it reaches

20 m. **Akaroa.**

Hotels: *Bruce's; Wagstaff's.*

Churches: *Ang.; Pres.; R.C.; Cong.*

Pop.: 700.

This peaceful settlement has had a curious history. In 1830 there was a frightful massacre of the natives of **Akaroa** by **Te Rauparaha** (see p. [53]), in revenge for the murder of a relation of **Te Rauparaha** at **Kaiapoi** by an **Akaroa** native. A man named **Stewart** (see Rte. 30), who owned a vessel, brought **Te Rauparaha** and a party of his followers down from **Kapiti**; and when they had arrived at **Akaroa**, concealed them in the hold whilst he induced some unfortunate **Akaroa** natives to come on board. **Te Rauparaha** at once killed them all; and then proceeded to attack the others on shore. The **Akaroa** natives, who possessed no firearms, endeavoured to entrench themselves on *Massacre Point*, hastily erecting defences on the isthmus which connects it with the mainland. The northern men, however, effected an entrance, and captured all

the besieged party, except two who succeeded in swimming across the bay to the mainland. The raid ended in the last great cannibal feast that took place in the island. **Te Rauparaha** afterwards cheated **Stewart** out of the payment he was to receive for his share in the proceedings.

In 1838 **Langlois**, the captain of a French whaler, bought 400 acres of land from the natives. He returned to France and sold his claim to the **Nanto-Bordelaise Company**, which had been formed to acquire the whole of **N. Z.** At the instigation of **Baron de Thierry**, who was at that time living at **Hokianga**, and called himself king of **N. Z.**, the French Govt. signed a convention with the company, which soon afterwards took the name of '*La Compagnie Française de la Nouvelle Zélande.*' The French corvette *L'Aube*, under Captain **Lavaud**, was sent to the Bay of Islands to take possession of the **N. Island**, with instructions to proceed afterwards to **Akaroa** to take possession of the **S.** also. Captain **Langlois** with 57 settlers embarked in the French Govt. transport *Comte de Paris* to proceed to **Akaroa** direct.

But when the *Aube* arrived at the Bay of Islands in July 1840 he found that the treaty of **Waitangi** had been signed and the English had already taken possession, and laid claim also to the **S. Island**, by virtue of **Cook's** discovery. Governor **Hobson** suspecting the designs of the French, despatched **H.M. Brig Britomart**, under Captain **Stanley** (a brother of the well-known **Dean of Westminster**) to **Akaroa**. He reached **Akaroa** on August 10, and the next day hoisted the British flag and established a court of petty sessions. The *Aube* arrived on the 15th, and the *Compte de Paris* (which had remained at **Pigeon Bay** from the 9th) on the 16th. Thus ended the attempt to make **N. Z.** a dependency of France. Many of the French settlers returned at once to their old homes; others remained at **Akaroa** until the foundation of the **Canterbury** settlement and then took the opportunity of selling their land and going to the **Marquesas Islands**; in 1849 the **N. Z. Company** bought up the claims of the French for £4,500; but **Akaroa** has never entirely lost all its early French characteristics.

It is now a favourite watering-place for residents at Christchurch.

There are a number of pleasant walks in the neighbourhood of Akaroa, especially those over the spurs of the hills. Active tourists will find delightful excursions by walking or riding to the tops of the hills (from which the views are splendid), and down into the picturesque bays beyond.

A rough track of about 6 m. leads to the *Lighthouse*. The bush abounds with ferns, mostly of the common varieties. The chief charm of a visit to Akaroa, however, consists in boating and yachting—visiting the various little bays in the large harbour.

(8) To the **West Coast** by the *Otira Gorge* (see Rte. 20). This is a trip which no traveller should omit. Those who have not come from, and do not intend to proceed to, Nelson (see Rte. 19), should go to the W. coast, and return the same way.

(9) To the **Chatham Islands**.

These Islands belong politically, but scarcely geographically, to N. Z.; nor can they be said to be within the route of an ordinary tourist; but if the excursion is made, Christchurch must be the starting-point.

FROM LYTTELTON TO THE CHATHAMS. 536 m. Steamers run every three months; more frequently during the wool season. The journey takes two or three days.

The main Island contains 230,000 acres. The scenery is pretty, and on the S. coast may be described as grand. The forest growth is

dense, but there are no very large trees. There are masses of tree ferns, and beautiful wild flowers, especially the blue Chatham Island lily.

There are many streams; one large lake, and several smaller ones.

The Chatham Islands were discovered by Lieut. Broughton in 1790. They were peopled by the Morioris (see p. [46]) and a few Maoris who had intermarried with them.

In 1835, the remnant of the Ngati-ruanui tribe, many of whom had been killed by the troops sent to N. Z. in the *Isabella* (see p. 59), resolved to take refuge in the Chathams. They arranged with the captain of the Sydney brig *Rodney* to conduct them thither; about 450 were taken by him in two voyages. They then slew nearly all the Morioris.

In 1839 the Maoris on the Islands captured a French whaler. In 1867 Te Kooti and his party were sent to the Islands; but in the following year they seized the schooner *Rifleman* and escaped to N. Z. (see p. [58]).

The present population is about 250 Europeans, 250 Maoris, and 20 Morioris.

The township of **Waitangi** contains an Hotel and an *Ang. Church*. Horses may there be hired. The best excursion is round the Island; but as there are no inns, travellers who have not brought introductions to the settlers must provide themselves with tents at Christchurch. There is plenty of duck, pigeon, and wild goose shooting. **Pitt Island**, which is about 18 m. distant, contains pretty wooded scenery; but unfortunately there is no regular communication with it.

ROUTE 23.

CHRISTCHURCH TO DUNEDIN.

230 m. Rly. 47s. 11d., 32s.; R. 63s. 11d., 42s. 8d.

This journey occupies ten hours. As the trains run only by day, travellers who are in a hurry may often save time by going by sea; the steamers usually making the journey by night.

The great *Canterbury Plain*, which stretches from the Waipara R. on the N. to the dolerite plateau of Timaru on the S., and is bounded on the E. by the sea and the volcanic hills of Banks' Peninsula, and on the W. by the southern Alps, is about 112 m. long by 50 wide at its widest point.

It is not (as travellers might at first suppose) a raised beach, but is formed by the detritus washed down from the mountains and glaciers by many rivers. Although apparently level, it really slopes downwards to the sea from an altitude of about 1,200 ft. at the base of the hills. Advantage is being taken of this slope for the water supply; at the points where the rivers emerge from the mountain gorges, water is stopped and directed into little channels which form a network over the plain. These are at present used for watering stock, but it is intended to utilize them also for irrigation purposes. The rivers frequently swell after the mountain storms, and often change their course; hence the beds, both present and disused, are enormous, and the railway bridges of great length. The land, once clothed only with tussock and an occasional cabbage-tree, is now nearly all cultivated; and in some places local Boards and private persons have made large plantations

of gums and other trees; it is only the river beds that can give the traveller an idea of what the plain was like when settlement commenced. The streams have all been stocked with trout.

The line runs along the plain as far as Oamaru. Travellers should choose seats on the rt. side, for the view of the mountains. On leaving Oamaru, the train goes in the reverse direction; but seats should not be changed, as the best views then are on the l.

2 m. **Addington Junction.**

Here a line branches off to *Culverden*. See Rte. 21.

6 m. **Hornby Junction.**

Here a line branches off to *Lincoln*, *Little River* (see Rte. 22), and *Southbridge*.

14 m. **Rolleston Junction.**

Here a line branches off to *Springfield* (see Rte. 20) and *Whitecliffs*.

After this the views of the mountains become finer.

The *Selwyn River* is crossed just before reaching

23 m. **Selwyn. Mt. Torlesse** (6,500 ft.) and the Gorge of the *Waimakariri* (see Rte. 20) are seen.

31 m. **Bankside.** Just after leaving this, the line crosses the old bed of the *Rakata*; and soon after, the present river is crossed by a bridge $1\frac{1}{2}$ m. long.

36 m. **Rakaia.** Here a line branches off to *Methven*. *Mt. Hutt* (7,200 ft.) is seen at the Gorge of the *Rakaia*.

44 m. **Chertsey.** The altitude of this place (378 ft.) is the highest attained during the whole journey.

47 m. **Dromore.** On very clear days the summit of *Mt. Cook* can be seen.

53 m. **Ashburton.**

Hotels: *Central; Ashburton;* and others.

Churches: *Ang.; Pres.; R. C.; West.; Meth.*

Pop.: 1,800.

A rising county town possessing woollen and other factories.

Here a line branches off to *Springburn* (30 m.).

Immediately after leaving *Ashburton*, the *Ashburton R.* is crossed. The *Mt. Somers Range* (5,511 ft.) is seen.

55 m. **Tinwald.** About this point will be noticed the break in the mountain range out of which the *Rangitata R.* takes its rise. This is the district which was named '*Mesopotamia*' by Mr. Butler, the author of '*Erewhon*' and '*Fair Haven*.'

59 m. **Winslow.** Not far from the line on the l. is *Longbeach*, one of the finest agricultural properties in N. Z.

The *Hinds River* is crossed just before reaching

64 m. **Hinds.**

72 m. **Ealing.** Here the line descends through a deep cutting to the *Rangitata R.*, which is crossed by two long bridges. Travellers have a good opportunity here for seeing the geological formation and the primaeval condition of the plains.

75 m. **Rangitata.** From here a coach goes to *Peel Forest*, 13 m.

There are several pleasant country seats in the neighbourhood.

In the range will be seen *Mt. Peel*.

81 m. **Orari.** From here a coach goes to *Geraldine*, 5 m.

The line then enters a rich agricultural district and crosses the *Orari R.*

85 m. **Winchester.**

Hotel: *Walseley Arms* (comfortable).

This is a good place for fishermen to stop and make their headquarters: both for the fly-fishing and for the live bait fishing at the mouth of the *Rangitata*.

89 m. **Temuka.**

Hotels: *Crown;* and others.

Churches: *Ang.; Pres.; R. C.; West.*

A small town possessing a cheese factory, a paper mill, and other industries.

Close to the township is the native settlement of *Arouhenua*, on the river of the same name.

100 m. **TIMARU.**

Hotels: *Grosvenor; Queen's;* and others.

Churches: *Ang.; Pres.; R. C.; West.; Meth.*

Club: *Timaru* (non-residential).

Public Reading Room (free) and library (6s. 6d. a quarter) at the *Mechanic's Institute*, North Street.

Pop.: including suburbs, 5,500.

The name is a corruption of a Maori word meaning 'The resting-place.' It is now a good-sized town, the county town of *Geraldine*, containing refrigerating works, woollen and flour mills, wool scouring and tannery works, and other industries. Assizes are held here quarterly.

PRINCIPAL BUILDINGS AND OBJECTS OF INTEREST.

The traveller on leaving the Rly. Sta. should walk along *George Street*, and then turn to the rt. at the first intersection of roads, and proceed up *Stafford Street*; then taking the first turn to the l. up *Strathalan Street*, he will soon see on the l. an obelisk erected to the memory of those who perished at the wreck of the *Ben Venue*, in 1882, many of whom lost their own lives in the gallant

attempt to save others. Just behind this, further to the l., is a large building containing the *Post, Telegraph, and Government Offices*. In front is the *Ang. Ch. of St. Mary**, which is built of blue stone relieved with Oamaru stone, in the E. E. style, with nave and aisles. The interior is well worthy of inspection; the pillars are of Peterhead granite with carved capitals of Oamaru stone; the roof is of kauri timber. The chancel, tower and spire are unfinished.

Proceeding further up *Strathalan Street*, which bends to the rt., and becomes *Church Street*, the traveller takes the second turn to the l., along *Theodosia Street*. A little to the rt. is seen the *Public School*, a fine stone building in a large open space. Crossing *North Street*, and proceeding along the *Town Belt*, the *Monastery of the Immaculate Heart*, with a school for boys adjoining, and a small public pleasure garden are seen on the l.: the *R. C. Ch. of the Sacred Heart* (a pretty wooden building) and the *Convent** and school (an imposing edifice, well situated in a garden) to the rt. Just beyond the convent, a road to the rt. leads to the *Boys' and Girls' High School*. Proceeding along the *Town Belt*, the traveller soon reaches the **Park**, a reserve of about 40 acres, tastefully laid out with belts of trees, walks and flowers. Entering this, and turning to the l., the traveller emerges by a small gate near the sea, on the high road. Then turning to the l., the *Hospital* (a cheerful looking and well-situated building, with a pleasant garden) is seen on the l. Further on, the road becomes *Stafford Street*, and the traveller soon finds himself close to the *Rly. Sta.* again.

The **Harbour** is enclosed on the S.E. side by a concrete *Breakwater* which was commenced in 1878; it is 30 ft. wide at the top, and 2,278 ft. in length, exclusive of 150 ft. approach. On the N.W. side the

harbour is enclosed by a rubble wall 2,400 ft. in length. The space enclosed is 50 acres; vessels drawing 20 ft. of water are discharged and loaded with facility. The expenditure on the breakwater, wall and wharves has amounted to £280,000. The annual exports, which include wool, grain, frozen mutton, and other things, amount to nearly 90,000 tons.

To the north of the Harbour is *Caroline Bay*, a favourite bathing-place. Bathing-machines, both for ladies and gentlemen, are always ready.

A beautiful drive may be taken over the Downs at the back of the town. The soil, which is of volcanic formation, is rich and highly cultivated; there are several large and valuable estates in the neighbourhood.

From Timaru a line branches off to Fairlie Creek (see Rte. 24).

After leaving Timaru the line skirts the shore. The mountain views cease, but on the rt. may be seen some of the best agricultural land in Canterbury. The *Paraora R.* is crossed just before reaching

110 m. **St. Andrews.** Several smaller rivers are also crossed in this district.

124 m. **Studholme Junction.**

[Here a line branches off to Waihao Downs, 13 m.

2 m. **Waimate.** The line then runs through the Waihao Gorge to

13 m. **Waihao Downs.** A rich agricultural district.]

138 m. **Waitaki North.**

Soon after leaving the station the *Waitaki R.*, which divides Canterbury from Otago, is crossed. It is in fact the Tweed of N. Z., dividing the English from the Scotch settlement.

One of the peculiarities of the Southern Maori dialect is substituting *k* for *ng*. Hence Waitaki is the same

as Waitangi, and means 'weeping water.'

139 m. **Waitaki South.**

147 m. *Pukeuri Junction.*

Here a line branches off to Kurow and Hakateramea, 43 m. See Rte. 24.

The *Oamaru High School* is seen on the l. just before reaching

152 m. **OAMARU.**

Hotels: *Star and Garter; Queen's; Globe;* and others.

Club: *Oamaru,* in rooms adjoining the *Star and Garter Hotel.*

Churches: *Ang.; Pres.; R. C.; West.*

Pop.: 5,500.

The name, like Timaru, is a corruption of a Maori word meaning 'Resting-place,' or 'Shelter.'

Oamaru is the county town of the Waitaki county, which embraces 1,700,000 acres. Assizes are held here quarterly.

The town is celebrated for its white stone, of which there are large quarries in the vicinity. It is an oolitic limestone, containing a very high proportion of pure lime. It has a high value as a building stone, as it is, when newly quarried, readily worked by sawing; on exposure to the air it hardens. Several large buildings in Australian cities have been built of it. It is also easily turned in a lathe into columns, and is capable of being worked into mouldings and ornamentation.

Oamaru is the seaport of about 200,000 acres of deep limestone soil, the product of this stone; this commonly yields forty bushels of wheat to the acre, and enormous crops of potatoes.

OBJECTS OF INTEREST.

Travellers will be struck with the general appearance of the town, all built of white stone. Close to the Rly. Sta. is the *HARBOUR*, which is protected by a concrete sea wall, 1,850 ft. long, 34 ft. high and the

same wide, and a rubble mole 1,730 ft. long. The harbour contains 60 acres, with a depth of 24 ft. 6 in. of water alongside the *Sumpter Wharf*; vessels of upwards of 5,000 tons load here, and take away cargoes of wool, grain, and frozen meat. The Harbour Works have cost about £300,000.

At the back of the town, a space has been reserved for the **Botanical Garden**; under energetic management this has made great progress, the soil being suitable for flowers and shrubs brought from widely different countries. The stream which flows through the garden is stocked with perch and trout. The *fish nursery*, which is under the care of the *Waitaki Acclimatization Society*, is situated in the gardens. Many of the neighbouring rivers have been stocked from it; the fishing in the district is excellent.

The town also contains a *woollen mill, refrigerating works,* and several very large *flour mills.*

At the *Athenaeum* is a good library and reading room; also a small museum. Admission to reading room free; books may be taken out of the library on payment of £1 is. a quarter.

[EXCURSIONS.]

(1) To **Ngapara.** A pleasant excursion for tourists who take an interest in agricultural pursuits may be made by driving or rail to Ngapara, 17½ m. Driving is preferable, as the places to see are on the way.

2 m. *Waireka Junction.* Here the main line is left, and the line proceeds up the *Waireka Valley* in the centre of the *Oamaru District.*

4 m. **Weston.**

5 m. **Cormack's.** This station is built over a large deposit of diatomaceous earth, which is obtainable in vast quantities both here and in other localities in the neighbourhood. This earth contains at least 283 forms of fossil microscopic dia-

tomaceae, of which 107 are new to science; the previously known forms however comprise species heretofore found in such widely different localities as Japan, Hong Kong, Fiji, Bombay, and Barbadoes.

This earth is now largely sold to students of the microscope; and will probably ultimately find its way into commercial channels as a polishing powder and in the manufacture of porcelain.

10 m. **Elderslie.** Near this is *Elderslie*, the beautiful country seat of Mr. John Reid, and *Windsor Park*, the seat of Mr. E. Menlove. On these, as on other estates in the neighbourhood, agriculture and stock raising are carried to a high pitch.

13 m. *Windsor Junction.*

[From this a branch line goes to Tokaraki, 12 m., near which is the seat of Messrs. McMaster.

About 5 m. beyond Tokaraki is the Livingstone gold field, where large sluicing operations have been carried on for many years.]

14 m. **Corriedale.** Near this is *Corriedale*, the seat of the Hon. R. Oliver.

17½ m. **Ngapara.**

Hotels: *Railway; Terminus.*

A small township at the head of the valley, surrounding which at its original level is the 'Tables' country, remarkable for its fertility.

Brown coal is obtained in the immediate vicinity.

(2) To Kurow and Omarama. See Rte. 24.]

The line then passes through an undulating and varied country.

158 m. **Totara.** The station is on the magnificent estate of the N. Z. and Australian Land Company, who possess several properties in this Island, on which the highest class of farming is conducted.

160 m. *Teschmaker's.* The line passes through a cutting in the

stone, and *Teschmaker's quarry* may be seen.

161 m. **Maheno.**

166 m. **Herbert.**

174 m. **Hampden.**

177 m. **Hillgrove.** Near this is **Moeraki**, a growing watering-place for residents at Dunedin and Oamaru. It is on the Moeraki peninsula; in its immediate vicinity is a Maori village containing a considerable native population, which migrated here from Kaiapoi after the siege by Te Rauparaha (see Rte. 21). Those who are interested in geology should not fail to notice the huge spherical boulders lying on the shore near Moeraki.

184 m. *Shag Point.* Here a small line branches off to the l., to the *Shag Point Coal mine*, 2 m. A similar line is seen further on, leading to the *Allandale pit*.

189 m. **Palmerston.**

Hotels: *Empire; Palmerston; and others.*

Churches: *Ang.; Pres.; R. C.; West.*

Pop.: 900.

The peaked hill of *Puketapu* is seen on the l.

From Palmerston a line branches off to *Dunbach*, 10 m.

Coaches run from Palmerston to Naseby, 54 m.; one line via Waihemo and the other via Macrae's Flat. At Naseby the line joins the main coach line from Middlemarch to Clyde and Central Otago.

199 m. **Waikouaiti** (also known as *Hawkesbury*).

Hotels: *Golden Fleece; Railway.*

Churches: *Ang.; Pres.; R. C.; West.*

Pop.: 700.

After this, the rest of the journey is very pretty.

The line skirts the ocean, sometimes descending almost to the sea level, sometimes rising up the face of the cliff, with views down valleys covered with groves of broadleaf,

fuchsia, and manuka, and across picturesque bays and inlets.

Soon after leaving Waikouaiti, the river of that name is crossed. At the mouth of this was the great whaling station so often referred to in old books on N. Z.

204 m. **Puketeraki.** A small native settlement with a little Ch. is seen on the l. Some good land in this district is owned by natives and half-castes.

A short tunnel is then passed through.

206 m. *Sea cliff.* The lunatic asylum for Otago (a fine Scotch-looking building, with accommodation for 500 patients) is seen on the rt.

The line then descends to

213 m. **Waitati.**

Hotel: *Saratoga.*

A small township at the head of the shallow Blueskin Bay, a favourite resort for excursionists from Dunedin. From here a good coach road goes to Dunedin, 12 m. (see Rte. 25).

The line then ascends rapidly, through beautiful coast scenery. Looking backwards towards the W. the serrated line of the *Silver peaks* is seen. The line passes round the face of the *Purakanui Cliff*. A tunnel (333 yds.) is passed through; it was constructed to avoid the danger of material falling from the face of the cliff. The old line is seen to the l.

This place is associated with a terrible incident in Maori history.

A chief, named Taonga, came from his home near Oamaru, with a train of attendants, to visit his relative, the chief Te Wera, at Purakanui. Taonga having given offence to Te Wera, he replied by murdering a woman of Taonga's party, and then embarked in his canoe with a number of his tribe and made his way to Oamaru. There he landed, and falling suddenly on Taonga's tribe, slaughtered several and returned in triumph to Purakanui. Taonga retired to his home, resolved on vengeance. He returned with a large force, determined to wipe out the

insult. Te Wera's pa, which was named Mapoutahi, was situated on a small peninsula in Purakanui Bay, and strongly fortified. For a long time it was besieged in vain; but one snowy winter's night Taonga and his followers, finding the pa insufficiently guarded, managed to scale the palisade, and thus gain the interior of the fortress. Te Wera's party, surprised in their sleep, fell an easy prey; and all were slain, except a few who leaped into the sea and escaped. The morning light showed the dead lying in heaps in all directions; hence Taonga called the name of the place Purakanui (that is, great heaps). The date of the battle, as in all events of Maori history, is uncertain; it probably took place in the first half of the eighteenth century.

218 m. **Purakanui.**

The line then passes through three tunnels, of which one is nearly a mile long; and reaches

222 m. **Port Chalmers Upper** (so called to distinguish it from the lower station, 80 ft. below).

Hotels: *Provincial; Marine; and others.*

Churches: *Ang.; Pres.; R.C.; West.; Cong.; and others.*

Pop.: 2,500.

A busy town, the port of Dunedin, named after the eminent Scotch divine. It is situated on a promontory in Otago Harbour, once the site of a Native settlement named Kupu-tai, at which the Deed was signed by which Otago was purchased by the N. Z. Company. It possesses a fine graving dock. The town has not advanced as rapidly as might have been expected, as the extensive dredging in the harbour now enables ships drawing 19 ft. to pass it by and go up to Dunedin.

The line now skirts the harbour, passing by various seaside resorts and villas.

223 m. **Sawyer's Bay.** A large tannery may be seen close to the Rly.

226 m. **Burke's.**

230 m. **DUNEDIN.** See Rte. 25.

ROUTE 24.

CHRISTCHURCH TO THE HERMITAGE (MT. COOK) BY TIMARU,
TEKAPO AND PUKAKI; RETURNING BY PUKAKI,
OMARAMA, AND KUROW TO OAMARU.

The **Mount Cook Excursion** is one of marvellous beauty, affording to practised mountaineers opportunities for climbing that cannot fail to satisfy the most enthusiastic, and to less adventurous travellers facilities for rambling over glaciers larger than any in Switzerland and seeing all the wonders of Alpine scenery. It is true that the N.Z. mountains have no historical associations, nor do the valleys contain the quaint chalets and picturesque villages which add such a beauty to European scenery; and yet this Switzerland of the South has a charm all its own. A few years ago it was so inaccessible that weary days or even weeks had to be spent in travelling to the base of the mountains that were to be ascended; now roads and bridges have been constructed, tracks cut and huts built which make the journey simple and rapid. On the other hand nothing is as yet hackneyed; there are innumerable peaks still untrodden, and views which the eye of man has never seen.

In the vicinity of Mt. Cook, within easy distance of the Hermitage, glacier-action can be studied in all its varied and most interesting forms.

Large as the glacier system is at the present day, it is remarkably small as compared with the vast extent of the glaciers which filled the valleys and descended far down the plains in the Pleistocene period. The ancient moraines and well-defined *roches moutonnées*, met with far beyond the termination of the present evidences of glaciation, are unmistakable signs of the older

ice-fields, which existed when the great mountain peaks were much higher than now.

The greatest accumulation of ice and snow lies at the head of the *Tasman* and *Murchison* glaciers, on the eastern side of the main range of the Alps. The *Mueller*, the *Hooker*, and the *Godley* glaciers on the same side are likewise of large extent; while on the western side of the Mt. Cook Range there are other glaciers of large size, one of which, the *Franz Josef* glacier, descends to within about 600 ft. of the sea, and has beautiful tree-ferns, and a vegetation which appears almost semi-tropic, growing within a few yards of its terminal face.

One peculiar feature of the Southern Alps is the comparatively small number of sub-Alpine passes over the mountain range. The principal passes are—the *Haast Pass*, leading from Lake Wanaka to the W. coast (see Rte. 29), the *Hurunui Pass*, dividing the sources of the river of that name; and the *Teremakau* and *Arthur's Pass* (see Rte. 20). Other passes are, however, being discovered by surveyors and explorers.

According to Mr. E. Dobson, the absence of passes is to be accounted for by the very peculiar structure of the central chain. He says the first point to be noticed in regard to the central chain is that it does not, as is popularly supposed, present an unbroken line of watershed, but rather a series of peaks and broken ridges, separated from each other by deep ravines, and for the most part perfectly inaccessible. The clue to this system of ravines and ridges is to be found in the fact that the Palaeozoic rocks forming the main range have been at a very early period subjected to extensive pressure, the effect of which has been to crumble them up into huge folds, the upper portions of which have

been removed, leaving the remaining portions of the strata standing up on edge, either in a vertical position, or at very steep inclinations.

The strike of the beds, corresponding with the directions of the axis of the foldings, is tolerably regular, being generally about N. 28° E. (true), thus differing from the general direction of the dividing range by 33°. At the same time it is important to observe that the rule which has been found to prevail in other mountain-chains of a similar formation appears also to hold good in the central chain—viz., that the greatest amount of denudation has taken place along the original ridges, which are now occupied by valleys, whilst the existing peaks are on the sites of former depressions.

The next feature to be noticed is the jointed structure of the rocks. Although the joints cross each other in all directions, apparently without order, there are two prevailing systems of joints, which have an important influence on the configuration of the surface. These are: First, a system of vertical cross-joints at right angles to the stratification, and running in unbroken lines for great distances, with such regularity that they might easily be mistaken for planes of stratification, were it not for the frequent occurrence of beds of trap-rock, the outcrop of which marks unmistakably the true bedding; secondly, a system of joints, more or less inclined to the horizon, not running in parallel planes, but arranged in a series of curves radiating from a common centre.

The effect of this system of jointing, combined with the strike of the beds or the direction of the axis of folding, is to produce two distinct systems of valleys in the central chain, the direction of which is very remarkable. The one radiates from a common centre, situated about 50 m. N. of *Mt. Darien*, in the sea, near *Cliffy Head*. This system includes all the principal valleys from the *Tere-makau* on the N. to the *Makarora* on the S., their direction varying from N. 82° E. to S. 30° W., giving the idea that the country has been starred, just as a mirror is starred by a violent blow, or, as in rock-blasting, a set of radiating fissures is sometimes produced by a single shot. To the other system belong the valleys of rivers and watercourses, running either on the strike of the beds, or in the direction of the cross-

joints, or in a compound zigzag course, following alternately these two directions like a line struck diagonally across a chess-board, but following the sides of the squares, and giving to the cliffs which bound these valleys a peculiar rectangular appearance resembling ruined masonry on a gigantic scale.

According to Sir Julius von Haast, the western slope and part of the central chain consists of crystalline rocks and metamorphic schists, highly auriferous, and resting on a basis of granite, that presents itself here and there to the view in the rugged bluffs and declivities on the W. coast. To the eastward of the crystalline zone stratified sedimentary rocks appear, such as slates, sandstones, conglomerates, indurated shales interstratified with trapezoidal rocks of a dioritic or diabasic nature. These compose by far the greater part of the eastern side of the central chain, exhibiting everywhere huge foldings. This extensive formation of sandstones and slates in some places is overlaid unconformably by a carbonaceous system.

The extensive development of limestones, such as are peculiar to the European Alps, is totally lacking, and it is easily seen that only the eastern half of a complete mountain system has been preserved, while the western half is buried in the depth of the main. The eastern foot of the mountains is formed by tertiary and alluvial deposits, broken through by volcanic rocks. The period of volcanic energy was one of upheaval; and since it closed we see no evidence of there having been submergence of the island on the E. side, whilst on the W. coast the evidence derived from the mountains rising directly from the sea, and penetrated by floods, indicates rather a gradual submergence.

At *Mt. Cook* the botanist has a splendid field before him. The Alpine and sub-Alpine flora is of the most beautiful and diversified character, and to the traveller making his first visit from the northern hemisphere it will also have the charm of novelty. Among the shrubs there is considerable variety, and many of the bushes are during the autumn laden with prettily-coloured berries; among these the *totara*, with a sweetly-flavoured edible crimson berry, and the *Coprosma*, with berries of various colours, being most noticeable. *Discaria toumatou*, a thorny

shrub, known among the settlers as the 'wild Irishman,' is also prominent, and occasionally, in one's twilight wanderings on the hillsides, painfully obtrusive, as is also its neighbour, the 'Spaniard,' or bayonet-grass—*Actiphylla colensoi*. There is quite a bewildering variety of *veronicas*, *olearias*, *senecios*; and the *cassinia* and *panax* family are also represented. Among the larger trees, a variety of beech (*Fagus cliffortioides*) and the white blossomed ribbon wood (*Plagianthus lyalli*) are most prominent. The pretty green foliage of the broadleaf is also conspicuous, while among the *Coniferae* may be mentioned *Phyllocladus alpinus*, *Podocarpus nivalis*, and *Dacrydium colensoi*. But it is probably among the herbaceous plants that the botanist will delight most to linger. Four or five kinds of *ranunculus* are to be met with, and among them, growing in great profusion at every turn, is the *Ranunculus lyalli*, the king of the *Ranunculaceae*. *Celmisias* also abound, from the tiny thin-leaved kind to the larger varieties, with their beautiful flowers and broad silvery leaves. Three or four varieties of gentians are found on the plains and in the valleys. Near the rivulets are masses of Evening Primrose (*epilobium*). Forget-me-not (*myosotis*) and eye-bright (*euphrasia*). Violets are found in all directions. *Edelweiss* grows luxuriantly, at an elevation of about 3,000 ft. above sea level.

The peculiar characteristic of the Alpine flowers of N. Z. is that nearly all are white.

Of course on the mountains travellers may gather flowers and dig up plants at pleasure, but in the immediate neighbourhood of the Hermitage great care is being taken to preserve the native plants and to propagate those introduced from other countries. It is earnestly hoped that travellers will co-operate in this good work, instead of destroying the beauties of nature for their own selfish amusement.

Amongst the birds most frequently met with are the wingless *wakas* and the *keas* (see p. [45]). *Kakas*, wood pigeons, tuis, bellbirds, wrens, and other varieties are also seen. *Paradise ducks* and *blue ducks* are found in the streams.

All travellers must stay at the **Hermitage**; an hotel which, if not affording the elaborate luxuries of

those at Interlachen and Pontresina, will supply all the comfort a tourist can require. Although it is but 2,500 ft. above the sea, the air there much resembles that of the Engadine.

In order to reach the Hermitage, Pukaki must be passed. Pukaki may be reached (1) from Lake Wakarua by Omarama, see Rte. 28; (2) from Oamaru by Kurow and Omarama, see below; (3) from Timaru by Fairlie and Tekapo. This last is the favourite route. Travellers are recommended to come this way and leave by one of the others. Those who wish to leave by the Kurow route, should send their heavy luggage from Timaru to Oamaru; those who intend returning by the way they came, should leave it at Fairlie; as only light baggage is carried on the coach.

Some tourists who are pressed for time remain but one day at the Hermitage and return by the next coach. This course is not recommended, as the coach journey is long and tiring. It is better not to attempt the trip unless at least three days can be spent at the Hermitage; and of course a longer time is desirable, if possible. The best time of year is from December to February; the flowers are at their full beauty in early summer.

All travellers should, before leaving Christchurch, provide themselves with strong warm clothing, and a light suit for hot days; stout boots with nails in them; great coats and waterproofs; tinted spectacles; cold cream; a few cakes of chocolate; and some of the books on the district (see p. [64]) for amusement on wet days. Those who intend to do any climbing should also take Whympers tents, ice axes, Alpine rope, a light portable cooking lamp, sleeping bags lined with felt or blanketing, Alpine boots, veils, warm gloves, and a good supply of tinned meat and tea. Ladies should bring strong dresses with shortskirts; the gymnasium costume is the best of all. Messrs. Plaisted

and Son, of Christchurch, are the outfitters recommended by the N. Z. Alpine Club.

CHRISTCHURCH TO TIMARU. 100 m. Rly. See Rte. 23.

TIMARU TO FAIRLIE. 39 m. Rly.

The line ascends the whole way, Fairlie being 1,000 ft. above the sea.

4 m. Washdyke. Here the main line is left.

7 m. Levels. So called from the splendid estate of the N. Z. and Australian Land Co., which is here passed through.

13 m. Pleasant Point.

Hotels: *Point; Royal.*

Churches: *Ang.; Pres.*

Pop.: 500.

A busy little country town.

22 m. Cave. So named from some caves in the neighbourhood, in which

a number of Maori relics have been found.

29 m. Albury. Here the line crosses the *Tengawai R.*, and proceeds through the downs.

39 m. Fairlie.

Hotels: *Gladstone; Fairlie Creek.*

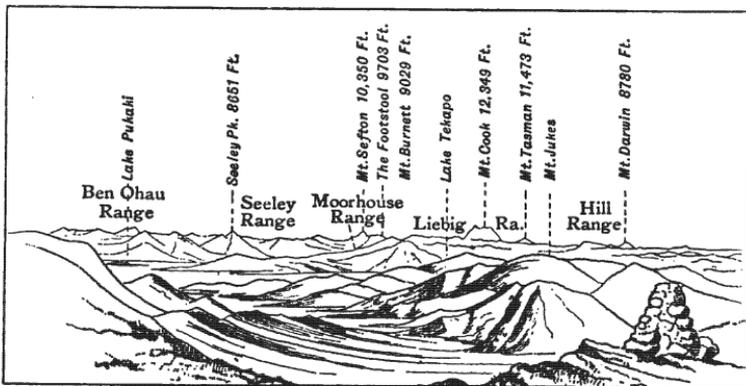
Churches: *Ang.; R. C.*

Pop.: 200.

The terminus of the Railway.

Here the traveller stops for the night.

FAIRLIE TO THE HERMITAGE. 90 m. coach. The road is in part very rough, but is being improved and shortened each year. The journey takes one day. A special coach (which will take two days on the journey) can be arranged for by telegraphing previously to the Mt. Cook Coaching Co., Fairlie; the charges vary, but are always high.



PANORAMA OF THE MOUNTAINS FROM BURKE'S PASS.

The road winds through tussock-covered hills, up the valley of the *Opahi R.*, ascending rapidly.

12 m. Burke's Pass Hotel.

14 m. the summit of *Burke's Pass* (2,500 ft.). This must have been one of the overflows of the gigantic

[*New Zealand.*]

glacier which at one time filled what is now the *Mackenzie Plain*. From here there is an extensive view over the plain, with the *Ben Ohau* range in the distance.

The road then descends slightly, and takes a sharp bend to the rt. A road to the l. leads by the *Gram-*

pians and the *Heketeramea Pass* to *Kurou*.

18 m. *Edward's Creek* is crossed. From this point the first view of the summit of *Mt. Cook* may be obtained, appearing above the nearer ranges.

24 m. **Lake Tekapo.** It is beautifully situated, amidst grand mountains, but somewhat treeless. It is 15 m. in length, with an average width of 3 m. Altitude, 2,437 ft. The water, coming from glaciers, is of an opal tint.

The road crosses the *Tekapo R.* by a bridge, and reaches the *Tekapo Hotel*.

Persons wishing to stay here will find trout fishing in the lake. *Mt. John*, a lonely hill, may be easily ascended; from the summit the view is fine, and *Mt. Cook* may be seen. An excursion may be made to *Lake Alexandrina*, a pretty little lake within an easy drive.

In this neighbourhood are seen several erratic rocks, brought down by the old glaciers.

30 m. Here a road branches off to the rt. to *Braemar Sta.*, and goes on thence across the *Tasman R.* to *Mt. Cook*. This is much the shortest way to the *Hermitage*; but unfortunately the *Tasman R.* is frequently uncrossable during summer.

The road then crosses the *Forks R.*, passes *Balmoral Sta.*, and descends to *Irishman Creek*, where one of the first views of *Mt. Cook* is obtained.

The traveller will realize how fitting was its old Maori name, *Aorangi* ('The light of day'), so called because it was the first to catch the morning rays, and the last to remain bathed in sunlight when the world beneath was shrouded in the dusk of evening; and will regret that the name was ever changed by the settlers.

The *Maryburn R.* is crossed, and a short rise leads to

46 m. *Simon's Pass.*

The road then winds through old moraine accumulation to

50 m. **Dover's Pass.** The view* of the mountains and of *Lake Pukaki* beneath them is splendid. The road then skirts the shore of the lake, on one of the old terraces.

54 m. **Pukaki Hotel.**

LAKE PUKAKI, which is at an altitude of 1,717 ft., is about 12 m. in length, with an average width of 4 m. The colour is much the same as that of *Tekapo*.

From *Pukaki* an excursion may be made in one day by driving to *Lake Ohau*; a pretty lake of translucent water surrounded by hills and slopes, some of which are wooded down to the water's edge.

Just after leaving the hotel, the *Pukaki R.* is crossed by a ferry. The road to *Omarama* then branches off to the l. The road then leaves the lake, and passes *Ben Ohau* and *Rhoborough Downs* stations on the l., then returns to the lake, and skirts it for some distance.

65 m. At the head of the lake near the old station of the *Glen Tanner Run* the whole valley of the *Tasman* comes in sight. The road then, on passing over a series of low downs to avoid the swamps of the *Tasman*, commands magnificent views of the mountains.

76 m. From the present *Glen Tanner Homestead* the first glimpse of the GREAT TASMAN GLACIER is obtained; but the best view of it is (82 m.) at the top of a rise where the river is seen flowing from beneath it, and the *Ball* and *Hochstetter* glaciers rising above.

84 m. *Birch Hill Station.*

After some distance the valley of the *Hooker* opens out to the l. of the spur of *Mt. Cook*. The *Hermitage* appears in sight.

88 m. An enormous bluff of rock called *Sebastopol* is rounded, and *MT. SEFTON** appears in view; and soon after, *Mt. Cook* is again seen.

The road now enters the valley of the *Hooker*.

90 m. The Hermitage.

Charges: 14s. a day for a stay of less than three days; 12s. a day for a stay of less than a week; £3 10s. per week. *Horses*, 10s. a day. *Guides*, 10s. a day for short excursions, £1 a day for more difficult ones. John Adamson can be recommended as a competent and trustworthy guide.

All travellers are recommended on arrival at the Hermitage to consult the manager, Mr. F. F. C. Huddleston, as to the best way to dispose of their time. It must be remembered that the number of possible excursions is unlimited, and those to be selected must depend on the strength and taste of the traveller, and on the state of the weather; and moreover, the constant changes caused by the movements of the glaciers make the excursions vary from year to year. Amongst favourite excursions, the following may be specially mentioned:—

(1) To View Point, White Horse Hill. An easy climb of half an hour up a good track. From the summit a fine view* is obtained over the Mueller and Hooker Glaciers, with Mt. Cook in the distance, and the Moorhouse Range to the l. Avalanches may frequently be seen and heard thundering down from Mt. Sefton. The European will notice one peculiarity of N. Z. glaciers—the immense mass of moraine débris. This is caused by the very friable nature of the rock, which is composed of sandstone and slate. The central part of the glaciers moves at the rate of about 1 ft. a day.

(2) To Governor's Bush and Harper Creek. A walk of 1½ m. down the valley leads to the spot where Harper Creek emerges from the hills to the W. A scramble up the Creek is rough, but pleasant; many good spots for picnics may be found.

(3) To Kea Point and the

Mueller Glacier. A well-defined track of 2 m. leads N. to Kea Point, just above the Mueller Glacier, and 1½ m. from the base of Mt. Sefton. The traveller can extend his walk by going over the glacier to the base of the mountain, as far as the waterfall and the *Countess Glacier*. This walk takes about six hours in all; and it may be further extended by returning over the *Seeley Range*—an excursion of about eight hours in all.

(4) To the Mueller and Hooker Glaciers. The traveller proceeds, as in Excursion (3), to Kea Point; then crosses the Mueller Glacier to the base of the *Stocking Glacier*, and returns by the lower end of the Hooker Glacier, crossing the *Hooker R.* by the suspension bridge.

(5) Up the Hooker Valley. Crossing the suspension bridge above mentioned, the traveller skirts the terminal face of the Mueller Glacier, where wonderful changes are continually taking place; and then goes round a steep bluff into the Upper Hooker Valley; then along the lateral moraine of the Hooker Glacier to a little valley at the base of Mt. Mabel and Mt. Rosa, overlooking the white ice and crevasses of the Hooker Glacier. To the N. is seen a magnificent view of the *Hooker Ice Fall*, Mt. Stokes, and Mt. Cook; to the W. the full expanse of the Moorhouse range with its hanging glaciers. Just beyond Mt. Mabel is a lofty pass which connects the Hooker with the Ball and Tasman Glaciers. All up the valley the flowers are very beautiful, continually changing as higher altitudes are reached. The track all the way is good.

(6) To the Tasman Glacier**. A delightful excursion of two or three days, either on horseback or on foot. It was once an expedition of much difficulty, but is now easy, even for ladies.

Proceeding down the lower *Hooker Valley* to the junction of the *Tasman*, a wire rope and cradle are seen whereby the *Hooker R.* is crossed. The track then leads up the *Valley of the Tasman* for 4 m., when the terminal face of the *Tasman Glacier* is reached, and the lovely little *Blus Lake*, nestling between the old moraine and the slope of the mountain, is passed on the l. Proceeding up the valley with the glacier on the rt. for about 6 m., the traveller reaches the *Ball Glacier* which, coming in from Mt. Cook, forms a little grass plateau, on which the Government have erected a two-roomed hut for the convenience of tourists. Here a halt is made for the night. Mr. Huddleston, under whose care the hut has been placed, keeps there a good store of blankets and other comforts. The traveller may either make his excursion over the white ice of the *Tasman* the afternoon of his arrival at the hut, and then return to the *Hermitage* the following morning; or may rest for the evening and visit the white ice the following morning. If he wishes to proceed far up the glacier, he had better devote an entire day to it, and sleep a second night at the hut. If a good climber, he may ascend the *Ball Pass* and return by the *Fairbanks Glacier* and the *Hooker Valley*.

The view of the *Tasman* and adjoining glaciers, surrounded by a panorama of ice-clad mountains, cannot be surpassed by anything in Switzerland, and must be seen to be realized. The *Tasman Glacier* is 18 m. in length by about $1\frac{1}{2}$ in breadth, and contains nearly 14,000 acres of ice.

Mountain Ascents. The greatest of these is *Mt. Cook*, which was first accomplished by the Rev. W. S. Green, accompanied by two Swiss guides, in 1882. None but the most experienced mountaineers should venture to attempt it. Amongst less lofty peaks which

have been ascended may be mentioned the *Hochstetter Dome*, *Mt. de la Beche*, *Mt. Wakefield*, *Mt. Huddleston*, *Mt. Rosa* and *Mt. Mabel*; but with few exceptions the whole range of mountain peaks have still to be conquered.

From the *Hermitage* the traveller retraces his steps as far as *Pukaki*. From that to *Kurow* the road is good.

PUKAKI TO OMARAMA. 24 m. coach.

The road, after crossing the ferry, proceeds along the open plain.

9 m. The *Ohau R.*, which divides *Canterbury* from *Otago*, is crossed by a bridge.

Ben More is seen on the l., and the *Ben More* run is passed through, close to the junction of the road to *Lake Ohau*.

23 m. The *Ahuriri R.* is forded.

24 m. **Omarama. Hotel.**

OMARAMA TO KUROW. 30 m. coach. The road goes down the valley of the *Ahuriri R.*

4 m. A deserted Maori encampment is passed.

8 m. At *Otamata* (**Hotel**) the road leaves the river and ascends to (12 m.) *Ahuriri Pass*: it then goes down the course of a small stream to (18 m.) *Parson's Rock*, where it joins the *Waitaki R.* which divides not only *Otago* from *Canterbury*, but also the old gold-bearing foliated schists from the newer non-auriferous schists and slates of *Canterbury*. On the rt. of the valley may be seen the bluffs of the *Oamaru limestones*.

The road then goes through the *Rugged Ranges Station*.

30 m. **Kurow.**

Hotels: *Delargy's*; *Railway*.

Church: *Ang.*

A small township on the *Waitaki R.*

KUROW TO OAMARU. 41 m. Rly. 8s. 9d., 5s. 10d.; R. 11s. 8d., 7s. 9d.

The line which commences at the township of *Sandhurst*, crosses the *Waitaki R.* by a bridge nearly 1 m. in length before reaching *Kurow*.

The scenery is not striking.

14 m. At *Duntroon* the river is left, and the line sweeps round the foot of the hills to *Oamaru* through the fertile *Papakaio plain*.

18 m. *Borton's*. Near this is the magnificent farm belonging to Mr. John Borton.

20 m. *Black Point*. Here the water-race by which the *Oamaru* water-supply is drawn from the *Waitaki*, is crossed, and at

36 m. *Pukeuri Junction*, the main line from *Christchurch* is joined.

41 m. **OAMARU.** See Rte. 23.

ROUTE 25.

DUNEDIN AND NEIGHBOURHOOD.

DUNEDIN.

Hotels: *Grand**, 12s. a day; *Wains**, 12s. 6d. and 10s. 6d. a day, £3 3s. per week (arrangements made for families); *City*; *Criterion*; *Shamrock*; *Wood's Temperance*; *Silk's Leviathan Temperance* (moderate); *Coffee Palace* (moderate); and others.

Clubs: *Dunedin* (residential); *Otago* (non-residential).

Conveyances: *Cab fares.* By time: Vehicles with one horse, 4s. per hour for first three hours, 3s. for each subsequent hour; half and quarter hours at same proportionate rates. Vehicles with two horses, 5s. per hour for first three hours, 4s. for each subsequent hour; half and quarter hours at same proportionate rates. By distance: Vehicles with one horse, first $\frac{1}{2}$ m., 1s.; first m., 1s. 6d.; every additional $\frac{1}{2}$ m., 9d.; Vehicles with two horses, first $\frac{1}{2}$ m., 1s. 6d.; first m., 2s.; every additional $\frac{1}{2}$ m., 1s. Double fares between 1 p.m. and 8 a.m.

Trams:

(1) From *Cargill's Monument* to the N. boundary of the city at the *Botanical Gardens*, and thence along

the N.E. valley to *Normanby* and *Hawthorne*.

(2) From *Cargill's Monument* by the *Castle Street* route, past the *University*, to the *Botanical Gardens*.

(3) From *Manse Street*, via *St. Kilda* to *Ocean Beach*.

(4) From *Manse Street*, via *St. Kilda* to *Caversham*, with branch to *St. Clair*.

(5) Cable tram from *Grand Hotel* to *Mornington*, thence by *Mornington* extension tram to *Maryhill*.

(6) Cable tram from *Shamrock Hotel*, *Rattray Street*, to *Town Belt* at *Roslyn*, thence by *Roslyn Extension* tram to *Roslyn*.

Horses and *carriages* may be hired at *Bacon's stables*, *Taggart's stables*, or *Power's stables*.

A *ferry* runs frequently from *Rattray Street Jetty* to *Waverley* and *Anderson's Bay*.

A small steamer runs from *Dunedin* to *Portobello* daily.

Boats may be hired at the foot of *Jetty Street* overbridge, at the end of *Jetty Street*, and at the *Cement Works* at the end of *Frederick Street*. Sailing boats: 2s. 6d. per hour; rowing boats: 1s.

HISTORY.

The name Otago has a curious origin. When the Maoris went into battle they painted their faces and bodies with red ochre mixed with sharks' oil. This ochre was ordinarily procured from seams in volcanic cliffs; but a finer variety was obtained from running water which carried oxide of iron in suspension. The gummy fibres of the leaf of the *Phormium tenax* were placed across the stream, and to these the fine particles of ochre adhered. When full, they were burnt; and the fibre and gum being thus destroyed, the ochre, which was left behind, was prepared for use. This highly-prized paint was called Otakou—or, according to the dialect of the Ngaitahu tribe, Otago. A kaik near Taiaroa Head, whence it was obtained, bore the name of Otakou; from this the whalers called the whole harbour Otago; and the name was afterwards extended to the Province.

The history of Otago during Maori times is very obscure. The southern part of the Island from time to time afforded a refuge for various tribes who had been driven from their homes in the N. in the constantly recurring tribal wars; each new wave of immigrants in their turn attacking the former refugees. Thus the population was constantly shifting, and many sites of old fortifications and battlefields are pointed out. The neighbourhood of the present city was occupied by various branches of the Ngati-maoe and Ngaitahu tribes; a large pa once stood at what is now the end of Frederick Street; and Halfway Bush, then known as Taputakinoi, was the scene of a fierce battle. Every hill, valley, and stream had its name; it is to be regretted that in but few instances these have been retained.

During the early part of the present century, several European whalers and other settlers had established themselves at Waikouaiti, Otago Heads, Foveaux Straits, and other spots along the coast, and were living on friendly terms with the natives. No organized attempt at colonization was made, however, until after the foundation of the settlements at Wellington, New Plymouth, and Nelson. The idea of a special Scotch settlement originated with Gibbon Wakefield. Soon after the Disruption of the Established Church of Scotland, a society was formed at

Edinburgh and Glasgow, called the 'Lay Association of the Free Ch. of Scotland for Promoting the Settlement of a Scotch Colony at Otago, N. Z.' Port Cooper (now called Lyttelton Harbour) was first suggested as the site for the New Edinburgh settlement; but as soon as Mr. Tuckett, the chief surveyor at Nelson, had made a careful exploration of the southern coast, the present site was selected: 400,000 acres were purchased by the N. Z. Company from the natives, the name Otago (by which the district near Taiaroa Head had previously been known) was given to the whole settlement, and (at the suggestion of Mr. Chambers, the editor of the *Encyclopaedia*) Dunedin was substituted for New Edinburgh as the designation of the intended city.

In 1847 a public meeting was held at Glasgow, at which it was announced that 144,600 acres had been surveyed and divided into 2,400 properties. Each property consisted of 604 acres; of which $\frac{1}{2}$ acre was to be in the proposed city, 10 acres in the suburbs, and 50 in the country. The price of each was to be £120 10s.; the proceeds of the sale were to be applied as follows:— $\frac{1}{2}$ to the expenses of immigration, $\frac{1}{3}$ to survey and roads, $\frac{1}{3}$ to the N. Z. Company, and $\frac{1}{3}$ to religious and educational purposes. 2,000 properties were open for selection by intending purchasers; 100 were assigned as a Municipal Estate; 100 as a Religious and Educational Endowment; and 200 to the N. Z. Company; each of these bodies paying for their properties at the same rate as private individuals.

On March 23, 1848, the *John Wickliff* arrived at the Heads with Captain Cargill (the official agent) and 90 immigrants; and on April 15, following, the *Philip Latig* arrived with the Rev. Dr. Burns and 236 immigrants.

The chief characteristics of the settlement have thus been from the first its connexion with Scotland and the Free Church; but there has been no spirit of exclusiveness; there has always been a large English element, and all forms of religion have been freely tolerated. The zeal for education which has always marked the Scottish people has borne rich fruit in their adopted land; to which the University, High schools, and elementary schools all bear witness.

By the N. Z. Constitution Act of 1852, Otago was formed into a Province, containing 16,500 sq. m.; Captain Cargill

was elected the first Superintendent; the Provincial Council held its first session in 1853.

In 1861 Southland separated and became a new Province; but the scheme not having been successful, it was re-annexed in 1870. In 1861 gold was discovered at 'Gabriel's Gully,' Tuapeka (see Rta. 27), and an enormous immigration from Australia and elsewhere immediately took place.

In 1876 Provincial Government was abolished here as elsewhere.

The situation of Dunedin is the very antithesis to that of Christchurch. The sloping ground at the head of a lake-like harbour, surrounded by lofty hills, densely clothed with bush down to the water's edge, must have presented more attraction to the eye of an artist than an intending citizen. But the early settlers at once commenced clearing the forest (the dense growth of the present Town Belt will give to the tourist an idea of how severe the labour must have been); and as the town extended, large reclamation works were undertaken. Part of the hill on which the First Church stands was quarried and used as material.

Dunedin became a municipality in 1865. The present city, including the eight suburban boroughs, contains a population of about 47,000.

The harbour is strongly fortified; batteries having been placed at the Ocean Beach and Otago Heads under the direction of Sir William Jervois.

The best time of year for visiting Dunedin is the summer. The Agricultural show, which is held at Tahuna Park on the Ocean Beach, takes place in November. There are many race meetings; the principal one of the year being the 'Cup' meeting, at the end of February. These are the occasions on which Dunedin looks its gayest.

Some time may be pleasantly spent at Dunedin, as there is much to see; and fishermen will find it a good place to make their headquarters, as the fly-fishing in the rivers of Otago and Southland is

splendid. Amongst the most favourite spots within an easy distance of Dunedin are *Clinton* and *Waipahi*, on the line to Invercargill, and the *Waikati R.* on the line to Christchurch.

PUBLIC BUILDINGS, PLACES OF INTEREST, ETC.

The traveller who has only one day at Dunedin should take a walk through the town. Supposing him to start from the Grand or Wain's Hotel, he will see on the opposite side of the street the **Government Buildings**, containing the *Post Office*, *Supreme Court*, &c. Next to these is the *Colonial Bank*, built of Oamaru stone at the cost of £30,000 by the Provincial Government, and designed for a Post Office, but never used for that purpose. It was for some time occupied by the Otago University. The *Custom House* and the *Telegraph Office* are close by. Opposite to the Custom House is the **Monument** erected by the Provincial Government to the memory of Captain Cargill, the first Superintendent of the Province.

Beyond the Monument, on the way to the Rly. Sta., is the *Triangle*, a prettily laid-out public garden, containing a bronze fountain and a marble bust of the late Mr. J. McAndrew, once Superintendent of the Province. The best view of the First Church is from the Triangle.

Proceeding along Prince's Street towards the N., on the rt., in Moray Place, is seen the **First Church**, on a fine situation overlooking the harbour. It is a large building of Oamaru stone in the early Decorated Gothic style, with a well-proportioned spire 175 ft. high. Although it was not commenced until 1872 the name is not inappropriate, as it is the representative of the first church built by the settlers. The *Pulpit*, *font*, and some of the *capitals* were beautifully carved by Godfrey, but unfortunately have been injudiciously coloured.

There is nothing else in the interior of the building to detain a tourist.

Returning to Prince's Street, crossing it, and proceeding up Moray Place, W., the traveller reaches the bottom of View Street, close to the *Synagogue*, and the *Cong. Church*. The *Wesleyan Church* (a handsome building in the Decorated Gothic style) is seen a short distance off.

Mounting the steep ascent of View St., he sees in front of him the **Girls' High School**. This institution was founded by the Provincial Government in 1871; for a time the Boys' and Girls' High Schools occupied one building, but when the present building for the Boys' High School was opened, the whole of the premises previously used were devoted to the Girls' High School. The present number of pupils is about 200.

Close by is the **Convent**, occupied by nuns of the Dominican Order, who have a large boarding school for girls.

Next to the Convent is the R. C. **Cathedral of St. Joseph**, an imposing building in the Gothic 15th century Decorated style. The situation is striking. At present only the nave and western towers are completed; it is intended ultimately to be cruciform, with a central tower and spire. In the interior the *High Altar* and several of the *capitals* of the pillars (by Godfrey) are beautiful; and the *windows* of Munich glass are worthy of inspection. The architect is F. W. Petre.

On the opposite side of the street is the residence of the R. C. Bishop. The diocese was founded in 1869; the first and only Bp. being Dr. Moran.

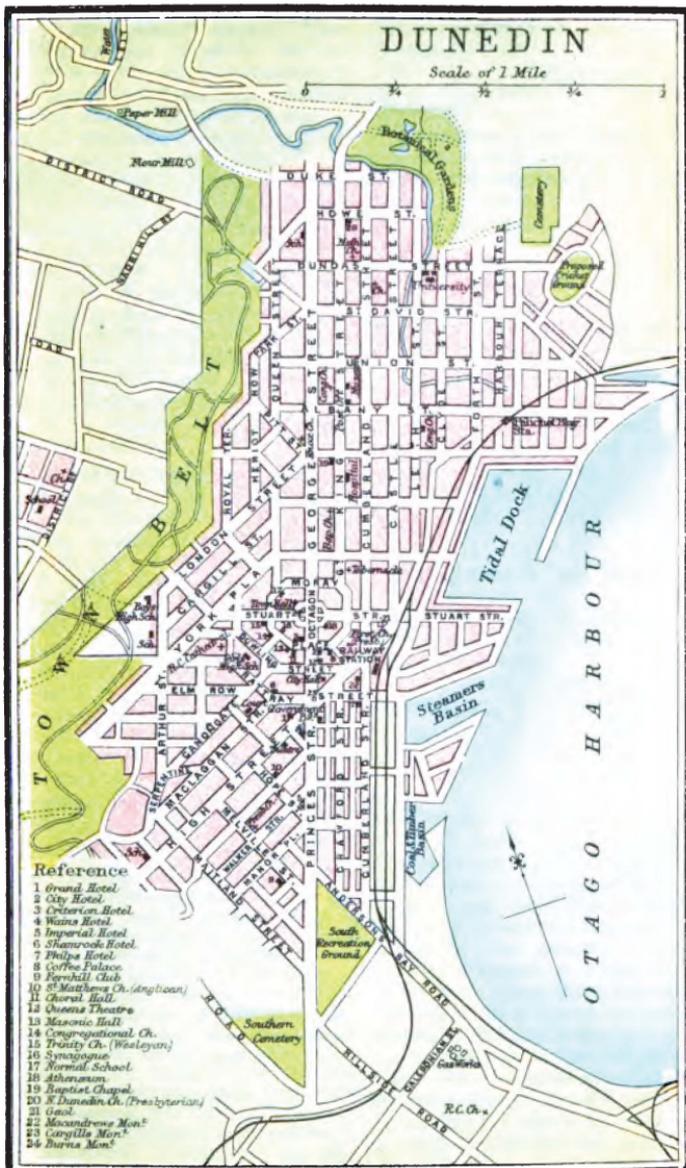
The traveller should then ascend the hill by the *cable tram*, for the view from the summit; and return the same way, stopping at the *old cemetery*, now disused; it has been tastefully laid out with walks and shrubs and contains a monument to those who are there interred.

Not far off is the **Boys' High School**, a large building in the Tudor style, containing a central *Hall* and several *Class-rooms*. Adjoining are the headmaster's residence, the boarding-house for pupils, the gymnasium, tennis courts, cricket field, &c.

The history of the Boys' High School is bound up with that of the settlement; a proposal for its establishment was made at the first session of the Provincial Council, in 1853, and the Ordinance establishing it was passed by the Council in 1856. It was endowed with land by the Provincial Government. The present buildings were opened in 1885; the Rector is the Rev. Dr. Belcher.

The traveller then takes the first street to the rt., which leads him back to Prince's Street, at the *Octagon*, a small open space. Here is situated **St. Paul's Church** (the Ang. Pro-Cathedral), a building in the Early English style containing several good stained glass windows presented by various donors. The diocese of Dunedin was separated from that of Christchurch in 1869; the present Bp. is Dr. Neville. Adjoining is the **Town Hall**, with a lofty *Clock Tower*. On the opposite side is the **Atheneum** and *reading-room*; admission easily obtained by introduction from a subscriber; books may be taken out on payment of a small fee. In the Octagon are a bronze *Status* of Robert Burns, erected by public subscription at the time of the Burns Centenary; and a stone cross erected to the memory of his nephew, the Rev. Dr. Burns, the first pastor of the Presbyterian Ch. of Otago.

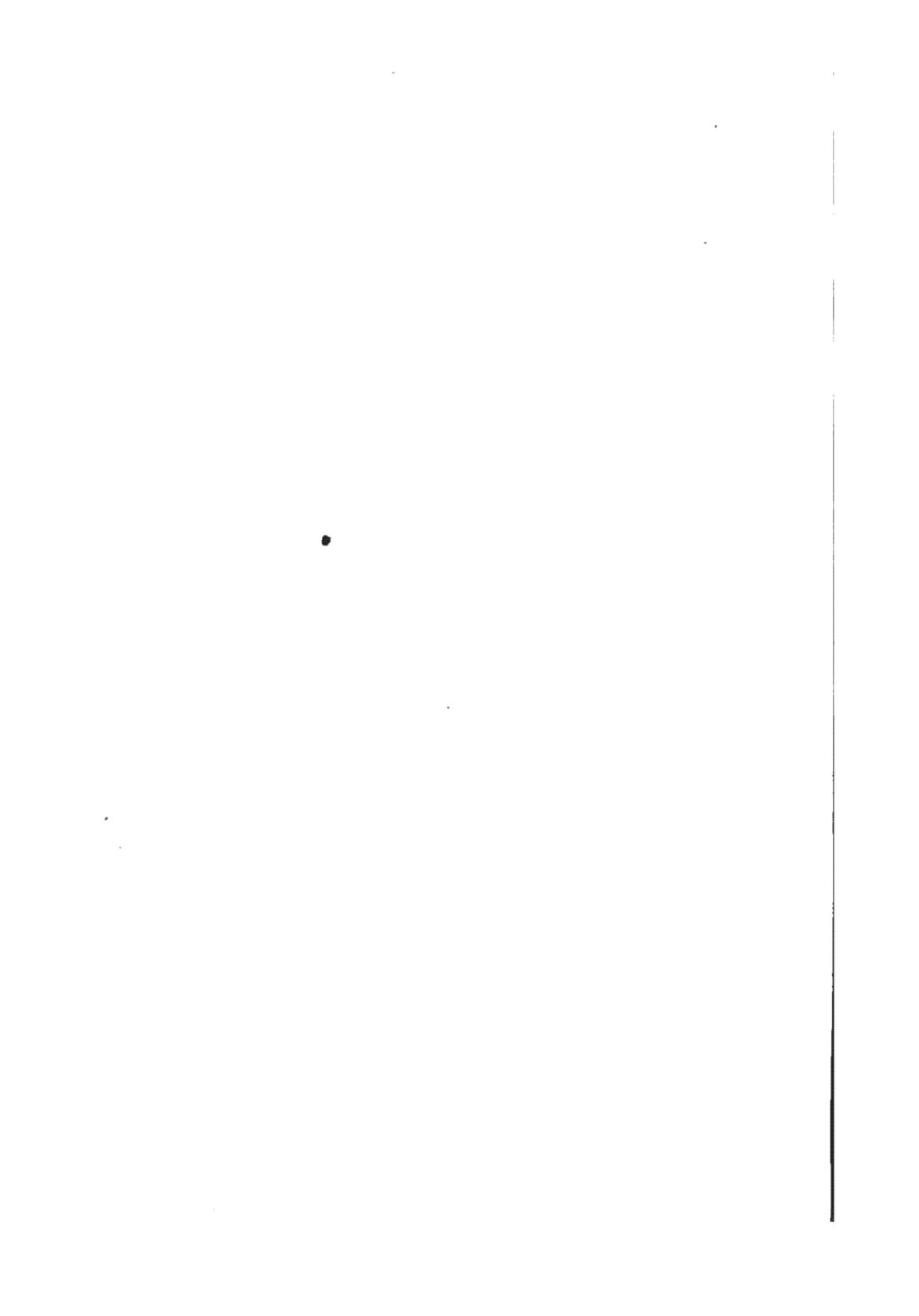
Turning to the N. the continuation of Prince's Street is called George Street. Proceeding along this street for some distance the traveller reaches **Knox Church**, a Decorated Gothic building of blue stone relieved with Oamaru stone, surmounted by a graceful spire. It was completed in 1876; the architect of this, as of the First Ch., being R. A. Lawson. The Rev. Dr. Stuart, who arrived in 1860, is the pastor.



Copyright

London, John Murray, Albemarle Street.

J. Bartholomew, Edin.



Here the traveller should follow the tram line, turning out of George Street by Albany Street into Great King Street, and then continue towards the N. On the rt. side is seen the **Museum***, which contains a remarkably fine collection of moa skeletons, and of the birds, minerals, and woods of N. Z.; a large number of valuable and curious Maori carvings from the N. island, presented by Dr. Hocken; and a few good pictures which are intended to form the nucleus of an Art gallery. The building is unfinished. The Museum is under the able superintendence of Dr. Parker, F.R.S.; it is connected with the University of Otago, and its income is derived from a government grant of land.

The next turning to the rt. (Union Street) leads over a bridge which crosses the *Water of Leith* to the **University**, a large building in the Domestic Gothic style, of basalt relieved with Oamaru stone. The architect was Mr. Bury. It consists of three disconnected blocks, the first devoted to the Arts School, the second to the Medical and Chemical, and the third to the Mineralogical. The building is unfinished. The *Library* occupies a large hall, which is also used for University functions. It contains portraits of various Otago worthies. Adjoining are the red brick, Queen Anne houses of the Professors.

The University of Otago was founded in 1869 by an Ordinance of the Provincial Council, and is endowed with a grant of 221,000 acres of land; besides which it receives £1,800 a year from the Educational revenue of the Presbyterian Ch., and several scholarships have been founded. It was originally intended that the University should confer Degrees; but on the establishment of the N. Z. University it was affiliated to it, and, though the name University is still retained, it is really now merely a University College like Canterbury and Auckland. There are nine professors and fourteen lecturers. Both day and evening classes are held, the fees being very moderate. The Univer-

sity is entirely secular, possessing no Theological School.

The Rev. Dr. Stewart is the Chancellor; Mr. Justice Williams the Vice-Chancellor.

Proceeding northwards along Castle Street on the rt. bank of the Water of Leith, the **Botanical Gardens** are reached; they are pretty, but not extensive.

From there the tourist can return by tram. If he wishes to extend his walk, he can return to King Street, and then turn to the rt. along Duke Street, and so go to the *Reservoir* and the *Waterfall* (see below).

Amongst other buildings may be mentioned **St. Matthew's Church** (Ang.) in Stafford Street; and the **Hospital** in Great King Street. There are many fine private residences with beautiful gardens in the suburbs.

WALKS, DRIVES, AND EXCURSIONS.

(1) To the **Reservoir** and **Waterfall**. A walk of 4 m. from the city boundary.

The traveller should take the tram from *Cargill's Monument* and proceed along Prince's Street and King Street; or walk along Prince's Street and George Street; until Duke Street intersects. He then turns to the l. and follows up Duke Street and the *Water of Leith Valley*, passing the *Flour Mill* and the *Paper Mill* on the l. At the latter, a small bridge to the l. is crossed, and thence the pipe track is followed up a narrow wooded valley to the *Reservoir*, which is prettily situated at a higher level, about 1 m. from King Street. Returning to the bridge, the traveller crosses it and turns to the l. following up the main stream for about 1 m. Shortly after entering a picturesque gorge, *Nicholl's Creek* comes in on the l.; and a short distance up this is the *Waterfall*, a favourite resort of Dunedin holiday makers. A climb further up the rocky bed of the stream is well worth the toil.

(2) **The Queen's Drive.** A charming drive or walk along the *Town Belt*, with continually changing views overlooking the city and harbour. The whole distance is about 7 m. The *Town Belt* occupies 500 acres, chiefly covered with bush.

(3) **To Roslyn.** The traveller should take the cable tram from the *Shamrock Hotel*, Rattray Street, as far as the summit; then by the Roslyn extension to the terminus. $\frac{1}{4}$ m. down the hill on the other side is the *Roslyn Woollen Factory* (strangers admitted by order, to be obtained at the office of Messrs. Ross and Clendening in High Street, Dunedin). Returning to the top of the hill, the traveller should walk along towards either the N. or the S., enjoying the extensive view over the city, harbour, and neighbouring hills, and then return to the city by any of the many roads that lead down to it.

(4) **To St. Clair and Ocean Beach.** 3 m. tram; 1 m. walk.

The traveller should take the tram from *Manse Street* to *St. Clair*, which is on the ocean, and the best place for bathing near Dunedin. It is worth while also to walk up the zigzag road to *The Cliffs*, passing the battery, for the view from the top. A walk of 1 m. from *St. Clair* along the beach leads to the large *Pacific Hotel* close to the battery at *Ocean Beach*, where the tram may be taken for the return to town.

(5) **To Portobello and the Heads.** To Portobello 14 m.; to the Maori kaik near the Heads, 5 m. further. There is a good carriage road all the way.

The best route is to go out by the high road through *Anderson's Bay*, along the summit of the main ridge of the Peninsula, and then descend to Portobello. During the descent is seen the lighthouse on *Cape Saunders*, so named by Capt. Cook in honour of Sir Chas. Saunders. Travellers may lunch or dine at the comfort-

able hotel at Portobello; those who intend to do so should telephone beforehand from Dunedin. The return journey may then be made by the *Beach Road*.

The drive may be extended beyond Portobello in two ways; either by crossing the Peninsula to *Hooper's Inlet* (1 m.), a pretty sheltered bay surrounded by farms; or by continuing along the shore of the harbour towards *Taiaroa Head*, passing through the scattered Maori kaik (village) of *Otakou*, from which the name of the Province has been derived (see above). Bp. Selwyn visited the kaik in 1844.

In Maori history this district is famous for numerous battles and stirring events; chief among which is the siege of *Pukekura*, the ancient name of *Taiaroa Head*, where the lighthouse now stands. At the period—probably about the early part of the eighteenth century—when the now extinct *Ngatimamoe* tribe had been driven S. and were making a stand in the region surrounding Dunedin, which was also partly in the possession of their enemies, the conquering *Ngaitahu* tribe, many engagements occurred between these factions. The *Ngaitahu* held *Pukekura*, whilst a pa at *Papanui*, a few miles away, was occupied by the *Ngatimamoe*. On one occasion a feast was held, which was partaken of by the children of both tribes. When the feast was over, the children began to play at their usual sports. Soon, the elders who were looking on began to join in the games; when suddenly the people of *Papanui* (amongst whom was the great chief *Whaka-taka-anewha*) attacked the people of *Pukekura*, killing most of those present and taking some prisoners; amongst the latter being the renowned warrior, *Tarewal*. Nine men seized him, wrested his *mere* from him, and commenced to torture and kill him with a flint knife; but such was the strength of *Tarewal*, that he succeeded in shaking off his enemies and escaping. Returning after a sojourn in the forest with his wounds healed, he found the *Ngatimamoe* besieging his pa. By a clever stratagem he recovered his *mere*, then climbed a tree in the forest and waved the *mere* as a signal to his friends inside the pa. They, seeing it waived

in the air, proudly commenced a waltz, which provoked the besiegers to a similar act of defiance. The Ngaitahu, directed by signals from Tarewai, cunningly led the dance towards the ocean, which gave Tarewai his opportunity; he rushed past and entered the pa. The next morning he performed the greatest of all his military feats; he led the whole of his people through the enemy (though their numbers were far larger), killing many and putting the rest to flight; thus he proceeded onwards, and left the pa deserted.

The Heads are now fortified with modern batteries.

Portobello may also be reached by rail to Port Chalmers and thence by steamer (excursion steamers frequent during the summer). Tickets for train and steamer are issued at the Dunedin Rly. Sta.

(6) **Down the harbour to the Heads.** Excursion steamers frequently go during the summer; the trip takes in all three or four hours.

(7) **To Waitati.** This excursion may be made (a) by rail, 17 m. (see Rte. 23); (b) by road, 12 m. The road is good, and the scenery beautiful all the way; (c) on foot, by the *Leith Valley*, 14 m. The traveller goes to the *Waterfall* (see above) and thence over the saddle; the track is perfectly clear, and generally fit for riding as well as walking.

A pleasant excursion of one day is made by going by one way and returning by another.

(8) **To Mosgiel.** By rail (see Rte. 26), or by driving along the main South Road 10 m.

A longer but very pleasant excursion may be made by driving out by the *West Taieri Road* via *Roslyn* and *Halfway Bush*, passing *Ashburn Hall Lunatic Asylum*, descending to the *Taieri plain* at the *Silver Stream*, and thence crossing a portion of the plain by a crossroad to *Mosgiel*; and returning by the *main South Road*. The whole drive is about 26 m.

At *Mosgiel* is a large woollen factory. Visitors admitted by ticket;

application should previously be made at the office of the Company, High Street, Dunedin.

(9) **To Flagstaff Hill.** Following the route described in the drive to *Mosgiel* as far as *Ashburn Hall*, the traveller turns to the rt. just before passing that building, and takes a road (which is good for walking or riding but not for driving) to the summit of *Flagstaff Hill* (2,150 ft.), the bare mountain to the N.W. of Dunedin. The view from the summit over the *Taieri plain*, the coast, and Dunedin, is very fine.

(10) **To Brighton.** A favourite watering-place, with an hotel and boarding houses, on the seaside, 13 m. south of Dunedin. This is reached by driving, the road passes through *Caversham* and *Green Island*.

(11) **To Pine Hill and Mount Cargill.** A beautiful walk of five hours in all; but travellers who do not wish to make so long an excursion will find it pleasant to walk or drive part of the way.

Starting from opposite the gate of the *Botanical Gardens*, the road up *Pine Hill* is seen, rising at a steep grade. The view becomes more beautiful all the way up the ascent. From here a more lengthened walk may be taken to the summit of *Mt. Cargill*; from which the view is very extended, both over the town and towards the N. It is possible to ride or drive to the commencement of the light bush, which clothes the upper part of the mountain.

(12) **To Signal Hill.** This is the bare hill overlooking the harbour on the N.E. side of the town. The traveller may start either from the junction of *Clyde Street* and *Dundas Street*, following the *Cemetery Road* to the suburb of *Opoho*; or may reach that suburb from the tram terminus just beyond the *Botanical Gardens*, ascending to the rt. Thence following the main road through *Opoho*, at the height of 1,000 ft.

a stone farm-house is reached. If the traveller wishes to proceed to the summit, he should ascend to the highest point of the cultivated land, strike thence across to the rt. through the scrub $\frac{1}{2}$ m. to the *Trig. Station*, marked by a cairn. The harbour and peninsula appear mapped out below. This walk may be accomplished in two and a half hours from the starting-point.

(13) To the *Taieri Mouth*. Rail to Henley 21 m. (see Rte. 26); thence steamer (excursions frequent during summer) to the Mouth, one hour. Time: one day; but travellers wishing to make it two, can find a boarding-house at the Mouth.

The master of the steamer will point out the 'Maori Leap' or 'Maiden's Leap.'

A small body of fugitive Ngatimamoe under Tukiauanu had fortified a pa on *Lake Waihola*; Korokiwhiti, the son of Tukiansu, became acquainted with Hakitekura, the daughter of a Ngaitahu chief, whose pa was situated on the river. The lovers held clandestine meetings on the sands, until rumours of wars caused Tukiauanu to abandon his pa and make for the S. He embarked with his followers in a large war canoe and proceeded down the *Taieri*. As they were passing beneath her father's pa, Hakitekura, eager to join her lover, sprang from the cliff into the water; but, striking either a rock or the canoe in her descent, was killed. Her father, Tuwiroa, overwhelmed with grief and rage, swore that he would destroy the man that had caused this disaster. Following him to Rakiura (Stewart's Island) he slew him and all his people there.

ROUTE 26.

DUNEDIN TO INVERCARGILL.

139 m. Rly.

This cannot be recommended as a beautiful trip; but the line passes through a rich agricultural and pastoral district, and the journey is not without interest.

The line at first passes through the S. part of Dunedin, then across some fields to the suburb (2 m.) of *Caversham*. Immediately after leaving the station the Rly. passes through a tunnel of more than $\frac{1}{2}$ m. in length, and then enters the *Kaikorai Valley*, at the head of which is the large *Roslyn Woollen Factory*. Chemical works, freezing works, and candle and other factories are seen.

4 m. *Cattleyards*. Here the large stock sales take place.

5 m. *Abbotsford* (in the town called 'Green Island'), where a

line branches off l. to the *Green Island Coal Pits*; and another rt. to the *Fernhill Coal Pit*.

The line then turns to the rt. and goes through the *Chain Hills Tunnel* ($\frac{1}{2}$ m.) to the *Taieri Plain*, a rich agricultural district. On the l. is seen *Saddle Hill*, one of the points of which Captain Cook took bearings.

9 m. Wingatui Junction.

[From here a line, known as the 'Otago Central,' branches off to Middlemarch, 40 m. About 6 m. after leaving Wingatui, it passes over the *Mulloky Gully viaduct*, 691 ft. in breadth and 193 in height. It then runs for many miles up the narrow gorge of the *Upper Taieri*, through wild, rocky scenery.

16 m. *Hindon*. There is a small gold-field in the vicinity.

35 m. *Sutton*. After this the line enters the *Strait-taieri Plain*, bounded on the W. by the Rock and Pillar Range.

40 m. **Middlemarch**, the present terminus. Hotel.

From here a mail coach runs by Hyde, Kyeburn, Naseby, and Alexandra to Clyde. See Rte. 27.]

10 m. **Mosgiel Junction**. A large woollen factory.

[From here a line branches off to Outram, 9 m., a holiday resort for people from Dunedin, prettily situated close to the Mungatua Range.]

From Mosgiel the line runs along the **TAIERI RIVER** to

15 m. **Greytown**. On the opposite side of the plain is seen the **MUNGATUA RANGE**.

21 m. **Henley**. From here steamers frequently run down to the mouth of the river.

Shortly after leaving the station, the two branches of the *Taiari* are crossed by iron bridges.

26 m. **Wahola**, on the lake of the same name. The waters are discoloured by the sluicing at the mines further inland. Tea and coffee may be obtained at the station.

32 m. **Millburn**. Near the station is a large lime-burning establishment.

36 m. **Milton**.

Hotels: *Commercial*; and others.

Churches: *Ang.*; *Pres.*; *R. C.*; *Wesl.*

Pop.: 1,200.

The town, situated in the centre of the *Tokomairi* Plain, contains pottery works, mills, and factories, and there are several coal-pits in the neighbourhood.

[Here a line branches off to Lawrence, whence a coach runs to Queenstown. Travellers wishing to visit Lake Wakatipu, and not pressed for time, may take this route. See Rte. 27.]

Shortly after leaving Milton, the line crosses the *Tokomairi* R.

44 m. **Lovell's Flat**. The lakes *Tua-akitito* and *Kaitangata*, which may be seen on the L., afford sport to many visitors from Dunedin.

50 m. **Stirling**. Here a line branches off to *Kaitangata*, 5 m., a large coal mine.

The *CLUTHA* R. is crossed shortly before reaching

53 m. **Balclutha**.

Hotels: *Crown*; *Criterion*.

Churches: *Ang.*; *Pres.*; *R. C.*; *Wesl.*

Pop.: 900.

A thriving town on the banks of the *CLUTHA* or *MOLINEUX* (the river bears both names; the name *Molineux* was given to the Bay at the mouth by Captain Cook).

EXCURSIONS.

(1) To **Kaitangata** and the mouth of the **Molineux**.

The main line is retraced as far as *Stirling*, and thence the branch to *Kaitangata* taken. Visitors are allowed to inspect the coal-mine, on application to the manager. From the coal-mine the tourist may walk over the hill to the ocean; and thence southward by the beach to the mouth of the river, returning by its banks to *Kaitangata*. The whole excursion may easily be made in one day.

(2) To the **Nuggets**. By rail to *Romahapa*, 8 m. Buggies can be obtained there; or can be ordered previously from *Nuggets Bay* (*Campbell's* or *Ottaway's* Boarding House). *Romahapa* to *Nuggets Bay*, 8 m. The road passes *Port Molineux* at the mouth of the river, near which is a small Maori kaik. At the Bay, comfortable lodgings may be obtained at either of the above-mentioned boarding houses. A beautiful excursion may be made thence, on foot or horseback, to *Roaring Bay* and *Nugget's Point Lighthouse*, 4 m.; and many beautiful walks through the bush.

(3) To **Catlin's River**. By rail to *Glenomaru*, 12 m.; and by coach thence to *Owaka*, 9 m. **Hotels:** *Vial's* and *Paterson's*. At either Hotel the necessary conveyances and horses may be obtained (previous notice should be given). Boats may be hired from Messrs. *John Oliver*, *Campbell*, *Duncan M'Kenzie*, and *Hanning*. A beautiful

excursion may be made by boat to the mouth of the river; another by boat up Catlin's Lake and R. A driving excursion may be made up the *Owaka Valley*. A prolonged excursion may be made, by buggy, horseback, or on foot, 17 m., to the mouth of the *Taukupu R.*, returning the same day. There is no settled habitation at the *Taukupu*; but a camp may be formed, and it is easy to obtain a boat to proceed up the *Taukupu R.*, 6 m. The excursion may be prolonged to the *Tautuku R.*, 6 m.; and thence further to the *Cathedral Caves*.

Survey and settlement are proceeding so rapidly in this district, that further facilities for tourists will doubtless soon be provided.

74 m. **Clinton**. Here the train usually stops for lunch. Refreshment room at the station.

Hotels: *Royal Mail; Railway.*

Churches: *Ang.; Pres.*

A small settlement in the centre of a fertile district. There is a large fish-nursery here.

14 m. **Waipahi**.

[Here a line branches off to Heriot, 20 m., through a sporting country, having fallow deer in the ranges and trout in the streams.]

91 m. **Pukerau**.

This was the scene of a famous Maori battle. Te Rauparaha from his stronghold at Kapiti (see Rte. 15) sent a branch expedition down the W. coast of the S. Island. After destroying and scattering the inhabitants of the greenstone country near Hokitika, they crossed into the interior by the Haast Pass (see Rte. 29), and massacred the natives at Hawea. They then came down the Clutha for some hundreds of miles, on rafts made of the flower-stalks of native flax; and crossing thence to the *Mataura Valley*, were met by local forces, aided (it is said) by some European whalers from Foveaux Straits, and utterly destroyed, the few survivors being made prisoners. The date of the battle was about 1836.

In this, as in several districts of Southland, the traveller will be reminded of Scotland by seeing peat being cut.

Shortly before reaching Gore, the line crosses the *MATAURA RIVER*, which was the boundary of the province of Southland.

100 m. **Gore**.

Hotels: *Railway; Gore; and others.*

Churches: *Ang.; Pres.*

Pop.: 700.

A flourishing settlement, with mills and factories.

[Here a line branches off across the Waimea Plains to Lumsden, and so on to Kingston. This is the direct route from Dunedin to Lake Wakatipu.]

GORE TO LUMSDEN. 37 m. Rly. 7s. 9d., 5s. 2d.; R. 10s. 4d., 6s. 11d.

18 m. **Riversdale**.

37 m. **Lumsden**. See Rte. 31.]

107 m. **Mataura**.

Hotels: *Mataura; Bridge.*

Churches: *Ang.; Pres.*

A small town on the *Mataura River*, and one of the oldest settlements in the district; it has not, however, progressed as rapidly as some others. The paper mills, at which thirty hands are regularly employed, are worthy of a visit.

Here the line enters on the *Great Southland Plain*. It was at one time mostly covered with bush, as can be seen by the roots of trees which are come across in digging, but much of it has disappeared.

116 m. **Edendale**.

A small settlement, founded by the *N. Z. and Australian Land Co.* At one time many steam ploughs were employed in this district, but they were soon found to be a mistake.

[Here a line branches off to Wyndham, 4 m., a small town of 400 inhabitants. Hotel: *Boyd's*. Churches: *Ang.; Pres* From Wyndham a coach goes through a fertile country, prettily broken by hills and streams, to *Fortrose*, 25 m., a small settlement at the mouth of the *Mataura R.* Along the beach

towards *Waipapa Point*, quantities of black sand may be seen, somewhat richer in iron than that at Taranaki (see Rte. 12), and containing gold in fairly paying quantities.

At *Waipapa Point*, occurred the wreck of the *Tararua*, on April 29, 1881. The ship struck during the night, and the captain unfortunately decided that the safest course was to remain on board until assistance came, instead of landing the passengers and crew by

boat. With the rising tide, however, the heavy seas, which were breaking on the reef, destroyed the vessel, and 120 persons were lost.]

128 m. **Woodlands.** A rising township, containing meat-freezing works and a dairy factory.

135 m. *Mill Road.*

139 m. **INVERCARGILL.** See Rte. 30.

ROUTE 27.

DUNEDIN BY LAWRENCE AND CLYDE TO LAKES WANAKA AND WAKATIPU.

(From Dunedin to either Wanaka or Wakatipu takes two days.)

DUNEDIN TO LAWRENCE. 60 m. Rly. 12s. 6d., 8s. 4d.; R. 16s. 8d., 11s. 1d. For the first part of the journey to (36 m.) **Milton**, see Rte. 26.

38 m. **Clarksville.** Here the line diverges from the main line, and goes up the valley of the S. branch of the *TOKOMAIRIRO R.*

41 m. **Glenore.** A small mining township, once more busy than it is now.

45 m. **Manuka.** The line then follows the valley of the *Manuka Creek*, and passes through undulating country to

53 m. **Waitahuna** (otherwise *Havelock*), another mining township. It then winds through the ranges to

60 m. **Lawrence.** Rly. terminus.

Hotels: *Commercial; Railway.*

Churches: *Ang.; Pres.; R. C.; West. Cong.*

Pop.: 1,100.

The town was originally established in 1862 in connexion with

the rich alluvial gold-fields of *Gabriel's Gully*. It is still the centre of an important field, worked chiefly by sluicing; some quartz reefs are also being opened. Besides this, it is in a good agricultural and pastoral district.

LAWRENCE TO PEMBROKE. 125 m. coach.

The road traverses a well-grassed pastoral country, with stretches of agricultural land.

13 m. The *CLUTHA R.* is crossed by a bridge.

The road then proceeds along or near to the bank of the Clutha. On the way is passed the famous 'Island Block,' where extensive sluicing operations are going on, following the lead of gold deposited in an ancient channel of the Clutha.

For several miles the road traverses a plain known as 'Moa Flat,' from the number of moa bones found there.

40 m. **Roxburgh** (otherwise called *Teviot*).

Hotels: *Commercial;* and others.

Churches: *Ang.; Pres.; R. C.; West.*

Pop.: 350.

Here the coach stops for the night.

128 ROUTE 28.—THE HERMITAGE TO LAKE WAKATIPU.

Along the base of the *Mt. Benger Ranges* immediately N. of Roxburgh for 5 or 6 m. there are considerable orchards and fruit gardens where peaches, apricots, and vines bear well in the open air. Large quantities of fruit are sent to Dunedin.

The road then follows along the Range keeping close to the Clutha R. The river is crossed by a handsome suspension bridge just before reaching

70 m. **Alexandra.** A mining township.

Hotels: *Criterion; Caledonian.*

Churches: *Pres.; R. C.*

Pop.: 250.

The road from Alexandra then passes through the 'Dunstan Flat,' a level expanse of sandy plain to (75 m.) Clyde, which may be described as the gateway into the interior lake country.

[A coach goes from here to Naseby and Middlemarch. 120 m. See Rte. 26.]

The road then follows the course of the Clutha through the Dunstan Gorge.

88 m. **Cromwell.**

Hotels: *Mounsey's; Junction; Commercial.*

Churches: *Ang.; Pres.; R. C.; West.*

Pop.: 500.

A mining town with both alluvial working and quartz reefing in the neighbourhood. Brown coal is also worked, for local consumption. The town is situated at the junction of the *Kawarau*, the outlet of Lake Wakatipu, with the *Clutha*, the outlet of Wanaka and Hawea.

[Travellers who do not intend to visit Lake Wanaka will proceed to Queenstown on Lake Wakatipu.]

CROMWELL TO QUEENSTOWN. 43 m. coach.

For the first 3 or 4 m. the road traverses a beautifully level tract of grass country; then enters the *Kawarau Gorge*, following the bank of the *Kawarau R.* for 30 m., and then crosses the river by a fine suspension bridge. About 3 m. beyond the bridge, the road from Pembroke to Queenstown is joined. For the rest of the way, see Rte. 28.]

The road then follows up a beautiful grass valley of considerable width along the banks of the Clutha, and passes several mining and other settlements. Close by on the l. is the lofty *Pisa Range* (so called from a fanciful resemblance between some of the pillar-like rocks and the famous Leaning Tower), and on the rt. are the *Dunstan Mts.*

125 m. **PEMBROKE.** See Rte. 28.

ROUTE 28.

THE HERMITAGE (MT. COOK) TO LAKES PUKAKI, WANAKA, HAWEA AND WAKATIPU.

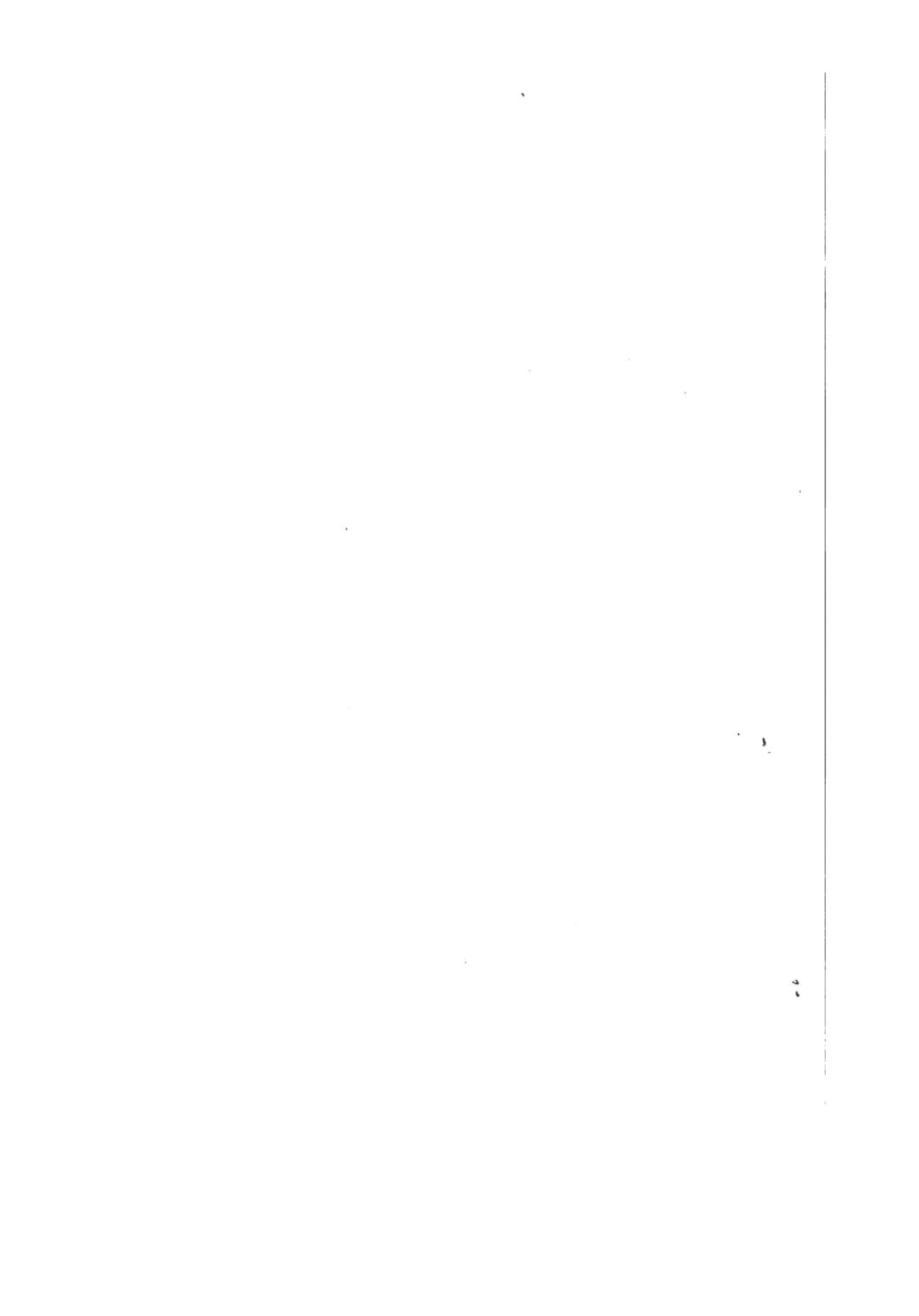
This route takes three days' coaching; but at least two days' halt should be made at Lake Wanaka.

THE HERMITAGE TO PUKAKI. 36 m.

PUKAKI TO OMARAMA. 25 m. See Rte. 24.

OMARAMA TO PEMBROKE. 71 m. Coach.

The road crosses a level plain, the *AHURINI R.* being on the rt., and then winds up the valley of the *Long Slip Creek* so gradually that the traveller will be surprised to find that at



20 m. *Lindis Pass*, the altitude of 3,185 ft. has been reached.

It then descends the *Lindis Valley* amidst pretty scenery, not so treeless as that already passed through.

On the way down the valley *Morven Hill Station* is passed, and soon after, a bridle track goes to the rt. up a long spur, to *GRAND VIEW*; and then, skirting to the l. of the peak, descends and rejoins the coach road. From *Grand View* (as its name implies) the panorama is magnificent. From the point at which the coach is left to that where it is picked up again is 10 to 12 m., whereas by the coach road it is about 30; hence, good walkers can leave the coach and rejoin it at the end of their walk.

Emerging from the valley the road passes over the *Lindis Downs* and strikes across some rolling country.

Tarras Station, the property of Messrs. Dalgetty & Co., is passed through, and the homestead seen on the l. The road enters the valley of the *Clutha*, and after this is fairly level.

63 m. A road to the rt. here leads to *Hawea Flat* and *Lake Hawea*.

The *Clutha* is crossed by a punt just below its junction with the *Hawea River* and immediately afterwards

(70 m.) **Albert Town** (otherwise *Newcastle*) is reached.

The road is now nearly level to

(71 m.) **Pembroke**.

Hotels: *Wanaka* (very comfortable); *Commercial*.

Buggies (15s. single, 30s. double) and *horses* (7s. 6d.) may be hired at the *Wanaka Hotel*.

Pop.: 200.

The surface of *LAKE WANAKA* is 930 ft. above sea level, whilst its bottom is 155 ft. below. It is about 30 m. long by 3 m. wide; and has an area of 57,000 acres. Unfortunately, hotels on the lake are few; besides the hotel at *Pembroke* the only accommodation houses are at the

[*New Zealand.*]

head of the lake and at *Minaret Bay*. Tourists taking long excursions in other directions must therefore camp out.

Travellers say that this lake is even more beautiful than *Wakatipu*, having a greater variety of outline, and the mountain peaks being more distinct and less in mass than those around *Lake Wakatipu*.

It is said that *Wanaka*, like *Hawea* and *Wakatipu*, was scooped out by glacial action, as the moraine at the lower end of each testifies.

EXCURSIONS.

There is a steamer on the lake which takes different trips on various days, and at other times may be hired from Messrs. McDougall, of *Pembroke*. The principal water excursions are

(1) To the **Head of the Lake**, two days; the night being spent at *Moffat's* accommodation house at *Makarora*.

As the steamer goes along, after passing *Plantation Island*, there is seen in front *Crescent Island*, with *Mt. Alta* (7,838 ft.) rising above it. To the right is the *Peninsula*, behind which an *estuary* runs up for about 5 m., and *Mt. Grandview* in the distance. To the westward are the *Harris Range*, in which *Black peak* rises to a height of 7,566 ft.; the *Buchanan Peaks* and *Glendhu Bay*.

Passing between *Roy's* or *Wallace Peninsula* and *Crescent Island*, *Mahukihuki Bay* is seen on the l., and a more extensive view opens up, including *Manuka Island*, the *Twin Peaks* (5,687 ft. and 5,438 ft.), the *Minarets* (7,189 ft.), *Mt. Albert* (7,063 ft.), and the *Turret Peaks* (5,145 ft.), and on the rt. *Mt. Burke* (4,461 ft.), with *Mt. Gold* to the S. of it, *Sentinel Peak* (5,959 ft.), and the *McKerrow range* (7,422 ft.).

(2) To **Manuka** (sometimes also called *Pigeon* or *Weka*) *Island*. A lovely island, containing a small lake (*Rototui*) 480 ft. above the level

of the main lake; from *Craigielachis*, the rock above the lakelet, the view is very picturesque.

(3) To **West Wanaka** and **Glendhu Bay**.

This includes a glorious view of *Mt. Aspiring* (9,960 ft.).

(4) To **East Wanaka** and **Dublin Bay**.

Amongst the excursions by land should be mentioned

(1) To **Lake Hawea**, a pleasant drive of 12 m. along the *Hawea Flats*.

The *Clutha R.* is crossed by a punt at *Albert Town* (see above). The surface of Lake Hawea is 134 ft. higher than that of Wanaka; it is also 200 ft. deeper.

The scenery of the lake is pretty but cannot be compared in grandeur to that of the other lakes. On the range close to the lake are numbers of red deer, which have been introduced from Scotland by the Acclimatization Society. Licenses for shooting may be obtained at Dunedin; the shooting season is April and May.

(2) Up the **Matukituki Valley** to the foot of **Mt. Aspiring**. A day's excursion on horseback, or for some distance by buggy; a guide not necessary to experienced travellers, as the track is level and in an open grassy valley all the way.

The track passes *Glendhu Bay*, where *Mt. Aspiring* (9,960 ft.) first comes in sight, and then goes up the valley, crossing the *Matatapu* (a tributary of the *Matukituki*) from which an hour's ride leads to *Cattle Flats Station*; after that numerous streams are crossed and waterfalls seen. Whilst pro-

ceeding up the valley, magnificent views of the snowy mountain and glaciers of *Mt. Aspiring* are obtained.

(3) To **Criffel**. A drive of about 10 m. from Pembroke; near the summit is a mining township.

Hotel: Maidmen's.

The view is very extensive and somewhat resembles that from Grand View.

PEMBROKE TO QUEENSTOWN. 42 m. coach. The scenery is not especially striking at first. A glimpse of the summit of *Mt. Aspiring* is seen looking backwards just before entering the *Cardrona Valley*. The district has suffered severely from the rabbit pest.

The road proceeds up the valley of the *Cardrona R.* to

(16 m.) **Cardrona. Inn.** A small mining township once more prosperous than it is at present.

The traveller then continues up the valley until he reaches the *saddle* of the *Crown Range*, the watershed of the *Clutha R.* The view here is very fine. *Lake Wakatipu*, *Lake Hayes*, the *Kawarau R.*, *Ben Lomond*, the *Remarkables*, and other mountains may be seen.

The road then descends through an agricultural district which though at an altitude of 2,000 ft. above the sea, produces splendid crops of wheat and oats on the *Crown Terrace*.

29 m. Here the road to *Cromwell* branches off to the l. See *Rte. 27*.

33 m. **Arrowtown.**

For the rest of the way see *Rte. 31*.

42 m. **QUEENSTOWN.** See *Rte. 31*.

ROUTE 29.

HOKITIKA BY THE HAAST PASS TO LAKE WANAKA.

235 m.

This is only a Route for strong and adventurous travellers. Though very beautiful and interesting, it cannot yet be recommended for ordinary tourists. It takes at least five days. From *Hokitika* to *Big Wanganui R.* (50 m.) a buggy can be taken; after that the road is for the most part a bridle track, and fairly passable, having been formed and metalled where necessary. Most of the Rte. is through a sparsely-settled forest country, with occasional stretches along ocean and river beaches, affording a great variety of scenery, from the majestic peaks of the Mt. Cook Range to the softest sylvan, lake, and marine views. The forest is always beautiful, but especially during spring and summer, when the flowers are in blossom. The many rivers to be traversed, and the beaches and bluffs to be negotiated lend a sufficient spice of adventure to the trip to make it attractive. At all the large rivers down the coast the Westland County Council have placed ferry-men and boats for the convenience of travellers when the rivers are unfordable, which is most frequently in summer, the rivers being snow-fed. Wooden signals for calling the ferry-men are supposed to be kept in order at each, but the usual method is to 'cooey.' The fares vary from 1s. 6d. to 3s. for man and horse. An experienced traveller may frequently, even in summer, go right through without employing a boat, but strangers should never attempt this. Autumn and winter are, however, the best times for travelling, not only on account of the rivers, but also for the mountain scenery. On several of the ocean beaches, bluffs have to be traversed, in some parts of which narrow tracks have been benched out of the hillside to allow of passing at high-water. The state of these bluffs frequently alters in a single tide from smooth sand, round which a buggy can be driven, to bare rough rocks and

boulders, over which an inexperienced horse scrambles with difficulty even when led.

An old traveller, although a stranger, can, with the advice received from ferrymen and others, easily go from Hokitika to the mouth of the *Haast R.* without a guide; but from thence to Lake Wanaka, as well as for any of the side excursions, a guide should be taken. From *Ross* to *Gillespies* there is a weekly horse mail carried by Mr. John Adamson of *Ross*; and from *Gillespies* to *Haast* a fortnightly one, carried by Mr. Daniel Koiti of *Gillespies*. Travellers can easily arrange to go under the escort of the mailmen, from whom also horses can generally be hired, if wished, along their respective routes. It is, however, better to hire horses at Hokitika and return them by the mailmen. From *Haast* to *Wanaka* there is no regular communication, and no inhabited halfway house; the Government has built two iron huts for this purpose, where travellers can camp for the night, one on each side of the *Haast* crossings near the *Burke* junction, below the *Clarke Bluff*; but, as these contain neither beds nor food, everything must be taken from Mr. Cron's, at the mouth of the *Haast*, who can also generally supply horses and a guide for this part of the journey.

From many of the river crossings and beaches are seen magnificent views of the peaks in the main range of the Southern Alps, which are never more than 20 m. distant, and (like many nearer ones) are perpetually snow-clad.

All the ferry-houses are also accommodation ones.

From *Hokitika* the main S. road runs nearly parallel to, and a short distance from, the *Hokitika R.*

3 m. *Kanieri*. A small township. Here the river is crossed by a long wooden bridge.

The road then follows up the l. bank of the river through the little mining village of *Woodstock*, and then turns off to the S.W. and passes through another village named *Rimu*.

9 m. *Frosty Creek* is crossed by a bridge.

12 m. *Ogilvie's Accommodation House*. From here the beautiful *Mahinapua* lake (see Rte. 19) is only some 2 m. distant by road and boat.

20 m. **ROSS.**

Hotels: *Empire; Junction; Club;* and others.

Churches: *Ang.; Pres.; R. C.; West.*

Pop.: 800.

A pretty and clean-looking mining township. The famous 'Ross United' 'Mt. D'Or,' and 'Prince of Wales' sluicing gold-mining claims are situated around here.

22 m. *Donoghue's School* and a few scattered cottages.

24 m. *Mikonui R.* Ford and Ferry kept by Chas. Holly: house on S.W. side.

30 m. Mr. Samuel Ferguson's homestead.

35 m. *Little Waitaka*, or *Gordon R.* There is no ferry; the ford is good at ordinary times, though a little rough with stones; over it is a wire suspension bridge.

[The Mt. Rangitoto silver mine is some 6 m. up this valley; it is reached by a metalled track up the l. bank, re-crossing to the rt. about 5 m. up. There is some very fine gorge scenery up this river. The mine has not been developed to any extent, but excellent prospects have been obtained.]

34 m. The road here enters, and for about 1 m. follows the bed of the *Waitaka R.*, which is now running in a number of streams, generally easily crossed when not in flood. There is what is termed a horse ferry, but no boat on this river; the house, which is on the l. bank, is kept by Alexander Urquhart.

38 m. *Duffer's Creek*. A few gold miners are at work here. There is a good ford, and a wire foot-bridge.

39½ m. to 41 m. The road skirts the beautiful lake *Ianthe*, from the beach of which a lovely view of the lake itself, the surrounding hills, and Mt. Adams in the distance, is obtained.

41½ m. A cold sulphur spring in the creek on the l. side of the road.

45 m. *Evans' Creek*, generally dry or nearly so; rough stony crossing. On the S. side Mr. Karnbach has a hut and considerable clearing.

50 m. *Big Wanganui R.* Ferry-house and boat on the S.W. side, kept by Mr. Peter Hende. A strong and rapid river, generally fordable in winter, and to the experienced traveller in summer also; but strangers should always take the ferry, as the water is discoloured and some parts of the ford are rough. There are several hot sulphur springs up the river.

About this point the dray road turns into a mere bridle track.

53 m. *Wanganui* schoolhouse.

54 m. Here a road branches off to the rt., through some good agricultural land.

56 m. *Little Wanganui R.*, running in several streams, with good crossings, easily forded in ordinary weather. There is no ferry. Mr. Thomas Ferguson's homestead and clearings are on the rt. bank.

57 m. The road begins to ascend the slope of *Mt. Hercules* (the only rise of any consequence from *Hokitika*). The saddle is reached in 1 m.

59 m. (Down the opposite slope, below the old hut.) A good bird's eye of the *Rotokino* and *Wataroa flats* is obtained here. *Lake Rotokino* appears below in the rt. corner, the *Little Man R.* or *Dry Creek* (as it is more often called) winding about in the centre with an occasional glimpse of the *Wataroa R.*, and sur-

rounding hills in the distance, whilst a few settlers' houses dimly visible give animation to the scene.

60 m. The flat is again reached. The road then runs through a somewhat swampy but good flat, mostly open.

64 m. *Dry Creek*. On the rt. bank Mr. Thomas Ferguson has an out-station. As the name denotes, this stream is generally dry where the road crosses, the water filtering through under the gravel.

67 m. Near this two rough little streams, *Parker's* and *Rough Creek*, not containing much water at ordinary times, but bad in floods, are crossed.

69 m. *Wataroa R.* Ferry-house and boat on S.W. side, kept by Mr. Alexander Gunn. A strong and rapid river with opaque water and rough bottom; strangers should call the ferryman, although regular travellers can usually ford it in winter and sometimes in summer.

[The Seely Pass through the Southern Alps to Canterbury is some 20 m. up this river. It is said to be an easy pass; altitude 5,800 ft.]

71½ m. The road to *Wataroa Flat settlement* turns up to the rt. From here the road is a good dray one to *Okarito* and *Mapourika* township.

72 m. *Waitangi* schoolhouse, and a few settlers' cottages; no Accommodation House.

73 m. *WAITANGI TAONA R.* A clear stream, with a good ford at ordinary times.

77 m. *LAKE WAHAPO*, a pretty sheet of water, surrounded by hills on three sides is touched and skirted for 1½ m.

79 m. Forks of *Okarito R.*, and junction of *Manapourika* road. Small Accommodation House.

[From this point the road to *Manapourika* Lake and township, and to the *Francis Joseph Glacier*, turns off. It is a trip well worth making, for the lake, mountain and glacier scenery. It is

best to make *Okarito* the headquarters. A horse can be taken almost to the foot of the glacier, which is only 705 ft. above the sea level; for the convenience of foot travellers, several wire bridges have been erected over the *Totara* and *Waiho* rivers on the way up. From *Okarito* Forks the distance to *Mapourika* village, and the lower end of the lake is 3½ m.; to *Patrick* and *Green's* Sta. on the *Totara R.* 10 m.; and to the foot of the glacier, 15 m. If the start is made from *Okarito* township, 4 m. must be added to these distances. A few gold-miners are at work about 2 m. below the glacier. To avoid retracing his steps, the tourist can, when returning, ride straight down the *Waiho R.* and flat to the sea, and thence along the coast to *Okarito*, the distance being much the same either way.]

83 m. *Okarito*.

Hotels: Patrick's; Bridgeman's.

A small town, once more flourishing than it is now. It is distant from *Hokitika* 55 m. by sea. A small steamer makes quarterly trips to this and some places further S. with goods, &c., for the settlers and miners. The *Okarito* lake or lagoon is a sheet of water some 6 m. long with an average width of more than 1 m.; it is a favourite resort of wild ducks and black swans all the year round. The swans' eggs (which are equal to four hens' eggs) at certain seasons form a considerable item in the diet of the inhabitants: one person may often gather 100 in a day. The sea frequently throws a shingle-bank up across the entrance to the harbour, which all kinds of traffic can pass over dryshod; it remains until the water rises up to near the houses, when all hands collect and cut a channel; a very small opening suffices, as the accumulated water in the lagoon soon sweeps it out, and a good entrance is again formed.

From *Okarito* southwards to *Bruce Bay* the road follows off and on the ocean beaches. On leaving *Okarito* when the tide suits and the bluff is good, the traveller keeps

round the beach; when otherwise he takes the track turning off to the l. between the Court and the harbourmaster's house, which leads over the Bluff and (though steep in places) is a fairly passable bridle-road, striking the beach again near the 3 m. creek and lagoon, on the opposite side of which is the Ferry-house, kept by Mr. Graham. Occasionally, and for considerable periods, the mouth of the creek and lagoon is blocked by a bar of shingle thrown up by the sea, across which it is safe to ride; the dangerous time being for a day or so after it first breaks out, when many quicksands form; after it has run for a while the bottom becomes firm. Strangers should always take the boat; many lives have been lost in this stream. In the early days, good gold was obtained on this 3 m. beach; some years ago a suction gold dredge was tried, but proved a failure; the machinery has lain there ever since.

87½ m. *Blanchard's*, or *Five mile Bluff*. The traveller keeps round the beach or goes over by the track, according to the state of the tide and bluff.

88 m. The Five Mile Beach gold diggings, once rich and famous, with a flourishing township, containing hotels, dancing houses, and stores, now represented by some half dozen huts scattered along the beach where a few miners still eke out a living. Another suction dredge was erected here, but proved a failure.

90½ m. *Waiho Bluff*, on which is the signal for calling the ferryman.

91½ m. *Waiho R. Ferry-house* on the S.W. side, kept by Mr. Wallace. The river runs swift and strong, but has a good bottom, although the crossing alters with each flood. The best fords are above the bluff, round which the County Council has cut a track; the flats down to the sea are full of quicksands. Strangers should always call the ferryman.

On a fine day a grand view of the main range, and the Francis Joseph Glacier are obtained from the river-bed.

93 m. *Omoeroa Bluff*. This is rarely passable on the beach, but there is a track over the back; and the traveller, having crossed it, can either turn on to the beach again at once, or keep on along the track past Mr. Gault's house, and across the *Omoeroa stream* (94 m.) before turning down.

96 m. *Waikukupa stream* and accommodation house kept by Mr. E. Gibb.

103 m. *Galway Bluff*; generally a rough and rocky one to get round, although at times the rocks are so sanded up that one can ride round with ease, following the beach all the way to Gillespie's; when the extreme point (*Gillespie's Bluff*) is bad, there is a track turning off up the side of the hill about 1½ m. on the N.E. side, which leads through a short tunnel cut in the ridge and joins what is known as the 'far downers' track. After crossing the hill through the bush, this track returns to the beach just beyond Gillespie's point, crossing the *Wai-kohai stream* by a bridge (106 m.), and following along the beach to

108 m. **Gillespie's.**

Hotels: *Ryan's*; *McBride's*.

Church: *R. C.*

A long straggling village built on the sandhills fronting the beach, where the schooner which brought round the dredging plant still lies embedded in shingle. Here also a suction gold-mining dredge was tried and proved a failure.

From Gillespie's a magnificent view* is obtained of *Mts. Cook* (12,349 ft.), *Tasman* (11,475 ft.), and *La Perouse* (10,359 ft.). Excursions can be made to the *Fox* and *Balfour Glaciers*, the distance to the former being about 15 m., and to the latter about 20 m. A horse can be taken

to within 1 m. of the Fox, but not nearer than about 10 m. of the Balfour, to a point where there are some miners' huts, and a wire foot-bridge over the Cook R. To both a guide is necessary, and can be procured at Gillespie's. Part of the return journey may be varied by coming down *Myers' Track*, which follows the rt. bank of the *Lower Cook R.* to the sea, some 9 m. below the meeting of the Cook and Fox rivers.

109½ m. A very short and easy bluff.

110½ m. *Cook's Lagoon* is crossed in front of the house of the ferryman, Mr. Dan. Koiti. The track then proceeds along the river-bed for about ½ m., and crosses over *Cook's R.* (which is usually in two branches) and down the shingle bed to the point of *Cook's Bluff*. Strangers should never attempt to cross the river without the ferryman, as there are occasionally quicksands. Round *Cook's Bluff* a narrow track for horses has been cut for more than ¼ m. just above the rocks.

113½ m. The *Oinetamatea* or *Saltwater Creek* (often dangerous) is crossed. Strangers coming from the N. should take the *Cook's R.* ferryman on with them; and those from the S. the *Karangarua* ferryman, to put them across; it is part of their duty under agreement with the County Council.

115½ m. Ferry-house at *Karangarua R.*, kept by James Ferguson. Sometimes this river can be forded on the beach; but except in times of flood there is always a good ford straight over from the house. The track skirts down the edge of the river, and goes out at *Hunt's Beach*. (117½ m.). A basket signal, to be erected by any one coming from the S. and requiring the ferryman, stands on a sandhill on the S. side of the mouth of the river; as the distance from the house is considerable, time is saved by raising a

smoke at the foot of the signal. There is plenty of dry wood about. *Hunt's Beach* is usually hard and sandy. A few miners are at work near *Hunt's Creek*, some of whom have been there for twenty-five years. At times traffic goes along the beach and round '*Jacob's Bluff*' on '*Makawihopoint*' to *Bruce Bay*; but this is not generally good, and as a rule the best way is by the *Manakiaiu R.*, turning off the beach near *M'Culloch's Hut* (121 m.), crossing that river at a ford (122 m.).

123 m. *Makawihopoint* or *Jacob's R.* is forded. This is a beautiful stream. The track then turns down the l. bank of the river.

125 m. A small native village is passed through.

126 m. The track goes out on the beach near the school, which is a mixed one for both Natives and Europeans.

127 m. *Ritchie's Accommodation House* and store.

The landing and goods shed at *Bruce Bay* are nearly 2 m. further on, and out of the line of the southern traffic.

Shortly after leaving *Ritchie's*, the track leaves the beach and follows generally the course of the *Mahitahi R.*

132½ m. The *Mahitahi R.* is crossed. There are a few settlers' houses on the rt. bank.

After leaving the river, the track passes through some low swampy country.

139 m. The *Paringa R.* is crossed. The ford is good; there is no ferry. Messrs. Power have their homestead on the l. bank, and Mr. O'Rourke his (which is also the Post Office), about 1½ m. further on. There is no regular accommodation house, but travellers can generally get put up at either place.

144 m. The track passes close to the end of the pretty *Paringa Lake*.

149½ m. A metalled bridle road here turns off to the rt., and leads to *Lake Moeraki* (5½ m.) and the *Ocean Beach* (9 m.).

151 m. The *Moeraki* or *Blue R.* is crossed. The ford is fair; there is no boat, but a good wire foot-bridge.

The road then begins to ascend by a winding route.

154 m. The *WAKAPOHAI SADDLE* is reached.

The road then in descending continues to twist in and out of one gully after another, the only sign of habitation being *Adair's Iron Hut* on the l., which is seldom occupied. From many of the outward bends, however, splendid views are obtained of the grass land on the *Okuru-Matakitaki Range* above and to the l., and also of the flat country extending from *Ship Creek* to the *Haast R.*, and of the *Open Bay Islands* 20 m. away. On the flat are seen a chain of small lakes known as *Tauwherikiti* or the *Maori Lakes*. *Ship Creek* takes its name from the remains of an old ship which lies some 40 or 50 yds. up from highwater mark; she has been diagonally planked and fastened together with hardwood screw bolts.

167½ m. The flat is again reached.

170 m. The *Waita R.* is crossed for the first time.

172½ m. The *Waita R.* is again crossed; the ford is good. Messrs. Robinson and Friend have their homestead at the elbow of the river.

173 m. The track crosses the *WAITA LAGOON*, and goes out on to the *Ocean Beach*; there is a wire rope and cage over the lagoon for foot passengers, and a good hard ford on either side of the cage line, although the water is sometimes over the horse's back when the mouth of the lagoon is blocked, or the tide is high.

173½ m. Two tall *Totara posts*, evidently the remains of an old Maori store, stand a little back from the beach, and have doubtless at one

time been surrounded by a native village.

176½ m. Here the traveller leaves the beach and enters on a bush track known as the gluepot, which extends to

178½ m. The *HAAST RIVER*, which is usually fordable in winter when the tide is out; but no stranger should attempt it without the ferryman who lives on the S. side. Mr. Adam Cron keeps it and also the accommodation house (179 m.).

The *SS. Waipara* occasionally visits the Haast, but more often lands supplies at the *Okuru R.*, about 8 m. down the coast, whence they are sent on pack horses. On the *Okuru* and *Turnbull* rivers are a number of settlers, also at *Waitoto*, 16 m. from the Haast, and at the *Arawata R.*, 20 m.; while at *Jackson's Bay*, 24 m., is a very good roadstead harbour. This may be said to be the ultima Thule of settlement in S. Westland, although there is another station on *Cascade R.*, and there are a few miners at *Big Bay*. *Jackson's Bay* landing is 203 m. by land, and 140 m. by sea, from *Hokitika*.

Leaving Cron's, the track follows generally the direction of the *Haast R.*, although for a few miles it is some distance back from it, in the bush.

186 m. The *Big Bluff* is rounded. The track then comes out on the river-bed, which (except at the different bluffs, where it goes inland for a few chains, and crosses on zig-zag tracks) it follows nearly all the way up to and past the *Clarke Bluff*.

189 m. *The Thomas Bluff*.

193 m. *Halfway Bluff*.

½ m. further on is *Gap Creek*, which is only some 3 m. in length; at the end there are some little grassy flats about ½ m. wide; these again being surrounded by a ½ m. fringe of bush, beyond which rise on three sides vertical cliffs, some 3,000 to 4,000 ft. high, while above them again and on either hand stand the snow-clad peaks, *Victor* (6,319 ft.) and *Nerger* (6,211 ft.). This wonderful place is easily accessible on foot, though there is no out track.

195½ m. *Demon Creek*; up which are *Demon Gulch*, *Imp Grotto*, and the beginning of *Parapet Cliffs*, which run parallel to the river, but a little distance in.

198 m. *Roaring Billy Creek* comes brawling down on the opposite side of the *Haast R.*

202½ m. *Nissen's Bluff* is crossed.

204 m. An iron hut placed here by the Government as a halfway stage and a shelter for any travellers caught by floods and unable to ford the river above.

206 m. The *Clarke Bluff*, opposite the junction of the *Clarke* and *Landsborough* rivers with the *Haast*. The track has been formed to each side, but not round this bluff; consequently it is necessary to cross and re-cross the *Haast*, which runs in against the *Bluff*. Mr. Stewart of *Wanaka* has an outstation some 2 m. up, on the l. bank of the *Landsborough*; it is visible from the track, but seldom inhabited.

210½ m. The traveller crosses to the rt. bank of the *Haast*. The ford is good.

211 m. Another iron hut placed here by the Government as a shelter in times of flood for travellers from the *Wanaka* side who may be unable to ford the river. Nearly opposite, but a few chains below this hut, the *Burke R.* flows into the *Haast* through a wonderful gorge or cañon which is only a short distance above the junction. The water comes rushing and boiling through a narrow opening about 12 ft. wide, with precipitous cliffs rising on each side to a height of 400 or 500 ft. The water of the *Burke* is beautifully clear and transparent, and forms a contrast to that of the *Haast*, which in summer time is of the usual milky colour of all glacial rivers, although in winter quite clear, with beautiful ultramarine depths showing here and there. In the *Burke* just above the junction where the water is still and deep, thousands of grayling may be seen.

On leaving the hut, the track skirts round a rocky siding parallel to the *Haast*.

213 m. The track crosses the *Wills R.* just above its junction with the *Haast* by a neat and substantial bridge; and then continues up the gorge to *Dan's Ford*, where it again crosses to the l. bank; and from this point it continues to cross and recross the *Upper Haast* at intervals until near the *Pass*.

215 m. *Pepson's* or *Tin Hut*, and *Mule Flat* (so named from an explorer named *Pyke* having had to leave his mules here).

216 m. *Pyke's Creek*, at the head of which, in full view from the track is the *Brewster* or *David Glacier*, the colours of which are beautiful. *Mt. Brewster* is 8,265 ft. high.

219 m. *Haast Pass Saddle*. Alt. 1,716 ft. There is seldom much snow on this *Pass*. From this point to the *Fish R.* the road has been badly laid out, having many steep and apparently unnecessary ups and downs.

221 m. The *Fish R.* is crossed above its junction with the *Makarora*, which here turns off to the E. through a rocky gorge.

222 m. The *Makarora R.* is crossed at *Kiwi Flat*.

223½ m. The track crosses *Cameron's Creek* and goes out on an open grassy flat of the same name. This, like many parts of the *Haast* district, is much infested with rabbits.

230 m. *Makarora Post Office*, and a few settlers' houses are passed; and on the opposite side, backed by high hills, is seen Mr. W. G. Stewart's station.

235 m. *Head of Lake Wanaka*, into which the *Makarora R.* discharges itself. *Accommodation House*, *Moffat's*.

The road then continues down the eastern side of the lake; but travellers will probably prefer to go by steamer. See Rte. 28.

ROUTE 30.

INVERCARGILL AND NEIGHBOURHOOD.

INVERCARGILL.

Hotels: *Crescent*; *Club*; *Albion*; and others.

Club: *Invercargill* (non-residential).

Churches: *Ang.*; *Pres.*; *R. C.*; *Westl.*; and others.

Pop.: (including suburbs) 9,000.

Conveyances: *Trams* run from the town to Waikiwi, 2 m. *Cab fares:* 1s. per mile. Double fares after 11 p.m.

The district now called Southland was inspected as early as 1841, but described by the surveyor as 'a mere bog, utterly unfit for habitation.' Settlement, however, commenced in 1857, the settlers mostly coming from Dunedin. The town was called after Mr. Cargill, at that time Superintendent of the Province of Otago.

In 1861 they separated from Otago and formed the Province of Southland, but the scheme was not a financial success, and in 1870 they were reunited. Invercargill became a municipality in 1871.

The borough of Invercargill contains 1,000 acres, divided into blocks by wide streets all at right angles. It is surrounded by a belt or reserve 460 ft. wide. To the N. of the borough 200 acres have been reserved as a park.

There is not much at Invercargill to detain the tourist. The first thing to do is to ascend the *Water Tower*, 90 ft. high, (entrance free, on application,) from which there is an extensive view over the town and neighbourhood. Far away to the N.W. may be seen the lofty *Takitimu Range* (see Rte. 32), to the N.E. the *Hokonui*, to the S. the *Bluff Hill*, 900 ft. high (the entrance to the har-

bour being at the E. of the hill). To the S.W. *Stewart Island*, and to the W. *Longwood Range*. The machinery by which water is supplied to the town may also be examined. The supply is unlimited. Many saw-mills are at work in the neighbourhood, besides the usual industries of brewing, meat-freezing, cheese-making, foundries, factories, &c.

The *Athenaeum* contains a good library and reading room (open to visitors), and a small museum, chiefly of stuffed birds, animals, and geological specimens. The shops at Invercargill are good. The town also possesses a *High School* for boys and girls, a good *Hospital*, and other institutions.

The Estuary, at the head of which Invercargill is built, is called the *New R.* It was a harbour of some importance until the Rly. to the Bluff was opened; but although it would be possible to deepen the channel so as to admit vessels drawing 20 ft., this is unnecessary as the Bluff Harbour supplies all present requirements.

EXCURSIONS.

With the exception of *Stewart Island* none of the excursions from Invercargill can compare with those in other parts of N. Z.; but persons who wish to benefit by the bracing climate of Southland may find them enjoyable, whilst to the fisherman the district affords many attractions.

(1) To *Wallacetown*. 4 m. coach. The coach leaves at 4 p.m. A small settlement on the banks of the *Ma-*

karewa R. a little above its junction with the *Oreti*. The fish ponds may be inspected; they have been of much use in the past, many of the lakes and rivers in the district having been stocked from them; but at present they are not so well cared for as those at Clinton.

(2) To **Mokotua**. 13 m. Rly. 2s. 9d., 1s. 10d.; R. 3s. 8d., 2s. 5d. The line runs through the *Seaward Bush*, and is interesting to those who wish to get an idea of the importance of the timber trade of the district.

(3) To **The Bluff**. 17 m. Rly. 3s., 2s.; R. 3s. 6d., 2s. 6d. Nearly all visitors to Invercargill will have arrived by the Bluff, or will leave by it. The journey is bleak and unattractive. For some distance the Estuary is seen on the rt.

6 m. Woodend.

12 m. **Greenhill**. The *Bluff Harbour* is here seen on the l.

17 m. **Campbelltown**, the terminus (for the Bluff Harbour).

Hotels: *Eagle; Golden Age.*

Church: *Methodist.*

Pop.: 500.

Important chiefly for its shipping, meat-freezing works, and splendid oyster fisheries. Those who enjoy climbing will find a fine view from the top of the hill. The **Bluff Harbour** is safe from all winds, and has no bar. It is the southernmost port of the South Island of N. Z., the last at which vessels touch on leaving, and the first they make on arrival from Hobart. Of the islands in the straits, the most interesting is *Ruapuke*, which once contained a large Maori population, and was the scene of the labours of the late Rev. Mr. Wohlers, a devoted German missionary. The island produces good granite.

(4) To **Orepuki and Nightcaps**. Travellers who have not seen large

gold-fields or coal mines in other districts, will find this an interesting tour.

INVERCARGILL TO OREPUKI. 43 m. Rly. 9s., 6s.; R. 12s., 8s.

8 m. **Makarewa**.

The line then crosses the *Oreti* and passes over an extensive plain watered by the *Waimatuku* R.

20 m. Thornbury (Refreshment room at station). **Hotel.**

Church: *Ang.*

A small market town.

[From Thornbury a line branches off to Nightcaps.

THORNBURY TO NIGHTCAPS. 25 m. 5s. 3d., 3s. 6d.; R. 7s., 4s. 8d.

The line for some time follows up the fertile valley of *Aparima* R.

3 m. *Hayletts*. Here the *Aparima* R. is crossed by a long bridge.

7 m. *Fairfax*. A small settlement, with a dairy factory.

12 m. Otautau.

Hotels: *Otautau; Commercial.*

A day's excursion may be made from here to the beautiful limestone caves at *Waiau*. Horses, guides, and lights may be obtained at *Otautau*. The road (18 m.) is good, and passes through the beautiful estate of *Merivale*. The entrance to the caves involves some rough crawling and climbing. Some of the passages are nearly a mile long.

Adventurous travellers may take a delightful ride from the caves up the *Waiau* over *Black Mt.*, crossing the *Mararoa* R. (which is nearly always fordable, except during floods) to *Lake Manapouri* (see Rte. 32), a distance of about 38 m. There is a beaten track up the l. bank of the *Waiau*.

The line then leaves the river and passes through open country, in which much natural terracing will be observed.

25 m. **Nightcaps**. **Hotel.**

A large amount—estimated at 100,000,000 tons—of brown coal exists in this neighbourhood. It has a good local demand.]

26 m. Riverton.

Hotels: *Aparima*; *Commercial*; and others.

Churches: *Ang.*; *Pres.*; *Wesl.*

Pop.: 1,000.

There is also a small Maori settlement. A prettily situated little town on the estuary of the *Aparima R.* in which there is excellent boating and fishing.

The line then passes up the estuary.

29 m. *Longwood*.

33 m. *Colac*. **Hotel:** *Railway*.

The Bay, which is situated about a mile from the station, contains a Native settlement and excellent fishing; mullets, flounders, and red cod can be obtained.

[A walk of 6 m. along a good road leads from Colac to *Round Hill*, a mining settlement with large sluicing works.

At the township of *Canton* a number of Chinese miners reside.

Hotel: *Hammer's*.

The bush scenery is pretty, but there are no extensive views. The traveller can walk on thence to *Orepuki*, 6 m.]

The line then runs through bush, passing the small settlements of *Ruahine* and *Pahia Flat*.

43 m. *Orepuki*. **Hotel.**

A small town on the sea-coast, from which there is a good view of the *Solander Group*.

(5) To *Lakes Pouteri*, *Hauroto* and *Monowai*. These lakes are still too inaccessible to be reckoned within ordinary tourist routes. Travellers who wish to visit them must camp out. Enquiries and preparations may be made at *Invercargill*.

(6) To *Lake Wakatipu*. See *Rte. 31*.

(7) To *Lakes Te Anau* and *Manapouri*. See *Rte. 32*.

(8) To *Stewart Island*. An interesting and delightful excursion for good sailors who do not object to somewhat primitive accommodation. The sea fishing in the many bays of the island is splendid. The bush scenery is lovely, the ferns and shrubs in the district facing *Foveaux Straits* resembling those of districts much farther N.; from which it may be gathered that the climate though rough is not severe. It is most healthy. The Island was seen by *Capt. Cook* in 1770, but he supposed it to be part of the *S. Island*. It was discovered to be a separate Island by the infamous *Stewart* (see *Rte. 22*) in 1808, and called after him. It was at one time officially called '*New Leinster*.' (It is much to be regretted that the native name—*Rakiura*—was not preserved.) It is over 40 miles long by 25 broad, and contains an area of about 1,300 square miles. The highest mountain is *Mt. Anglem* (native name *Hananui*), 3,200 ft. high. There are several fine harbours. It contains much valuable timber; saw-mills are now at work. Gold and tin have been found, but are not now worked. The oyster beds are celebrated. There are a few sheep farms on the island.

A small steamer leaves the *Bluff* once a week for *Half Moon Bay*. Distance, 24 m. Time about 3 hours. Return ticket, 7s. 6d. It is also possible to hire a sailing boat at the *Bluff*. At *Half Moon Bay* is the settlement of *Oban*, population about 160. Here are several comfortable accommodation houses (*Thomson's*, *Macrae's*, *Harrold's*, and *Scully's* can be recommended) at which the charge is about 25s. a week. No spirituous liquors can be obtained on the Island. Travellers had better stay at *Oban*, and there hire a cutter for excursions by water. The most beautiful of these is to *Paterson Inlet*. When there a visit may be made to the native settlement and school at *The Neck*. At the head of the inlet is *Mt. RAKIAHUA*, 2,140 ft.; the climb is

stiff, but the view from the summit well repays it. A guide is necessary either for this or for *Mt. Anglem*. A pleasant excursion may be made by rowing up *Freshwater R.* for some distance, and then walking across the Island to *Mason Bay*. Arrangements should be previously made to stay for the night at a house at *Mason Bay* (there is no regular accommodation house); and the return journey may be made the next day.

Port Pegasus, to the S. of the Island, is another beautiful inlet with some fine waterfalls. The district is uninhabited. There are many bush tracks through the Island available for horsemen or pedestrians.

The Islands on the S.W. coast of *Stewart Island* are breeding places for the mutton birds, the young of which is a favourite food of the Maoris. These Islands have never been acquired from the Natives, and are visited by them annually in March by sailing boats starting from *Riverton* and the *Bluff*. They take and preserve the birds on the Islands and send them thence in large numbers for sale in N.Z. Permission to accompany the expedition is readily accorded.

(9) To the uninhabited Islands to the South.

An excursion may occasionally be made to several groups of uninhabited islands of great interest. This is not ordinarily within the reach of tourists; and special permission has to be obtained from the Minister of Marine at *Wellington*. The Government steamer *Hinemoa* is despatched at irregular intervals, about twice a year, to replenish dépôts maintained for the support of shipwrecked people and to bring home any castaways who may be found. The islands are visited in the following order:

1. **The Snares.** A small group 63 m. S. of *Stewart Island*, crowded with penguins, mutton birds, and

other sea birds; and containing a few species of land birds and plants of interest to naturalists, some of the plants being endemic.

2. **The Auckland Islands.** A group, of about the area of an English county, in lat. 51°, containing a great variety of beautiful flowering plants, numerous land and sea birds, and other objects of interest. It is the breeding home of the albatross, and the scene of numerous wrecks. The group contains several fine harbours.

3. **Campbell Island**, in lat. 53°, containing similar plants of even more robust growth. Here too are several fine harbours. The French station for the observation of the transit of *Venus* in 1874 was placed here, under *M. Bouquet de la Grege*; but the day proved unfavourable.

4. **Macquarie Island**, in lat. 55°, is not within the limits of N. Z., and is rarely visited. Here for many years a station for procuring sea elephant oil, and subsequently the oil of the king penguin, was maintained; but the Government of *Tasmania* (to which the Island belongs) has forbidden the further destruction of these creatures.

5. **Antipodes Island.** Lat. 51°. A small Island, approximately antipodal to *Greenwich*, but actually about corresponding with *Barfleur* in *France*. It is the nesting place of the albatross and other birds. It is also covered with vegetation.

6. **Bounty Islands.** A collection of rocks crowded with sea birds, and once the resort of numerous fur seals. They are destitute of vegetation.

(For further information concerning these Islands, see 'Chapman on the Islands south of N. Z.' in the *Transactions of the N. Z. Institute* for 1890.)

ROUTE 31.

INVERCARGILL TO LAKE WAKATIPU.

Wakatipu, the most easily accessible of the southern lakes, may be reached, (1) from Lake Wanaka by coach to Queenstown (see Rte. 28); (2) from Clyde by coach to Queenstown (see Rte. 27); (3) from Dunedin or Invercargill by rail via Lumsden to Kingston. For the rail from Dunedin to Lumsden see Rte. 26. As the upper part of the lake is the most beautiful, tourists lose little by omitting the part south of Queenstown. But most travellers will have to traverse this route, either to or from Invercargill.

INVERCARGILL TO KINGSTON. 87 m. Rly. 18s. 2d., 12s. 1d.; R. 24s. 3d., 16s. 1d.

8 m. *Makarewa Junction.*

[Here a line branches off to Ore-puki and Nightcaps. See Rte. 30.]

The line then passes through an extensive agricultural plain.

19 m. **Winton.**

Hotels: *Caledonian*; *Railway*; and others.

Churches: *Ang.*; *Pres.*; *R. C.*

Pop.: 300.

The land in this neighbourhood is very rich, partly owing to the limestone. Near Winton are some large lime kilns.

The plain then narrows into a valley.

37 m. **Dipton.**

Hotels: *Dipton*; *Railway*.

Churches: *Ang.*; *Pres.*; *R. C.*

Pop.: 300.

A good place for sportsmen to halt, as the trout fishing and duck

shooting in the neighbourhood are good.

The line for some distance is close to the *Oreti R.*

The valley then opens out again into a plain, bounded on the E. by the *Hokonui Mts.* This plain was evidently once the bed of a vast glacier; the natural terracing is very marked.

50 m. **Lumsden.**

Hotels: *Elbow*; *Railway*.

Churches: *Ang.*; *Pres.*; *R. C.*

Pop.: 300.

This is the point of departure for the Te Anau and Manapouri excursion. See Rte. 32.

From Lumsden a line branches off across the Waimea plains to Gore. See Rte. 26.

Another line branches off to Mossburn, 11 m.

In the neighbourhood of Lumsden are several fine estates, both pastoral and agricultural; the principal being *Castle Rock* (Hon. Matthew Holmes), *Waimea Plain* (N. Z. Agricultural Co.), and *Five Rivers* (Messrs. Ellis).

69 m. *Athol.* Here the *Mataura R.*, which divides Southland from Otago, is crossed by a bridge.

79 m. *Fairlight.*

87 m. **Kingston.** **Hotel:** *Kingston.*

A small settlement at the lower end of *Lake Wakatipu.*

The name *Wakatipu* is a corruption of *Waka tipoa*, 'the canoe of the goblin.'

According to the Maori legend, the hollow now filled by the lake was caused by a fire, lit by the brave

warrior Matakauri who thus slew the giant Matau. Geologists say it was caused by glacial action, the remains of the moraine being visible near Kingston. The upper part of the lake was unexplored until 1860; in 1862, however, the discovery of the Wakatipu gold-fields attracted an immense population to the district.

The lake lies at an altitude of 1,060 ft., but at many places the bottom is 1,100 ft. below the sea level. The water is deep blue and remarkably pure. A few ft. below the surface its temperature never falls below 52° or rises above 54°. The only visible outlet is by the *Kawarau R.* near Queenstown; no doubt, however, there is a subterranean channel from the lower end of the lake. The lake is stocked with trout, which grow to an enormous size and are excellent eating, but will seldom take a fly; fishermen should therefore have recourse to neighbouring streams. The length from Kingston to the head of the lake is 50 m.; its breadth varies from 1 m. to 3½; the surface area is 112 square m.

KINGSTON TO QUEENSTOWN. 25 m. steamer. Fares, 10s., 7s. 6d.; R. 15s., 11s.

The scenery, not remarkable at first, steadily improves. Natural terraces, so common a feature in N. Z. scenery, will be observed. Soon after leaving Kingston, the *Hector Mts.*, culminating in the *Double Cone* of the *Remarkables*, will be seen across the lake. 'The Devil's Staircase,' which was the only track to Queenstown in the early days, is seen on the rt. On the l. is *Mt. Dick*; and soon afterwards a picturesque inlet known as *Halfway Bay* is seen, the *Eyre Peaks* backing the narrow valley through which the *Lochy R.* rushes to the lake. Next comes *Bayonet Peak*; the steamer then passes *Colin's Bay*, rounds *Mt. Cecil*, and crosses the lake towards *Ben Lomond*, affording a fine view of the *Middle Arm* to the l. and the *Re-*

markables to the rt. The approach to the little Alpine town of *Queenstown* is charming.

Queenstown.

Hotels: *Eichard's* (very good); *McBride's*; *Mountaineer* (both moderate). Private lodgings may also be obtained.

Buggies and horses may be hired at all the hotels. Single buggies about 12s. 6d. per day; double ones 25s.; horses about 10s.; guide 7s. 6d.

Churches: *Ang.*; *Pres.*; *R. C.*; *Wesl.*

Pop.: 750.

Queenstown is a delightful place for a prolonged stay, as the climate is healthy and bracing, and there are many splendid excursions and good places for fishing in the neighbourhood.

WALKS.

The *Park* and *Esplanade*, within a few minutes of the town. The *Waterworks* 1¼ m. on One Mile Creek; follow the upper road above the *Esplanade*, till reaching the paddock, where finger-posts will be seen.

DRIVES AND EXCURSIONS.

(1) To the **Summit of Ben Lomond**. An easy ascent of 4,700 ft. above the lake. The excursion may be made in one day, on foot or partially on horseback.

Starting from the terrace above *Robertson's Jetty*, a well-defined horse-track zigzags to the saddle (4,300 ft.) between *Ben Lomond* and *Bowen Peak*, this having been, in early days, the only means of conveying supplies to the *Moke Creek* and *Moonlight* diggings. The saddle may easily be reached in 2½ hours. It is a good spot for luncheon; a small spring will be found to the rt. of the track, just before reaching the flat of the saddle.

The ascent of the peak, now close by on the l., presents no serious difficulties even to ladies. The

panorama from the summit is splendid; westward the *Richardson Mts.* extend in continuous succession of rugged peaks from 6,000 ft. to 8,000 ft. high. Adjoining them, to the northward, *Mts. Aurum* and *Larkins* stand out conspicuously. If the day is clear, the snow-capped shaft of *Mt. Aspiring* (9,960 ft.) may be distinguished 40 m. distant, due N. At the foot of the peak lie *Moke Lake* and *Lake Dispute*; to the east, *Lake Hayes*, the *Crown Terrace* (over which travelled the first sheep) and, in the far distance, the *Leaning Rock* of the *Dunstan Mts.*, near Clyde. Turning round, *Lake Wakatipu* is seen winding round the base of the serrated *Remarkables*, and losing itself behind *Mt. Cecil*, in the direction of Kingston. Westward, *Walter Peak* (5,956 ft.), *Afton Peak* (5,043 ft.), and *Mt. Turnbull* (6,306 ft.) rise sheer from the opposite side of the lake, backed by the mountain-tops which rear their heads in the direction of the *Mavora Lakes*, lying but a short 15 m., as the crow flies, from where the spurs of *Mt. Nicholas* meet the waters of *Lake Wakatipu*.

(2) To **Arrowtown** via **Frankton**, and back by the **Shotover Gorge**.

This trip covers about 26 m., over good roads, and through a diversity of lake, mountain, and pastoral scenery. Time—driving or riding—about 6 hours, including a halt for lunch at Arrowtown.

For 4 m. the road skirts the *Frankton Arm* of the lake, and on reaching the hamlet of that name, a detour may be made to the *Falls*, where the waters of *Wakatipu* find their only visible outlet into the *Kawarau* branch of the *Clutha R.* From here a fine view of the *Remarkables* is obtained. Near the falls, on the l. is the *Lakes District Hospital*; and across the water a pleasing station homestead is seen.

Rejoining the main road, the way lies chiefly among well-tilled farms, crosses the *Shotover Bridge* (dredges

for gold may be seen above and below) and skirts *Lake Hayes*, a pretty sheet of water famed for its monster trout. It was named after 'Bully Hayes,' a famous buccaneer of the South Seas in former times. $\frac{2}{3}$ m. from the lake, the traveller comes suddenly upon the important mining centre of

Arrowtown. Here a halt may be made for lunch.

Hotel: *Royal Oak.*

Churches: *Ang.; Pres.; R. C.; West.*

Pop.: 450.

Those interested in gold-mining may spend an hour in picking up information regarding the *Macetown reefs*, or inspecting the banks of a river made famous by the incredible quantity of gold won here in former years. The scenery of the *Arrow Gorge* is also worthy of a visit.

From Arrowtown the main road goes on to *Pembroke* (see Rte. 28) and *Clyde* (see Rte. 27).

Shortly after starting on the return journey by the *Arthur's Point Road*, the traveller will notice *Thurby Domain*, famous for its fruit. Just before reaching *Arthur's Point Bridge* will be seen the *Skipper's Track*—which for miles overhangs the cliffs of the *Shotover River*. *Arthur's Point* derives its name from a man named Arthur who one morning left *Queenstown* to search for gold, with no better implements than a knife and a pannikin, and returned in the evening with several pounds weight of gold. No doubt vast deposits exist in the Upper *Shotover*, but they are difficult to obtain; dredging in the Lower *Shotover*, however, promises to be very successful.

The *Gorge* is soon entered, and a drive of about 4 m. through its wild scenery brings the traveller back to *Queenstown*.

(3) To the **Phoenix Mine at Skippers**. About 26 m. on horseback.

Proceeding along the *Arrow Road*

in a northerly direction, the *Shotover R.* is crossed at *Arthur's Point*. About $1\frac{1}{2}$ m. further on, the Arrow Road is left, and the traveller, still making in a northerly direction, crosses a low range of hills and enters the valley of the *Shotover*. The road follows the valley to the township of *Skippers*; thence it goes up *Skipper's Creek* till the *Quartz Reefs* are reached, and further progress is barred by the high mountains which close in abruptly on either side. In the *Shotover Valley* the road is in some places hewn out of the solid rock, hundreds of feet above the river. The scenery is wild and rugged, and gradually gets more impressive as the road winds up the narrow gorge of *Skipper's Creek*. The mine is about 8 m. beyond the township. The mine machinery is worked by electricity, the motive power for supplying which is a waterfall some miles distant in another valley. After inspecting the mine, the traveller returns to the township, and stays for the night at the accommodation house there, proceeding back to *Queenstown* the following day.

(4) To the **Head of the Lake**. 30 m. steamer. Fare, 11s; R. 15s.

This excursion must on no account be omitted. *Anthony Trollope* says, 'I do not think that lake scenery could be finer than that of the upper arm of *Lake Wakatipu*.' It must be admitted, however, that this was the only one of the *Otago* lakes he saw; and, on the other hand, bush fires have somewhat marred its sylvan beauty since his visit. The excursion may be made in one day; but travellers are strongly recommended, if possible, to stay some days at the head of the lake, and make further expeditions thence. The first question to decide will be whether to stay at *Kinloch* or *Glenorchy*. The answer is that there are lovely excursions from both places, and travellers having leisure should stay at both; those pressed

for time must choose which excursions they prefer, and decide accordingly.

Starting from *Queenstown*, *Mts. Cecil, Walter, Aston, and Nicholas*, and the *Von R.*, are seen across the lake. The steamer then rounds *White's Point*, and the panorama of the *Upper Arm* is seen. To the rt. are the *Richardson Mts.*, culminating in *Stone Peak*; then in the distance *Mt. Earnslaw*, with its large glacier; then *Mt. Alfred* and *Mt. Cosmos*. Nearer, to the l. come the *Humboldts*, the chief of which, *Mt. Bonpland*, rises sheer above *Kinloch*. Further l. are the valley of the *Greenstone R.*, and *Tooth Peaks*. Passing *Long Island, Pigeon Island, and Rabbit Island, Greenstone Gorge* (which leads to *Rere Lake*) is seen on the l. Steaming along some 6 m. under the slopes of the *Humboldts*—once densely clothed with bush, now sadly injured by fires—*Kinloch* is reached.

30 m. **Kinloch**.

Hotel: *Glacier* (comfortable).

Horses, 7s. 6d. to 10s. a day; guides, 10s. to 15s. Boat, free; boatmen to *Rere Lake*, &c., 8s. each.

EXCURSIONS FROM KINLOCH.

(It is well in all of these to take a guide, as mountain mists may come on unexpectedly.)

(1) To the **Bryant Glacier**. Time: one day.

The glacier lies on *Mt. Bonpland*, almost behind the hotel, and may be clearly seen from the birch-trees studding the flat between the tram line and the *Dart*. The track leads right to the ice, whence a fine view of *Earnslaw*, the glaciers of the *Dart* and the *Forbes*, and the *Richardson Mts.* may be obtained.

(2) To **Rere Lake**. 8 m. boat, then 2 m. on foot. Time: one day.

A calm day should be chosen. The boat goes down the lake as far as *Elfin Bay*. At the landing-place

will be seen an old hut and woolshed (now deserted), and the track to Rere Lake will be found behind the latter. Arrived at the top of the terrace, the traveller should look at the view of *Earnslaw* and the *Richardson Mts.* The path then enters the bush, passes an old shingle-splitter's camp, goes beneath some lofty silver birch trees, and out into the open again. The cliffs of *Tooth Peak* and a pretty cascade are seen on the l. The path then re-enters the forest, and in a few minutes reaches the lake, which is $\frac{1}{2}$ m. long, of oval form, surrounded on three sides by forest, with *Bald Peak* rising above. It is very lovely.

(3) To *Sylvan Lake, Paradise,* and the *Valley of the Dart.* 14 m. *Guide and horse, 15s.*; extra horses, 7s. 6d. each. Time: one day.

If the traveller intends making a stay at Glenorchy as well as at Kinloch, this trip may be limited to *Sylvan Lake*, the rest being more accessible from Glenorchy. And if, whilst at Kinloch, he intends making the *Routeburn Valley* excursion (see below), *Sylvan Lake* may be added to it by making a slight digression.

The trip to *Sylvan Lake* and back is about 24 m. It may be done on foot.

The track goes through the bush for a mile or two, and then the valley opens out into a beautiful grassy glade. Here the view is very fine; *Mts. Alfred* and *Earnslaw* to the rt., the *Humboldt's* to the l., the valley of the *Dart*, hemmed in by the *Forbes Mts.*, in front. At 6 m. *Ludemann's Station* is reached. 1 m. after leaving the Station, the *Martin's Bay* track is left, the *Routeburn R.* must be forded, and a track taken to the rt.

(4) *Routeburn Valley* and *Lake Harris Saddle.* 19 m. *Guide and horse, 15s.* a day; additional horses, 10s. each. Time: two days.

A horse is necessary to carry the

blankets and provisions; but travellers can, if they wish it, walk.

As far as *Ludemann's Station*, see last excursion.

After this, continue the *Martin's Bay Track*, which enters the bush and skirts the *Routeburn R.* Before fording the river, a waterfall 700 ft. high is seen. Soon after, the path rises rapidly by a zigzag, and then continues through bush until the *Upper Routeburn Flat* is reached. Recrossing the stream, a few minutes takes the traveller to the *Government Hut*, 15 m. from Kinloch, 1,500 ft. above Wakatipu. Here a halt should be made for the night.

The next morning, the track (which will be found at the back of the hut) leads upwards through the forest. The bush level is reached at 3,000 ft., and then the track goes through a grassy valley in which the mountain lily (*ramunculus lyalli*) grows abundantly, to *Lake Harris*. Ascending the steep slope on the l., a path goes up to the highest point (4,900 ft.), and a few minutes more take the traveller to the Saddle. The view** from this point is splendid, but not equal to that from the Trig. station either to the rt. or l., whence may be seen *Lakes McKerrow, Gunn, Fergus, Howden,* and *McKellar*, and *Mts. Tutoko, Christina*, and many lesser peaks, and several glaciers.

The return journey to Kinloch can be done the same day.

31 m. Glenorchy.

Hotels: Earnslaw; Alpine Club; Glenorchy.

Horses, 10s. a day; *guides, 10s.* to £1; *boat and man, 15s.*; *buggies, £1 5s.* to £2.

EXCURSIONS FROM GLENORCHY.

(1) To *Diamond Lake* and *Paradise.* 13 m. Time: one day, whether by carriage, on horseback, or on foot.

The road follows the rt. bank of the *Rees* near to the *Oxburn*; then crosses the river and trends towards

the exit of the *Earnslaw Creek*, shortly after which *Diamond Lake* is seen. Skirting the lake through beautiful bush the traveller enters *Paradise Flat*, a settled farming district, once peopled by Maoris, as several stone implements which have been found here testify. About 1 m. further on, the *Dart Valley* is reached. At *Paradise Flat* is an accommodation house (comfortable). Travellers will do well to stop there and make excursions thence to the *Lennox Falls* and other spots. A coach in connexion with the accommodation house meets the steamer at Glenorchy.

(2) **Rees Valley.** From 12 to 22 m. Time: one day by buggy, on horseback, or on foot.

The road crosses *Temple Burn*, and proceeds up a lovely valley with several waterfalls. Splendid views of *Temple Peak*, *Mt. Aurum*, *Stair Peak*, *Centre Peak*, *Mt. Arnstead*, and other mts. are seen. At 20 m. is reached the *Lennox Falls*, which range from 100 to 300 ft.

(3) **To the Scheelite Mine and Stone Peak.** Time: one day.

The track goes up *Buckler Burn* (famous for its gold) and along the side of *Mt. Judah*. From the saddle a splendid view is obtained of many mountain peaks lying towards *Lake Wanaka*; but it is much better to extend the excursion by ascending *Stone Peak* or *Temple Peak*. From the summit of either may be seen *Lakes Wanaka* and *Hawea*; and the whole panorama is marvellous and sublime.

(4) **To the Mt. Earnslaw Glaciers.** Time: drive 1½ hours; climb to ridge 2½ hours; and from ridge to glacier 2½ hours.

The excursion can thus, if necessary, be done in one long day; it is better however to allow two or even three.

The road goes up the *Rees R.* to the open ground which extends to the *Diamond Lakes*. The views are magnificent.

(5) **To the Mount Earnslaw Glaciers and to within 500 ft. of the summit of the mountain.**

To *Lennox Falls* 20 m.; climb 7 m. Time: at least three days.

The traveller rides up the *Rees Valley* to the *Lennox Falls* (see Excursion 2); and then climbs through the forest and camps at a spot above the bush line (at an altitude of 4,000 ft. above the sea). The next day he ascends over grass and rocky slopes and *néve* to an altitude of 8,000 ft., returning in the evening to his camping ground. This climb can be undertaken by good walkers. It is somewhat tedious, but the views are magnificent. The complete ascent of the mt. should only be undertaken by experienced Alpine climbers. It has been twice made during recent years.

NOTE.—The above are but a few of the innumerable excursions which mountaineers may make from Kinloch and Glenorchy.

ROUTE 32.

LUMSDEN TO LAKES TE ANAU AND MANAPOURI.

This excursion is somewhat tiring, but includes scenery of great beauty. It should occupy at least seven days from Invercargill, or nine from Dunedin. Te Anau is the largest, and Manapouri is the loveliest, of all the lakes in the Island. Until recently they have been difficult of access; probably they will soon be as familiar to tourists as Wakatipu is now. If the traveller is not a mere tourist but an explorer, prepared for hard work, this part of the country will offer him a splendid field; for of the district W. of the *Waiau*, the southern portion, though laid down on the maps, has been but roughly surveyed; and a large track to the N. is still marked as 'unexplored at present.'

The district was at one time peopled by the Ngatimamoe tribe, but they were destroyed by marauding bands from the E. coast. Various battles were fought, on the banks of the *Aparima R.* and elsewhere. It is now almost certain that the Ngatimamoe are extinct, although for a long time it was hoped that a few survivors might be found in the mountain fastnesses. Many remains—stone weapons, ornaments, and eeltraps of wood and flax—have been found by Mr. W. S. Mitchell and other collectors.

The lakes abound with eels, and trout have been placed in both lakes and in the rivers. Excellent fishing may already be obtained.

It is possible to ride or drive from Otautau to Manapouri; but the only way that can yet be described as a tourist route is by Lumsden. From that point a coach goes to Te Anau via the Key; and a branch coach goes from the Key to Manapouri. Buggies may also be hired

at Lumsden, 25s. a day; longer periods by arrangement.

Those who wish to visit both lakes should arrange to drive from one to the other direct, instead of going round by the Key. As there is no buggy at Manapouri, travellers arriving there first should tell the driver of the coach from Lumsden to direct the buggy from Te Anau to be sent to Manapouri to fetch them.

For travellers who intend returning to Lumsden it is immaterial which lake is first visited. Those who contemplate proceeding by the Sutherland Falls to Milford Sound in order to catch the steamer, should go to Manapouri first. (As will appear below, the plan most recommended is to visit the Sounds first, and then come from Milford down Lake Te Anau.)

LUMSDEN TO TE ANAU. 53 m. coach.

The road at first lies through an undulating country, very sparsely settled, and follows the same route as the Rly. To the rt. may be seen the *EYRE Mts.* (named after the Lt.-Governor of New Munster. See Rte. 16).

12 m. *Mossburn.*

Hotels: Railway; Commercial.

A small township, the terminus of the branch rly.

Proceeding up the valley of the *ORETI*, a fine view of the *TAKITIMU Mts.* is obtained on the l. To the rt. may be seen the *WEST DOME Mt.*

According to Maori tradition, the *Takitimu* was one of the canoes which brought their ancestors from *Hawaiki*.

It has been turned into stone; the sails of the canoe now form the Five Rivers Plain.

17 m. Centre Hill. *Accommodation House*, where the coach stops for lunch.

[A road branches off to the rt. to Burwood Forest, and so on to Lake Wakatipu. It is rough, and but little used. The Mavora Lakes, which are up the valley of the Mararoa R., a little way off this road, are very beautiful, but as yet inaccessible for tourists.]

27 m. The *Saddle*, at the head of the *Weydon Burn*, commands the first view of the W. Coasts Mts. The road then proceeds down *Gorge Creek* into the valley of the *Mararoa*.

35 m. 'The Key.' *Accommodation House* (comfortable), 8s. a day.

A good place for fishermen and sportsmen to stay at and make excursions from.

[Not long after passing the Key, the road to Manapouri (16 m.) diverges to the l. and some little time after it has left the Te Anau Rd., it traverses the *White Stone Creek* (a famous trout stream) and passing *Mt. York*, crosses the *Home Creek* at the *Birch Tree Crossing*.]

Soon after leaving the Key, the *Mararoa River* is forded; and before long the road to Manapouri turns off to the l.

The undulating country which the route now follows affords no specially interesting scenery, except for the grand view of the western mts. which is seen in front.

45 m. *Lynwood Station*.

53 m. Te Anau. *Snodgrass' Hotel*, at the S. end of the LAKE.

The lake is 38 m. long and 1 to 6 broad. It lies at an altitude of 694 ft. above the sea. The three Western Arms or Fiords are from 10 to 18 m. long and from 1 to 3 broad. The total area of the lake is 132 square miles. It is almost surrounded by mountains densely clothed with forest, and contains innumerable islands; but here, as in many of the

larger lakes of N. Z., the scenery at the lower end is inferior to that at the upper, the land to the S.E. being almost flat.

There is a steam launch that may be hired (£5 per day), and boats and buggies may be procured at the hotel.

Sailing boats, 10s. and 5s. a day, according to size; *Guides*, 10s. a day. *Buggy and pair*, 25s. *Horse*, 10s.

EXCURSIONS.

(1) To the **Maori kaik**. About 1 m. from the hotel, near the mouth of the *Upukerora R.*, are the remains of an extensive Maori kaik. It was abandoned early in the present century, when the natives went to live near Foveaux Straits in consequence of the opportunities of trading with the whalers there. Hardly any remains of the kaik are left.

(2) To **Lake Manapouri**. 13 m. driving.

The road for about 6 m. follows the course of the *Waiau*, across which fine views of the mountains to the W. are obtained. Travellers should pause at the *Horse Shoes Bend*, to enjoy the full beauty of the exquisite view**.

13 m. **Manapouri**. The derivation of the name is uncertain. **Murrell's Hotel** is beautifully situated at the S.E. end of the lake, where the *Waiau R.* flows from it. The view* from the hotel—including mountain, forest, and lake—is magnificent.

The area of the lake is estimated at 50 sq. m.; but its shape is so peculiar that the extent can hardly be determined with accuracy. The lake is almost surrounded with mountains, rising from 6,000 to 7,500 ft. above the sea; the slopes of these, up to an altitude of about 3,000 ft., and the islets in the lake are densely clothed with rich forest growth.

There is a small steam launch, which may be hired; and sailing

and rowing boats may be procured at the hotel. Every excursion is full of beauty. Of the many islands in the lake, the two largest are named *Rona* and *Pomona*. In every arm are beautiful beaches which form excellent camping grounds.

The first arm that is reached on the l. is called '*Monument Arm*,' from the hill at the head of it. Next comes '*Grebe Arm*,' about 6 m. in length; near the head of it is a beautiful waterfall, known as '*Kelpie's Pool*.'

The next—*South West Arm*—points towards the coast. Passing up it, the *Leaning Peak* (upwards of 5,000 ft. high) will be seen; it is easily accessible. At the head of the arm the *Spey R.* runs into the lake; and a short walk through the forest leads to two lovely little lakelets. Many efforts have been made to find a route from here to the Sounds. In Dec. 1888, Professor Mainwaring Brown, of the University of Otago, who was engaged on one of these expeditions, left his companions at what is now known as '*Disaster Burn*,' and was never seen again. Messrs Barber and Murrell, when searching vainly for his body, crossed over the pass and on Jan. 4, 1889, reached the head of Deep Cove, Smith's Sound.

The N.W. arm has been named '*St. Paul's Arm*,' from the large dome-shaped mountain at the head of the lake.

In returning, the boat skirts along the N. shore, and passes by *Pomona Island* and the '*Beehive*,' a striking wooded headland jutting out into the lake. At the back of the *Beehive* is a small lake named *Eastmere*, famous for duck, black swans, crested grebe, and wild fowl. It was celebrated as an eeling place in Maori times. The boat next passes *Rona* and *Midwinter Islands*, and the place where the *Waiau* flows in from Lake Te Anau; and then skirts the eastern shore back to the hotel.

[An adventurous party has succeeded in canoeing down the *Waiau R.* to the mouth; but the passage is dangerous.]

[From Manapouri a road leads back to the Key, 16 m. See above.]

The principal excursions on Lake Te Anau are:—

(1) Up the *S. Fiord*. By steam launch £1 per head per day. One day by steamer or sailing boat. At the entrance to the Fiord, the *Dome Islands* (which contain an excellent harbour and camping ground) are passed. On the main land to the rt. is *Garden Point*, where Mr. M'Kinnon, the well-known guide and the discoverer of the Pass to the Sutherland Falls, lived. He was drowned in the lake, opposite the N. Fiord, in November, 1892.

The scenery gets finer as the Fiord narrows. Close to its mouth, on the mainland to the l., are several little lakelets of great beauty. Arrangements are being made for placing small boats on these lakelets.

From the head of the S. Fiord to Thompson Sound is but 8 m. as the crow flies; but no pass has as yet been discovered.

(2) To the mouth of the *Middle Fiord* and round the *Islands*. One day by steamer (£1 5s. per head) or sailing boat. At the entrance is a lovely group of wooded islets divided by narrow channels. The excursion may be extended by going up the Fiord; but, unless the weather is very favourable, this necessitates camping out or sleeping on board the steamer.

In 1887 Messrs. M'Kinnon and Tucker crossed from the S.W. arm of the Middle Fiord to the neighbourhood of Caswell Sound.

In 1889 Mr. R. Henry crossed from the N.W. arm to George Sound. The distance is only 13 m., and includes three small lakes, one of which (*Lake Hankinson*) is very beautiful.

(3) To the *N. Fiord*. £1 10s. per head by steamer. This may be

taken as a two days' excursion by steamer or sailing boat, from the hotel; or it may be made part of a longer excursion that would include the head of the Lake (£2 per head by steamer). The N. Fiord is less wide than the others, especially at one point called '*The Narrows*,' where it hardly exceeds a stone's throw in breadth. The cliffs are precipitous, and the scenery very grand. At the entrance to the Fiord the lake attains the depth of 970 ft.

(4) To the **Head of the Lakes**. £1 10s. per head by steamer. Two days by steamer or sailing boat; the night being spent either on board the steamer, camping out, or in the Government Hut at the mouth of the *Clinton*. (Before long, however, a house will be erected at the head of the lake.) The scenery steadily increases in grandeur as the head of the lake is approached and the snow-clad mountains become nearer.

After passing *Leo Island* there is a beautiful Harbour called *Safe Cove* on the W. side of the lake. At the Head, the lake divides into two; the Western branch leads to the valley of the *WORSLEY R.*, a deep gorge clothed with rich forest growth. About $\frac{3}{4}$ m. from the mouth of the river, a lovely waterfall (the *Margaret Fall*) is seen. The Eastern branch leads to the *CLINTON R.*, at the mouth of which the Government have placed a hut for the convenience of tourists going to the Sutherland Falls.

(5) To the **Sutherland Falls**. This is the most favourite excursion of all. The Falls were discovered by Messrs. Sutherland and Mackay (who went up from Milford Sound) in 1880; the pass from Te Anau was discovered by Messrs. McKinnon and Mitchell in 1888. It is now comparatively easy for good walkers; several ladies have made the excursion. The route from Milford Sound is however much easier than that from Te Anau, but of course

does not include the *Clinton Valley*.

If the weather is favourable, the excursion takes four days from the Hotel to *Milford Sound*; the first night being spent in the hut at the mouth of the *Clinton* (see Excursion 4); the second in the hut at the foot of the saddle; the third at *Beech Hut*; and the fourth at the Hotel at *Milford Sound*. But at least one extra day should be allowed, in case of detention by heavy rain.

A guide is not absolutely necessary, but all tourists are recommended to take one, to help in carrying baggage and in making the party comfortable at the huts. Guides can be obtained at the hotel.

Until better arrangements are made at the huts, travellers must take their own blankets or rugs and provisions. These should be wrapped up in waterproof sheeting. It is best to procure this outfit at Dunedin or Invercargill. Ere long, however, supplies of blankets and tinned meat will be placed at the huts.

After leaving the *first hut*, the track goes up the *Valley of the Clinton*, through bush almost the whole way. The Valley is about $\frac{1}{2}$ m. in width, the sides being almost precipitous, and from 4,000 to 7,000 ft. high. After rain, numerous waterfalls of great height pour down the cliffs. Several glaciers are seen; the largest of them, the *Jervois glacier*, being the main source of the river. The *St. Quentin Falls* may be observed on the rt.; they are well worthy of a visit.

The walk to the hut at the foot of the saddle takes seven or eight hours; an early start is recommended, as travellers will wish to stop and enjoy the magnificent scenery.

The second day's walk is not long, but it includes the climbing of the saddle, which is 1,400 ft. in height, the summit being 3,400 ft. above sea level. The climb is an easy one; the first two-thirds being through bush and the last one-third over open ground, covered with rich masses of the beautiful Alpine

flora of N. Z. On this open ground, as there is no track, poles have been set up as marks; travellers must follow these carefully. The panorama from the summit** including the views down into the Arthur Valley on the one side and the Clinton Valley on the other, with the Jervois glacier and the amphitheatre of mountains above, is one of the finest in the district.

The descent to the *Beech Huts* is more than 2,000 ft. When the bush line is reached, the track follows the course of *Roaring Creek*, on which some fine rapids and falls may be noticed.

The walk to the *Beech Huts* takes from five to six hours. Baggage is left there; and the *Sutherland Falls* (about 1 m. from the huts) may be visited in the afternoon; the track is good.

The Falls consist of three leaps; the upper leap being 815 ft., the middle one 751 ft., and the lower leap 338 ft.; making in all 1,904 ft. A comparison is often made between them and the great Yosemite Waterfalls in California, which are said to be 2,548 ft.; but it must be remembered that that height is made up of the Upper Fall of 1,502 ft., the Lower Fall of 487 ft., and the rapids between them of about $\frac{1}{2}$ m. long, having a total fall of 559 ft.

From the *Beech huts* the traveller may either return to *Te Anau* or go on to *Milford Sound*. Should he decide on the latter, an easy track, following down the *Arthur R.*, leads

in about $5\frac{1}{2}$ m. to the point where the boat must be taken. From there to the lower end of *Lake Ada* is 4 m. The formation of the lake is interesting; it has been caused by a large landslip in comparatively recent times; the tops of the beech trees which once grew beside the R. now form snags in the lake. The scenery of the Arthur Valley is inferior only to that of the Clinton. From the lake to *Milford Sound* is an easy road of 2 m., constructed by prison labour. At the end of the road a boat is taken for about three-quarters of an hour to *Sutherland's Hotel*, on the other side of the *Cleddau River*.

The only difficulty about the *Milford Sound* route is securing a boat to go down *Lake Ada*, and finding a steamer leaving *Milford Sound*. Travellers who intend taking it should therefore fit in their programme so as to meet the excursion steamer (see Rte. 33) and communicate with the Union S.S. Co. before leaving *Dunedin* or *Invercargill*.

Those who wish to combine the *Sounds* and the *Lakes* trips are however recommended to do so by taking the *Sounds* trip first, and then going from *Milford Sound* to *Te Anau*. Those who wish to do so should write to the *Hotel keeper* at *Te Anau* before leaving the *Bluff* for the *Sounds*; he will arrange to have a guide in readiness at *Milford Sound* (guide's fee £5) and the steam launch waiting at the head of *Lake Te Anau*.

ROUTE 33.

TO THE WEST COAST SOUNDS.

This beautiful excursion is one that no tourist should omit, and since the whole of it is made by water, and much of it through lake-like inlets, none need be deterred by fear of fatigue. It combines the grandeur of the Norwegian Fiords with a wealth of almost tropical vegetation; in fact, it may be described as an Alpine trip by steamer.

The best way to go is in a steam yacht; (and if the traveller does not mind the cold, the weather is often at its best and the scenery most lovely in May and June); but those who do not possess such a luxury should join one of the excursions of the Union S.S. Co. There are usually three of these every summer; two in Jan. and one in Feb. The comfortable steamer *Tarawera* is the one generally selected. Fare £12; the trip taking eight days. The dates of the excursions are advertised some weeks previously.

The programme of the steamer is as follows:—

Wednesday.—Leave Port Chalmers at 5 p.m.

Thursday.—Call at the Bluff early in the morning; proceed thence to *Preservation Inlet*; visit *Long Sound* and return to *Cuttle Cove* for the night.

Friday.—Spend the day at *Cuttle Cove*, making excursions.

Saturday.—Leave *Cuttle Cove* at 5 a.m., for *Dusky Sound*; go to the head of the Sound, and make for *Wet Jacket Arm*, where the night is spent.

Sunday.—Leave *Wet Jacket Arm* at 5 a.m. for *Doubtful* and *Smith Sounds*,

proceeding thence through *Thompson Sound* to *George Sound*, at the head of which the night is spent.

Monday.—Spend the day in *George Sound*.

Tuesday.—Leave *George Sound* at daylight, reach *Milford Sound* at 8 a.m., and proceed to the head of the Sound. Travellers wishing to visit the *Sutherland Falls* then make the expedition.

Wednesday.—Leave *Milford Sound* in the afternoon.

Thursday.—Call at the Bluff.

Friday.—Arrive at Port Chalmers in the morning.

<i>Distances.</i>	<i>Miles.</i>
Port Chalmers to Bluff	139
Bluff to Long Sound	98
Long Sound to Cuttle Cove . . .	15
Cuttle Cove to Dusky Sound . . .	50
Dusky Sound to Wet Jacket Arm .	19
Wet Jacket Arm to Hall's Arm . .	49
Hall's Arm to George Sound . . .	59
George Sound to Milford Sound .	43
Milford Sound to Bluff	217
Bluff to Port Chalmers	139

828

Travellers should provide themselves with protection against sandflies in the shape of veils, gloves, indiarubber bands to keep down coat cuffs, and plenty of ammonia or a mixture of acetic and carbolic acid.

Passengers by the *Tarawera* are provided with fishing appliances, &c. Shooting is not recommended, as everything that can be called game is protected during the summer season.

Admiralty Charts (which may be purchased at the office of the Col-

lector of Customs at Dunedin or Invercargill) add greatly to the interest of the excursion.

After leaving Port Chalmers and passing the Heads, the steamer rounds the bold headland of *Cape Saunders*; and then takes a S.W. course passing the coast of the *Peninsula* and the *Ocean Beach*, and making a direct run for *Nugget Point* (see Rte. 26). Other headlands are passed; notably *Chasland's Mistake*, named after 'Tommy Chasland,' an Australian half-caste whaler, about whose almost superhuman powers many stories are told. It is said that his sight was so keen that he could track a sounding whale under the ocean! He once navigated an open sealing boat from the Chatham Islands to N. Z.; and on one of his voyages he mistook this headland for Cape Saunders. The point is about the middle of the *Tautuku Forest*.

After passing *Waipapa Point* (see Rte. 26), *Foveaux Straits*, which divide the S. Island from Stewart Island, is entered, and *Ruapuke Island* (see Rte. 30) passed on the l.

From the *Bluff* the course runs along the S. coast, which is inhabited as far as the *Waiatu R.*; beyond this, only a few adventurous spirits have yet settled; in addition to whom are the gold seekers at *Wilson R.* and *Coal Island*—two small fields recently opened.

The steamer then passes *Centre Island* (called *Rarotonga* by the Maoris—a name brought by them when they first came from their northern home) and the *Solander Islands*; so named by Capt. Cook after the Swedish botanist who accompanied him.

The Sounds are thirteen in number, counting the entrances from the ocean; but several of these are considerably ramified within, and in two instances they are in pairs, connected inland and separated at the mouth by large Islands. The

whole region is of granite and allied rocks; excepting a district about the mouth of Preservation Inlet and Chalky Sound, where coal and limestone are found. It is in this district alone that gold has been discovered.

The Sounds are manifestly of glacial origin, though the ranges behind them, being of considerably less altitude than the Southern Alps of Canterbury, no longer carry large snow fields or glaciers. The best evidence of ancient glaciation is found in their similarity to the Fjords of Norway and similar regions in British Columbia and about Cape Horn. A glance at the map shows how closely the Sounds correspond in character with the arms of Lake Te Anau and Manapouri; the glaciers of both having originally been fed from the same snow fields. That moraines exist at the mouths of most of them may be inferred from the fact that the soundings there show a depth of 40 fathoms or less, whilst further in they frequently exceed 100 fathoms. *Roches moutonnées* are seen at a few points; but in most places are masked by the dense growth of vegetation which the intensely humid atmosphere nourishes at every part. The steepness of the land, which rises almost sheer from the water's edge, and exhibits only here and there a flat surface, and the great rainfall, amounting to about 120 inches in the year, militate against the permanent settlement of this beautiful region; but the excellence of the timber at a few accessible spots, and the great abundance of fish, give promise that one day it may prove of commercial value to the Colony. At present it is purely the resort of pleasure seekers; as, apart from the small mining population already referred to, the coast is absolutely uninhabited for more than 120 miles.

(1) **Preservation Inlet**, leading into Long Sound, 20 m. in length. The usual anchorage is at *Cuttle Cove*, which is dotted with tree-clad

islands. On each side of the sound are long ranges of mountains rising above the forest line to an altitude of upwards of 4,000 feet, some of the distant peaks covered with perpetual snow.

Various fishing and sketching excursions may be made.

(2) **Chalky or Dark Cloud Inlet.** This Sound divides into two; the southern, *Cunaris*, being 5 m. long; the northern, *Edwardsen*, 6 m. At the entrance is *Chalky Island*, whose cliffs formed a well-known landmark for the early navigators.

(3) **Dusky Sound** (called *Dusky Bay* by Capt. Cook, who discovered it on his first voyage and entered it on his second). He then formed his camp at *Pickersgill Harbour*; the stumps of the trees which he had cut were found in 1862. *Goose Cove*, *Cormorant Cove*, and *Five Fingers Peninsula* were named by Capt. Cook; *Facile Harbour* by Vancouver. In *Facile Harbour* near the beach to the l. may still be seen below the surface the wreck of the *Endeavour*, a Sydney vessel which put in here leaking about a century ago. Her crew built a small vessel and escaped to Norfolk Island. *Resolution Island* was named after one of Cook's ships.

The Sound is 22 m. long; the steamer passes *Indian Island*, *Long Island*, and *Cooper Island*. On the N. side is *Docherty's landing*; in the vicinity is the *Asbestos lode*, and on the opposite side the now abandoned *copper mine*. Large steamers seldom anchor in the Sound as, though it is very deep, it is not free from dangers in the more interesting portion near the mouth, and is still imperfectly surveyed. The vessel on leaving the Sound enters the cross channel *Acheron passage* (named after H. M. S. *Acheron*, in which Capt. Stokes conducted the surveys on which the Admiralty chart is based), called '*Nobody knows what*' by Capt. Cook's party, who did not pass com-

pletely through it. The vessel then runs up *Wet Jacket Arm*, the head of which is one of the most striking parts of the Sounds.

The steamer then proceeds along *Acheron passage* and goes to sea through *Breaksea Sound*.

(4) **Breaksea Sound.** This Sound divides into two, near its head; it is about 20 m. long. The head of the *Northerly Arm* (*Vancouver*) closely approaches the head of *Hall's Arm* in *Doubtful Sound*.

(5) **Dagg's Sound.** A small Sound seldom visited, named after an old whaler, Capt. Dagg.

(6) **Doubtful Sound.** This Sound, by either of the main branches which may be said to be common to it and to *Thompson Sound* (from which it is separated by *Secretary Island*), runs inland for some 30 m. The meeting-place of the four Sounds is a broad sheet, one of the finest pieces of still water in this region; and in it are generally seen sea cows, porpoises, and similar marine mammals.

Doubtful Sound has several minor branches, one of which—*Deep Cove*—probably approaches within less than 12 m. of *Lake Manapouri*, to which a high pass has been discovered (see Rte. 32). *Rolla Island*, near the head of *Smith Sound*, is a spot of great beauty. In the passage inside this, the *Tarawera* struck in 1883 with 80 fathoms alongside. The branch to the S., called *Hall's Arm*, 16½ m. from the entrance, is seldom entered by steamer, having a danger at its mouth. It is said to be of extraordinary grandeur. *Bradshaw Sound* is sometimes visited, having a convenient anchorage at the head.

(7) **Thompson Sound** gives another access from the sea to this ramified series of arms. Towards its mouth on the N. side is *Deas Cove*, a snug anchorage for smaller vessels. *Secretary Island* (named after Sir E.

Deas Thompson, formerly Colonial Secretary of New South Wales, of which N. Z. was at the time a dependency) is somewhat similar in character to Resolution Island. From each of these islands a single specimen of the Tikahé (*Notornis Mantelli*) has been obtained. This bird, a giant coot, is now extremely rare, if not extinct. The two specimens referred to are in the British Museum; whilst a third, obtained at Te Anau, was purchased for £120 for the Dresden Museum. *Roches moutonnées* are seen on this island.

(8) **Nancy Sound.** A small sound not often visited.

(9) **Charles Sound.** A small branded sound, not often visited.

(10) **Caswell Sound.** 9½ m. Near the mouth of this is a marble quarry which was for some time worked experimentally by a company. It may yet be found to supply building stone of great beauty and value. A pass to Te Anau has been discovered (see Rte. 32).

(11) **George Sound.** 12 m. This is a favourite anchorage, and affords many excursions by boat. Amongst these may be mentioned that to the waterfall close to the anchorage, and the little lake above it. A pass to Te Anau has been discovered (see Rte. 32). Here were found the last traces of the Ngatimaoe, who were driven to the mountains during the last century, and vindictively pursued even in their refuge. Though the smoke of their fires was reported to have been seen as lately as 1872, they are now probably extinct.

(12) **Bligh Sound.** Now seldom visited. In this sound, H.M.S. *Clio* struck on a sunken rock and had to be beached; but Sir James Hector, who was on board, passed up the coast to Martin's Bay, and made his way thence through the forest and over one of the passes into

the interior, and telegraphed for assistance from Queenstown.

N. of this is **Sutherland Sound**, recently discovered by an explorer of that name. It is not separately numbered, as it differs from the true Sounds in having a shallow entrance almost closed by a bar.

(13) **Milford Sound.** The grandest of the series. At the mouth is *Anita Bay*, suitable for small vessels. It is difficult to anchor large steamers in this landlocked bay; because if water shallow enough for the anchor to reach the bottom is chosen, the vessel is so near the land that its stern must swing against the shore. In any case an anchor dropped upon the sloping bottom will not hold a vessel; it must also be tied to the trees.

This stupendous inlet is, as it were, chiselled out of the solid rock of the mountain range which rises thousands of feet on every side.

Wherever vegetation could get a footing on these immense precipices lovely tree-ferns and darker shrubs grew in profusion, all dripping with moisture, and running up the cliffs in long strips of verdure till lost to our view aloft in the torn white mists. The vivid green of the foliage was the feature of all this wondrous scene which struck me most. Two or three miles up the Sound, we steamed close to an immense waterfall which, in one plunge of 300 ft., leaped into the Sound with a roar like thunder, drowning our voices and sending great gushes of spray over the steamer's deck. The face of another great cliff was so draped with numberless small falls that it seemed to be covered with a veil of silver gauze about 300 yards in width. . . . As we entered the inner basin of the Sound the forest increased in beauty. The totara pines, draped with festoons of grey lichen, contrasted well with the soft green of the great fern-fronds, and formed a suitable background to the scarlet blossoms of the rata (*Metrosideros lucida*) which here and there lit up the upper surface of the forest with patches of intense colour. Gleams of sunshine began to dart through the clouds, giving a momentary flash on

one of the numerous cascades, and then, passing over forest and cliff, added new beauties of light and shade. When about 8 m. from the open sea a booming sound rose higher over the voices of the numerous cascades, growing louder as we advanced, and rounding a forest-clad point we came upon . . . the great Bowen Fall. Its first fall is only about 50 ft. into a rocky basin, but, leaping from it upwards and outwards in a most wonderful curve, it plunges down with a deafening roar in a single leap of 300 ft.' *W. S. Green.*

On the beach is found the *Tangi-wai*, a soft kind of nephrite (greenstone) much prized by the Maoris for making transparent ornaments. It is chemically different from the true nephrite found further N.

Stirling Falls are seen on the N. side, 500 ft. high. *Harrison Cove* is next reached; and beyond it is obtained a fine view of *Pembroke Peak* (6,710 ft.), with snow fields and a small glacier. Near the head of the Sound is the *Bowen Fall* (530 ft.), the water of which, gushing into a basin, spouts up to some height before falling. Beautiful orchids grow on the trees near the Fall; and on the rocks are seen mountain asters. Close by is *Sutherland's hut*. Large vessels may here enter the freshwater basin. On the N. side rises the *Darran Range* with *Tutoko* (9,042 ft.) and other peaks over 7,000 ft. Perhaps the most striking feature is the remarkably-shaped *MITRE PEAK*, rising abruptly to a height of 5,560 ft. immediately over the S. side of the Sound.

EXCURSION.

To the **Sutherland Falls****. This excursion owes its charm not merely to the Falls themselves, but also to the beauty of the scenery on the way. It takes one and a half days, the night being spent at *Beech hut*. Passengers by the *Tarawera* have to carry their blankets and provisions for the night.

The landing is about 1 m. from the moorings. Thence a walk on a beautifully formed track to the foot of *Lake Ada* (2 m.). Passengers are then rowed across the lake by the guides, the passage being somewhat difficult for an inexperienced person, owing to the submerged snags. The lake is about 2 m. long. On leaving the lake the boats proceed up the *Arthur R.* to the beginning of the track cut alongside the river up to the *Falls* (see page 152). From leaving the boat, the distance to the Falls is about 7 m. The track is perfectly easy even for the poorest walker; it may be done in safety alone. At present a fee of £1 a head is demanded by the guide, but this includes the use of the boat, which belongs to the Union Co.

The Sounds trip may be combined with that to Lakes Te Anau and Manapouri by going on from the Sutherland Falls over the pass to Lake Te Anau (see Rte. 32). A guide from Lake Te Anau meets the *Tarawera* at Milford; travellers can arrange to go with him.



INDEX.

- A.
- Abbotsford, p. 124.
 Acheron Passage, 155.
 Ada, Lake, 157, 152.
 Addington, 95, 104.
 Afton Peak, 144, 145.
Agricultural Statistics, [61].
 Ahaura B., 87.
 Ahuahu, 68.
 Ahuriri bridge, Napier, 37.
 Ahuriri Pass, Canterbury, 116.
 Ahuriri Plains, Napier, 43.
 Ahuriri, Port, Napier, 42.
 Ahuriri B., Canterbury, 116, 128.
 Akaroa, 102, 103.
 Albert, Mt., Auckland, 3, 10.
 Albert, Mt., Otago, 129.
 Albert Town, 129, 130.
 Albury, 113.
Alcester, Lord, 62.
 Alexander, Mt., 90.
 Alexandra, Auckland, 54.
 Alexandra, Otago, 128, 125.
 Alexandrina, Lake, Canterbury, 114.
 Alfred, Mt., 145, 146.
 Allandale, 108.
 Allen's Hill, 68.
Alligator, H. M. S., 69.
Alpine Flora, 111, 112, 90, 151.
 Alps, Southern, 64, 89, 110, 131, 133, 154.
 Alum Cave, Orakeikorako, 29.
 Alum Cliffs, Waiotapu, 27.
 Amberley, 94.
 Amuri Bluff, 93.
 Anaura, 25.
 Anderson's Bay, 117, 122.
 Anglem, Mt., 140, 141.
Animal Life in N. Z., [44]-[45].
 Anita Bay, 156.
 Antipodes Island, 141.
Aohehu, 71.
 Aorangi (Mt. Cook), 114.
 Aorangi, Wellington, 73.
Aotea Canoe, 57.
 Aparima B., 139, 140, 148.
 Appleby, 83.
 Arahura, 88.
 Aramoho, 53, 70, 72.
 Arapawa Island, 78.
 Aratapu, 9.
Arawa, [4], [49], [52], 3, 22, 38, 39, 49.
 Arawata B., 136.
 Arika-kapa-kapa, 18.
 Arnold B., 87.
 Arnstead, Mt., 147.
 Arowhenua, 105.
 Arrow Rock, Nelson Harbour, 82.
 Arrowtown, 144, 130.
 Art Gallery, Auckland, 2.
 Arthur, Mt., Nelson, 85.
 Arthur B., Otago, 152.
 Arthur's Pass, Canterbury, 90, 91, 110.
 Arthur's Point, Otago, 144, 145.
 Ashburn Hall Asylum, Dunedin, 123.
 Ashburton, 105.
 Ashburton B., 96, 105.
 Ashley B., 94.
 Ashurst, 46.
 Aspiring, Mt., 130, 144.
 Astrolabe Island, 82.
 Ateamuri, 28, 29.
 Atene, 52, 57.
 Athenaeum, Dunedin, 120.
 Athenaeum, Invercargill, 138.
 Athenaeum, Napier, 43.
 Athens, 52.
 Athol, 142.
 Auckland, [1], [5], [6], [7], [55], [56], [57], 1-5, 6, 7, 10, 13, 14, 15, 25, 39, 53, 54, 62, 67, 73, 76.
 Auckland Islands, 141.
 Aurum, Mt., 144, 147.
 Autapu rapid, 52.
 Avon B., 96.
 Avondale, 10.
 Awa Puni, 73.
 Awahou, 22.
 Awanui, 40.
 Awaporehe Stream, 24.
 Awatere, 92.
- B.
- Balclutha, 125.
 Bald Peak, 146.
 Balfour Glacier, 134, 135.
 Ball Glacier, 114, 115, 116.
 Ball Pass, 116.
 Balmoral, Nelson, 94.
 Balmoral Station, Canterbury, 114.
Banks, Sir J., 41.
 Banks' Peninsula, [53], 96, 101.
 Bankside, 104.
 Barrier, Great, 5.
 Barry's Bay, 102.
 Bay of Islands, 7, 6, 57, 102.
 Bay of Plenty, 13, 24, 38, 39, 40.
 Bayonet Peak, 143.
 Bealey Hotel, 91, 90.
 Bealey B., 91.
 Beech Huts, 152, 151.
 Beehive Hill, Manapouri, 150.
 Belfast, 95, 101.
 Bell's Falls, Mt. Egmont, 65.
 Bellgrove, 84, 81, 83.
 Ben Lomond, 130, 143.
 Ben More, 116.
 Ben Ohau Mts., 113.
 Ben Ohau Station, 114.
 Benger Mts., 128.

- Bethany, 37.
 Big Bay, 136.
 Big Bluff, 136.
 Big Wanganui R., Westland, 132.
 Birch Hill Station, 114.
 Birch Tree Crossing, 149.
Birds, [44], 112.
 Bishopdale, 83, 84.
 Black Geyser, Wairakei, 33.
 Black Lake, Tikitere, 22.
 Black Mt., Southland, 139.
 Black Peak, Wanaka, 129.
 Black Point, Oamaru, 117.
 Black Terrace, Taupo, 36.
 Blanchard's Bluff, 134.
 Blenheim, 80, 78, 79, 81, 83, 92.
 Bligh Sound, 156.
 Blind Bay, 82, 84.
 Blue Lake, Wairakei, 33, 29.
 Blue R., Westland, 136.
 Blueskin Bay, Otago, 109.
 Bluff, The, [5], 138, 139, 153, 154.
 Boat Harbour, 93.
 Boilers, The, Wairakei, 32.
 Boiling Lake, Waiotapu, 27.
 Bonpland, Mt., 145.
 Borton's, 117.
 Botanical Gardens, Dunedin, 121, 117, 123.
 Botanical Gardens, Napier, 43.
 Botanical Gardens, Oamaru, 107.
 Botanical Gardens, Wellington, 77.
 Botanic Hill, Nelson, 83.
 Bounty Islands, 141.
 Bowen Fall, 157.
 Bowen Peak, 143.
Boyd Massacre, [54], 8.
 Boys' High School, Christchurch, 98.
 Boys' High School, Dunedin, 120.
 Bradshaw Sound, 155.
 Braemar Station, 114.
 Brain Pot, Whakarewarewa, 17.
Brassej, Major, [57], 50.
 Breaksea Sound, 155.
 Breakwater, Gisborne, 41.
 Breakwater, Napier, 43.
 Breakwater, New Plymouth, 61, 57, 63.
 Breakwater, Oamaru, 107.
 Breakwater, Timaru, 106.
 Brewster Glacier, 137.
 Brewster Mt., 137.
 Brighton, Dunedin, 123.
 Brightwater, 83, 84.
 Britannia, 47, 76.
 Broken B., 91.
 Brothers Islands, The, 79.
Broughton, Lieut., 103.
Broune, Govr., [57], 59.
Brown, Prof. Mainwaring, 150.
 Bruce Bay, 133, 135.
 Brunner, 87.
 Brunner, Lake, 87, 90.
 Brunswick, 70.
 Bryant Glacier, 145.
 Buchanan Peaks, 129.
 Buckler Burn, 147.
 Buller R., [7], 85, 86.
 Bulls, 73.
 Burke, Mt., Otago, 129.
 Burke R., Westland, 137.
 Burke's, Dunedin, 109.
 Burke's Pass, 113.
Burns, Rev. Dr., 118, 120.
 Burns' Statue, Dunedin, 120.
 Burwood Forest, 149.
Busby, Mr., [55], 7, 8.
- C.
- Cable Bay, 83.
 Calliope Point, 4.
 Cambridge, 12.
Cameron, Genl., [58], 10, 11, 53, 54, 70, 71.
 Campbell, Cape, 92.
 Campbell Island, 141.
 Campbelltown, 139.
 Canadian Pacific Rly., [2].
 Canterbury, 96, 89, 90, 94, 106, 116.
Canterbury Association, The, [56], 96.
 Canterbury Coll., Christchurch, 98, 101.
'Canterbury Pilgrims', 96, 101.
 Canterbury Plain, 104, 91.
 Canton, 140.
 Cape Town, [3].
 Cardrona, 130.
Carey, Gen., 53.
Cargill, Capt., 118, 119, 138.
 Cargill, Mt., Dunedin, 123.
 Carlyle, 69.
 Carr's Station, 37.
 Carrington Road, New Plymouth, 60.
 Carterton, 47.
 Cascade R., 136.
 Cass R., 91.
 Castle Hill, Canterbury, 91.
 Castle Rock, Southland, 142.
 Castlepoint, Wellington, 47.
 Caswell Sound, 156, 150.
 Cathedral, Christchurch, 97.
 Cathedral School, Christchurch, 97.
 Catlin's Lake, 126.
 Catlin's R., 125, 126.
Cattle in N. Z., [60].
 Cattle Flats Station, 130.
 Cattleyards, 124.
Cautley, Col., 76.
 Cave, 113.
 Caversham, 124, 117, 123.
 Cecil, Mt., 143, 144, 145.
Central Otago Rly., 124, 108.
 Centre Hill, 149.
 Centre Island, 154.
 Centre Peak, 147.
 Chadwick Glacier, Mt. Egmont, 66, 67.
 Chain Hills Tunnel, 124.
 Chalky Inlet, 155.
 Chalky Island, 155.
Chambers, Mr., 118.
 Champagne Pool, Waiotapu, 27.
 Charles Sound, 156.
 Chasland's Mistake, 154.
 Chatham Islands, [58], 103, 154.
 Chertsey, 104.
 Christ's College, Christchurch, 98.
 Christchurch, [7], [8], 95-103, 25, 78, 81, 84, 89, 91, 92, 112, 113, 119.
 Christina, Mt., 146.
Churches in N. Z., [60].
Chute, Gen., [58], 60.
 City Council Chambers, Christchurch, 97.
 Clarence R., 92.
 Clark Valley, 84.
 Clarke Bluff, [137], 131.
 Clarke R., 137.
 Clarkeville, 127.
 Claverley, 93.
 Cleddau R., 152.
 Clifford Bay, 92.
 Clifty Head, 111.
Climate of N. Z., [13].
 Clinton, 126, 119, 139.

Clinton R., 151, 152.
 Cloudy Bay, 80.
 Clutha R., 125, 126, 127, 128,
 129, 130, 144.
 Clyde, 128, 108, 125, 142,
 144.
Coach Services in N. Z., [8].
Coal in N. Z., [62].
 Coal Island, 154.
 Coalbrook Dale, 86.
 Colac, 140.
 Colin's Bay, Wakatipu,
 143.
 College, Nelson, 83.
 College, St. Patrick's,
 Wellington, 77.
 College, The, Wellington,
 77.
 Collegiate School, Wan-
 ganui, 71.
 Collingwood, 83.
 Coloured Springs, Wai-
 rakei, 34.
Compte de Paris, The, 102.
Constitution Act, The, [56].
Constitution of N. Z., [58].
 Convent, Dunedin, 120.
 Convent, Nelson, 82.
 Conn's Creek, 86.
 Conway R., 93.
Coode, Sir J., 86.
Cook, Capt., [54], 7, 38, 40,
 41, 42, 57, 78, 92, 93, 96,
 98, 122, 124, 125, 140, 154,
 155.
Cook, Messrs. T. & Son,
 [6], [7], 18.
Cook, Mt., 110-117, 105,
 131, 134.
 Cook R., 135.
 Cook's Bluff, 135.
 Cook's Lagoon, 135.
 Cook's Straits, [52], 78.
 Cookson Mt., 93.
 Cooper Island, 155.
 Cooper, Port, 101, 118.
 Corinth, 52.
 Cormack's, 107.
 Cormorant Cove, 155.
 Corriedale, 108.
 Cosmos, Mt., 145.
 Countess Glacier, 115.
 Crescent Island, Wanaka,
 129.
 Criffel, 130.
 Cromwell, [7], 128, 130.
Crops in N. Z., [60].
 Cross' Creek, 47.
 Crown Range, 130.
 Crow's Nest Geyser, Taupo,
 35.
 [New Zealand.]

Crozet, 7.
 Cullensville, 79, 78.
 Culverden, 94, 84, 93.
 Cunarid Sound, 155.
 Cuttle Cove, 153, 154.

D.

Dannevirke, 45, 44.
 Dan's Ford, 137.
 Darfield, 91.
 Dargaville, 6, 9.
 Darien Mt., 111.
 Dark Cloud Inlet, 155.
 Darran Mts., 157.
 Dart Glacier, 145.
 Dart Valley, 146, 147.
 David Glacier, 137.
 Dawson's Falls, Mt. Eg-
 mont, 65, 66.
 De la Beche, Mt., 116.
 Deas Cove, 155.
 Deep Cove, 155.
Defence Force of N. Z., [59].
 Demon Creek, 137.
 Denniston, 86.
Despard, Col., 8.
 Devil's Punch Bowl, 91.
 Devil's Staircase (Waka-
 tipu), 143.
Devon, Earl of, 59.
 Devonport, 4.
 Diamond Lake, 146, 147.
Diamonds in N. Z., 93.
 Dick, Mt., 143.
 'Dicky Barrett', 59, 60.
 Dipton, 142.
 Dispute, Lake, 144.
Dobson, Mr. E., 110.
 Docherty's landing, 155.
 Dock, Calliope Point, 4.
 Dome Islands, Te Anau,
 150.
 Donkey Engine, Wai-
 rakei, 33.
 Double Corner, 96.
 Doubtful Sound, 155, 153.
 Dover's Pass, 114.
Downes, Lieut., 68.
 Dragon's Mouth, Wai-
 rakei, 33.
 Dromore, 105.
 Drury, 10.
 Dry Creek, 132, 133.
 Dublin Bay, Wanaka, 130.
 Duffer's Creek, 132.
Du Frene, Marion, 7.
 Dunbach, 108.
 Dunedin, [5], [7], [8], [56],
 117-124, 104, 108, 109,

125, 126, 127, 128, 138, 142,
 151.
 Dunstan Flat, 128.
 Dunstan Mts., 128, 144.
 Duntroon, 117.
D'Urville, Capt. Dumont,
 [55], 79.
 D'Urville Island, 79, 84.
 Dusky Bay, 155.
 Dusky Sound, 155, 153.
 Duvanohelles Bay, 101, 102.

E.

Eagle's Nest, The, Wai-
 rakei, 32.
 Ealing, 105.
 Earnslaw Creek, 147.
 Earnslaw, Mt., 147, 145,
 146.
 Earnslaw, Mt., Glaciers,
 147.
 Earthquake Flat, Wai-
 tapu, 27.
 Eastmere Lake, 150.
 Eden, Mt., Auckland, 3, 10.
 Edendale, 126.
 Edgecombe, Mt., 24.
 Edward's Creek, 114.
 Edwardson Sound, 155.
 Egmont, Mt., 57, 60, 61,
 67, 68. *See also New*
Plymouth and Tara-
naki.
 Egmont, Mt., Ascent of,
 62-67.
 Egmont Road, New Ply-
 mouth, 63.
 Eketahuna, 46, 44.
 Elderslie, Otago, 108.
 Elevation, 80.
 Elfin Bay, Wakatipu, 145.
 Ellerslie, Auckland, 10.
 Ellesmere, Lake, 102.
Endeavour, The, 155.
 Erewhon, 44.
 Esk R., 37.
 Evans' Creek, 132.
Eyre, Lt.-Govr., 76, 148.
 Eyre Mts., 143, 148.
 Explosion Craters, Wai-
 tapu, 27.

F.

Facile Harbour, 155.
 Fairbanks Glacier, 116.
 Fairfax, 139.
 Fairlie, [7], 113, 106, 112.

- Fairlight, 142.
 Fairy Baths, Wairakei, 33.
 Falloon, Mr., 39.
 Fantham Peak, Mt. Egmont, 66.
 Farndon, 44.
Featherston, Dr., 73.
 Featherston, 47.
 Feilding, 73.
 Fendalton, 95.
 Fergus Lake, 146.
Ferns in N. Z., [30]-[34].
 Fern Flat, 85.
 Fernhill Coal Pit, 124.
Fish, [11], [45], [62].
 Fish B., 137.
Fitz Gerald, Mr. J. E., 96.
Fitz Roy, Governor, [56].
 Fitz Roy, New Plymouth, 61.
 Fitz Roy, Port, Great Barrier, 5.
 Five Fingers Peninsula, 155.
 Five Mile Beach, 134.
 Five Mile Bluff, 134.
 Five Rivers, 142, 149.
 Flagstaff Hill, Auckland, 4.
 Flagstaff Hill, Dunedin, 123.
 Flagstaff Hill, Russell, 7.
 Flagstaff Hill, Wanganui, 72.
Flax, Native, [61].
 Flaxbourne, 92.
 Flock Hill, 91.
Flora, Alpine, 111, 112, 90, 151.
Flora of N. Z., [28]-[30].
 Forbes Mts., 146.
 Fordell, 72.
 Forest Reserve, Mt. Egmont, 63, 65.
Forest Trees in N. Z., [35]-[44].
 Forks B., 114.
 Fortrose, 126.
 Fox Glacier, 134, 135.
Fox, Sir Wm., 73.
 Four Rivers Plain, 85.
 Foxhill, 84.
 Foxton, 74.
 Foveaux Straits, 118, 126, 139, 140, 149, 154.
 Franklin, Mt., 82, 86.
 Frankton, 11, 53.
 Franz Joseph Glacier, 133, 110.
Fraser, Major, 37.
Freezing Works, [60], 43, 45, 47, 62, 73, 80, 95, 106, 107, 124.
 French Pass, The, 79.
French Settlement at Akaroa, 102, 96.
 Freshwater B., 141.
 Frosty Creek, 132.
Fruit in N. Z., [61].
 Funnell, The, Wairakei, 32.
 Fusiama Mt., 57.
 Fyffe Mt., 93.
- G.
- Gabriel's Gully, 127, 119.
 Galatea, 52.
 Galway Bluff, 134.
 Gap Creek, 136.
 Gate Pa, The, [57], 13.
Geology of N. Z., [15]-[28].
 George Sound, 156, 150, 153.
 Geraldine, 105.
 Geysers Valley, Wairakei, 30.
 Geysers, Orakeikorako, 29.
 Geysers, Rotorua, 17.
 Giant's Caldron, Whakarewarewa, 18.
Gilfillan, Mrs., [56], 71, 72.
 Gillespie's, 134, 135.
 Gillespie's Bluff, 134.
 Girl's College, Wanganui, 72.
 Girls' High School, Christchurch, 100.
 Girls' High School, Dunedin, 120.
 Girls' High School, Nelson, 83.
 Girls' High School, Wellington, 77.
 Gisborne, [5], [58], 41, 25, 38, 42, 43.
Gladstone, Rt. Hon. W. E., 4.
Glacier action, 110, 111, 115.
 Glaciers:—
 Balfour, 134, 135.
 Ball, 114, 115, 116.
 Brewster, 137.
 Bryant, 145.
 Chadwick, 66, 67.
 Countess, 115.
 Dart, 145.
 David, 137.
 Fairbanks, 116.
 Fox, 134, 135.
 Frans Joseph, 110, 133.
 Godley, 110.
 Hochstetter, 114.
 Hooker, 115, 110.
 Jervois, 151, 152.
- Glaciers—*contd.*
 Mt. Earnslaw, 147.
 Mt. Rolleston, 90, 91.
 Mueller, 110, 115.
 Murchison, 110.
 Stocking, 115.
 Tasman, 115, 110, 114, 116.
Glaagow, Earl of, [58].
 Glendhu Bay, 129, 130.
 Glenmark, 94.
 Glenomaru, 125.
 Glenorchy, 146, 145.
 Glenore, 127.
 Glen Tanner, 114.
 Gloucester, 8.
 Goblin Bush, Mt. Egmont, 65.
 Godley Glacier, 110.
 Godley Statue, Christchurch, 98.
Gold Mining, [62].
 Gold, Mt., 129.
 Golden Bay, [54], 88.
 Gomorrah, 18.
 Goose Cove, 155.
 Gordon B., Westland, 132.
 Gordon's Knob, Nelson, 85.
 Gore, [7], 126.
Gorst, Sir J., 53.
 Government Buildings, Dunedin, 119.
 Government Buildings, Nelson, 82.
 Government Buildings, Wellington, 77.
 Government House, Auckland, 2.
 Government House, Wellington, 76.
Government of N. Z., [58].
 Governor's Bush, Mt. Cook, 115.
Grace, Rev. T., 39.
Grace, Rev. W., 49.
 Grammar School, Auckland, 2.
 Grammar School, Parnell, 4.
 Grampian Mts., 113.
 Grand View, Mt., 129.
 Granity Creek, 85.
 Grassmere, Lake, 91.
 Grayling's Clearing, New Plymouth, 62.
 Greatford, 73.
 Grebe Arm, Manapouri, 150.
 Green Hills, Marlborough, 93.
 Green Lake, Rotorua, 26.

- Green Lane, Auckland, 10.
Green, Rev. W. S., [6], 116, 157.
 Greenhill, Southland, 139.
 Greenstone R., 145.
Grey Coal Mining Co., 87.
 Greymouth, [7], 87, 84, 88, 89.
 Gray R., 87.
Grey, Sir G., [53], [56], [57], 2, 18, 58, 59, 70, 71, 74, 96.
 Greytown, Wellington, 47.
 Greytown, Otago, 125.
 Grove, The, 79.
Guard, Capt., 59.
 Gunn, Lake, 146.
- H.
- Haast Pass, 137, 110, 126, 131.
 Haast R., 131, 136, 137.
Haast, Sir Julius von, 98, 111.
Hadfield, Bp., 74.
 Hakateramea, 107.
 Hakitekura, 124.
 Halcombe, 73.
 Half Moon Bay, 140.
 Half Way Bay, Wakatipu, 143.
 Half Way Bluff, Westland, 136.
 Half Way Bush, Dunedin, 118, 123.
 Hall's Arm, 155, 153.
 Halswell, 95.
 Hamilton, 11.
 Hampden, 108.
 Hamurana Spring, 22.
 Hananui, Mt., 140.
 Hangatahna R., 64.
 Hangatiki, 55.
 Hankinson, Lake, 150.
 Hanmer Plains, 94, 84, 87.
 Hanmer Springs, 94, 101.
 Happy Valley, 81, 83.
 Hapuka R., 93.
Hapurona, 61.
 Harbour Works, Grey-mouth, 87.
 Harbour Works, Napier, 43.
 Harbour Works, New Plymouth, 61.
 Harbour Works, Oamaru, 107.
 Harbour Works, Timaru, 106.
 Harbour Works, Westport, 86.
- Hardy, Mt., 39.
Harper, Bp., 97.
 Harper Creek, Mt. Cook, 115.
 Harris, Lake, 146.
 Harris Mts., 129.
 Harrison Cove, 157.
 Hastings, 45, 43.
Hauhautam, [51], [57], 39, 49, 52.
 Hauraki Gulf, 1, 5.
 Hauroto, Lake, 140.
 Havelock, Hawke's Bay, 81, 78, 79, 83.
 Havelock, Otago, 127.
 Hawaii Stream, 39.
 Hawaiki, [4], [46], [48], 3, 8, 49, 148.
 Hawea Flat, 129, 130.
 Hawea, Lake, [7], 130, 88, 128, 129, 147.
 Hawea R., 129.
 Hawera, 68, 64, 66, 69.
Hawke, Sir Ed., 42.
 Hawke's Bay, [57], 42, 43.
 Hawkesbury, 108.
 Hawkeswood, 93.
 Hawthorne, 117.
 Hayes, Lake, 144.
 Hayletts, 139.
 Heathcote R., 100.
 Hector Mts., 143.
Hector, Sir J., [15], 156.
Heke, [56], 7.
 Heketeramea Pass, 114.
 Helensville, 9, 6.
 Hemo Gorge, 28.
 Henderson, 5.
 Henley, 125, 124.
 Herbert, 108.
 Hercules, Mt., 132.
Herd, Capt., 9.
 Herd's Point, 9, 8.
 Heretaunga, 47.
 Heriot, 126.
 Hermitage, The, Mt. Cook, [8], [9], 115, 110, 112, 113, 114, 116, 128.
 Heron's Nest, Wairakei, 31.
 Hicks' Bay, 40.
Hicks, Lieut., 40.
 High School, Oamaru, 107.
 Highfield, 93.
 Hikurangi, 6.
 Hikurangi, Mt., 40.
 Hikutaia R., 14.
 Hindon, 124.
 Hinds R., 105.
 Hinemaia Stream, 48.
Hinemoa, Legend of, 18-21.
 Hinemoe's Rock, 28.
- Hiruharama, 52.
 Hobart, [3], [6].
Hobhouse, Bp., 82.
 Hobson Bay, 3.
Hobson, Governor, [55], 2.
 Hobson, Mt., 3.
Hochstetter, Dr., 49.
 Hochstetter Dome, 116.
 Hochstetter Glacier, 114.
Hocken, Dr., 121.
 Hokianga, 8, 6, 102.
 Hokianga R., 8.
 Hokitika, 88, 84, 89, 126, 131, 132, 133, 136.
 Hokonui Mts., 138, 142.
 Home Creek, 149.
Hongi, [51], [54], 8, 14, 22, 38, 40, 54, 57.
 Honolulu, [1], [2].
 Hooker Glacier, 115, 110.
 Hooker R., 115.
 Hooker Valley, 115, 114.
 Hooper's Inlet, 122.
 Hope, 83.
 Hope, Mt., 85.
 Hope R., 85.
 Hope Saddle, 84.
 Horeka, 8, 6.
 Hornby Junction, 104.
 Horohoro, Mt., 28.
 Horsley Down, 94.
 Hot Water Falls, Tikitere, 22.
Hotels in N. Z., [11].
 Houldsworth, Mt., 47.
 Howden, Lake, 146.
 Hua, 61.
Huddleston, Mr. F. F. C., 115, 116.
 Huddleston, Mt., 116.
 Huirangi, 62.
 Huka Falls, 34.
Hulme, Col., 8.
 Humboldt Mts., 145, 146.
 Humphries Castle, Mt. Egmont, 63, 64.
 Hunt's Beach, 135.
 Hunt's Creek, 135.
 Hunterville, 73, 53, 56.
 Huntly, 11.
 Huntress' Creek, 39.
 Hurunui Pass, 110.
 Hurunui R., 94, 110.
 Hutt, Lower, Wellington, 47, 77.
Hutt, Mr., 47.
 Hutt, Mt., Canterbury, 104.
 Hutt R., Wellington, 47.
 Hutt, Upper, Wellington, 47.
 Hyde, 125.

I.

Ianthe, Lake, 132.
 Ice Cave, Mt. Egmont, 64.
Inaki, 51.
 Inangahua Junction, 86,
 87.
 Inangahua R., 86.
 Indian Island, 155.
Industries of N. Z., [60]-
 [63].
 Inferno, Tikitere, 22.
 Inglewood, 67.
Insects in N. Z., [45].
 Institute, Public, Nelson,
 82.
 Invercargill, [8], 138-141,
 119, 124, 127, 142, 151.
 Irishman Creek, 114.
 Ironsand, 5, 61, 127.
Ironside, Rev. Mr., 80.
 Island Bay, Wellington,
 77.
 Island Block, 127.
 Islands, Bay of, 7, 6, 57,
 102.

J.

Jackson's Bay, 136.
 Jacob's Bluff, 135.
 Jacob's R., 135.
Jacobs, Rev. H., 99.
 Jerusalem, 52.
 Jervois Glacier, 151, 152.
Jervois, Sir Wm., 76, 119.
 Jockey Club, Auckland, 10.
 John, Mt., 114.
John Wickliffe, The, 118.
 Johnsonville, 75, 47.
 Jollie's Pass, 84.
 Joshua's Spa, 35.
 Judah, Mt., 147.
 Judge's Bay, Auckland, 4.
Julius, Bp., 98.
Justice, Administration of,
 [59].

K.

Kaeo R., 8.
 Kai Iwi, 70.
 Kaiapoi, [53], 94, 95, 101,
 102, 108.
 Kaihu, 9.
 Kaikora, Hawke's Bay, 45.
 Kaikorai Valley, Dunedin,
 124.
 Kaikoura, Marlborough,
 [7], [53], 93, 92, 101.
 Kaikoura Mts., Marlborough,
 93.

Kaimanawa Mts., 50.
 Kaingaroa Plains, 36.
 Kaipara Heads, 9, 6.
 Kaipara R., 9.
 Kairau, 61.
 Kaitangata, Otago, 125.
 Kaitangata, Wanganui R.,
 52.
 Kaitaran, Mt., 93.
 Kaitoke, 47.
 Kaituna Valley, 81.
 Kaiwaka R., 24.
 Kaiwarra, 47.
 Kakaramea Mt., Taupo, 49.
 Kakaramea, Mt., Waio-
 tapu, 27.
 Kakepuku hill, 54.
 Kamo, 6.
 Kanieri, 131.
 Kanieri, Lake, 89.
 Kapiti Island, [52], 74, 102,
 126.
 Kaponga, 67.
 Kapuni R., 65, 66, 67.
 Karaitera, 52.
 Karangarua R., 135.
 Karapiti, Wairakei, 34.
 Kariol, 50, 44, 49, 56.
 Karori, 77.
 Katikati, 14.
 Kaupokonui R., 66.
Kauri gum, [62].
 Kawakawa, 7, 6, 8.
 Kawarau R., 128, 130, 143.
 Kawan, 62.
 Kawan, Island of, 11.
Kawharu, 9.
 Kawhia, [52].
Kawiti, 6.
 Kea Point, Mt. Cook, 115.
 Kekerangu, 92.
 Kendall's Cascade, Mt.
 Egmont, 66.
 Kereru Geyser, 18.
 Keri Keri, 8.
 Kermadec Islands, 5.
 Ketetahi, Tongariro, 49.
 Key, The, 149, 148, 150.
 Khandallah, 75.
 Kidnappers, Cape, 42.
 Kihikihiki, 54.
 Kilbirnie, 77.
 'King Country,' The, [7],
 55.
 Kingston, [7], 142, 144.
 Kinloch, 145, 146, 147.
 Kiriohinekei Stream,
 Wairakei, 29, 34.
 Kirwee, 91.
 Kiwi Flat, 137.
 Koheroa, 10.

Kohimarama, 4.
 Kohukohu, 9.
 Koriniti, 52.
 Korokiwhiti, 124.
 Koromiko, 80.
 Kororareka, [56], 7.
 Korotioti Bath, Whaka-
 rewarewa, 17.
 Kowai R., 91.
 Kumara, [8], [63], 88, 89.
 Kumeu, 10.
 Kupertai, 109.
 Kuripapanga, 44, 43.
 Kurow, [7], 116, 107, 108,
 112, 114, 117.
 Kyber Pass, Auckland, 1.
 Kyeburn, 125.

L.

L'Aube, 102.
 La Perouse, Mt., 134.
 Lake Road, 53.
Lance, Mr. J. D., 94.
 Landsborough R., 137.
 Larkins, Mt., 144.
Lavau, Capt., 102.
 Lawrence, [7], [63], 127, 125.
 Leader R., 93.
 Leaning Peak, Mana-
 pouri, 150.
 Leaning Rock, Dunstan
 Mts., 144.
 Lennox Falls, 147.
 Leo Island, Te Anau, 151.
 Levels, 113.
 Levin, 74.
 Library, Free, Auckland, 2.
 Library, Parliamentary,
 Wellington, 77.
 Library, Public, Christ-
 church, 100.
 Library, Public, Nelson,
 82.
 Library, Public, Wanga-
 nui, 72.
 Lichfield, 12, 28.
 Lightning Pool, Wairakei,
 33.
 Lincoln, 101.
 Lindis Pass, 129.
 Lindis Valley, 129.
Literature concerning N.Z.,
 [63].
 Little Man R., 132.
 Little R., 102, 101.
 Little Wanganui R.,
 Westland, 132.
 Livingstone Goldfield, 108.
Lloyd, Capt., 68.
 Lochy R., 143.

London, 52.
 Long Island, Dusky Sound, 155.
 Long Island, Wakatipu, 145.
 Long Slip Creek, 128.
 Long Sound, 154, 153.
 Longbeach, 105.
 Longburn, 73, 74.
 Longford, 85, 84.
 Longwood, 140.
 Longwood Mts., 138.
 Lookers-on Mts., 93.
Lord Worsley, The, 69.
 Lovell's Flat, 125.
 Ludemann's Station, 146.
 Lumsden, [7], 142, 126.
 Lyell, 85, 86.
 Lyndon, Lake, 91.
 Lynwood Station, 149.
 Lyttelton, [5], [7], 100, 78, 96, 97, 101, 103, 118.
 Lyttelton Tunnel, [58], 100.

M.

Mabel, Mt., 115, 116.
 Mackenzie Plain, 113.
 Mackey's Bluff, Nelson Harbour, 82.
 Macquarie Island, 141.
 Macrae's Flat, 108.
 Madame Rachel's Bath, Rotorua, 17, 29.
 Mahakapawa, 79.
 Maheno, 108.
 Mahinapua, Lake, 89, 132.
 Mahitahi R., 135.
 Mahoetahi, 61.
 Mahurangi Heads, 5, 6.
Mair, Major, 39.
 Makarewa, 139, 142.
 Makarewa R., 138.
 Makarera, 129, 137.
 Makarora R., 111, 137.
 Makawihoro R., 135.
 Maketu, [52], 38, 23.
Manaiā, 57.
 Manaiā, Mt., Auckland, 9.
 Manaiā, New Plymouth, 69, 66, 67.
 Manakaiā R., 135.
 Manakau Harbour, [52], 4, 5, 10, 56.
 Manapouri, Lake, [7], 149, 139, 142, 154, 155.
 Manapourika, Lake, 133.
 Manawatu County, 73.
 Manawatu Gorge, 46, 73.
 Manawatu R., 46.

Manawatu Rly., 74, 75, 76.
 'Manchester Block,' 73, 46.
 Mangakopikipiki Valley, 37.
 Manganui Gorge, 65, 66.
 Manga-nui-o-te-ao R., 52.
 Mangaoraka Stream, 63.
 Mangatenuka R., 46.
 Mangaungaunga, Mt., 27.
 Mangles R., 85.
 Mangorei Road, New Plymouth, 62, 65.
Maniapoto, 61.
Maning, Judge, 9.
 Manuka, 127.
 Manuka Island, Wanaka, 129.
 Manukorihi, 62.
 Manupirua Spring, Roto Iti, 23.
 Maori lake, 136.
Maori Words, List of, [53].
Maoris, History of the, [46]-[53].
 Mapourika, 133.
 Mapoutahi, 109.
 Marsenui, 39.
 Marahau, 70.
 Mararoa R., 139, 149.
 Margaret Fall, 151.
 Marlborough, Province of, [57], 80, 82.
Marsden, Rev. Mr., [51], 8.
Marshall, Dr., 59.
 Marsland Hill, New Plymouth, 60.
Martin, Sir Wm., [45], 4.
 Martin's Bay Track, 146.
 Martinborough, 47.
 Marton, 72, 51, 53, 67.
 Marton Junction, 73.
 Maruia R., 85.
 Maryburn R., 114.
 Maryhill, Dunedin, 117.
 Mason Bay, Stewart Island, 141.
 Mason R., Nelson, 93.
 Massacre Point, Akaroa, 102.
 Masterton, [7], 46, 44, 47, 76, 78.
 Matahiwi, 45.
Matahouira canoe, 57.
 Matai R., 83.
 Matakauri, 143.
 Matakītiki, New Plymouth, [52], 54.
 Matakītiki Mts., Westland, 136.
 Matakītiki R., Nelson, 85.
 Matamata, 12.

Matarawa, 71, 72.
 Matata, 38.
 Matatapu R., 130.
Matau, 143.
 Mataura, 126.
 Mataura R., 126, 142.
 Matawhaura, 23.
 Matawhero, 41.
Matene, 52.
 Matiri Bluffs, 85.
 Matiri R., 85.
 Matukituki Bay, Wanaka, 129.
 Matukituki R., 130.
 Maungaharuru Mts., 37.
 Maungakawa, Mt., 12.
 Maungamanu, 93.
 Maunganui Bluff, 9.
 Maungapiko R., 54.
 Maungatapu, 81.
 Maungatapu R., 83.
 Maungatautari Mts., 12.
 Maungatawhiri R., 10.
 Maungatua Stream, 46.
 Maungrahou, Mt., 9.
 Mauriceville, 46.
 Mavora Lakes, 144, 149.
 Mawhere, 88.
McAndrew, Mr. J., 119.
McDonnell, Col., [58].
 McKellar, Lake, 146.
McKelvie, Mr., 2.
 McKerrow, Lake, 146.
 McKerrow, Mts., 139.
McKinnon, Mr., 150.
 Medbury, 94.
Melanesian Mission, 4.
 Mercer, 11, 10.
Mercer, Capt., 11.
 Meremere, 10, 11.
 Mesopotamia, 105.
Messageries Maritimes Cie., [3].
Meté Kingi, 52.
 Methven, 104.
 Middle Fiord, Te Anau, 150.
 Middlemarch, 125, 108, 124, 128.
 Midland Rly. Co., 87.
 Midwinter Island, Manapouri, 150.
 Mikonui R., 132.
 Milford Sound, [7], 156, 88, 148, 151, 152, 153.
 Mill Road, 127.
 Millburn, 125.
 Milton, 125, 127.
 Mimi Valley, 62.
 Minarets, 129.
Mineral Waters, [21]-[28].

- Minerals in N. Z.*, [62].
Misimaries, [50], [54].
Mitchell, Mr. W. S., 148, 151.
 Mitre Peak, 157.
Moas, [16], [45], 68, 94, 98, 100, 127.
 Moawhanga, 44, 43.
 Moeraki, Otago, 108.
 Moeraki Lake, Westland, 136.
 Moeraki R., Westland, 136.
Moffat, 51.
 Mohaka, 41.
 Mohaka R., 37.
 Mohakateno R., 62.
 Mokau R., 38, 55, 56, 62.
 Mōke Creek, 143.
 Moke Lake, 144.
 Mokoia Island, Rotorna, [52], 18, 13, 16.
 Mokotua, 139.
 Mokotuku, 45.
 Molineux, Port, 125.
 Molineux R., 125. *See also* Clutha R.
 Monastery, Christchurch, 100.
 Monowai, Lake, 140.
 Monument Arm, Manapouri, 150.
Moorhouse, Mr. W. S., 99, 100.
 Moorhouse Mts., 115.
 Moorhouse Statue, Christchurch, 99.
Moran, Bp., 120.
Morioris, 103.
 Mornington, Dunedin, 117.
 Morrinsville, 12, 15.
 Morven Hill, 129.
 Mosgiel, 123, 125.
 Mossburn, 148, 142.
 Motaremo, 9.
 Mototaiki Island, 48.
 Motu R., 39.
 Motueka, 83, 82.
 Motueka R., 84, 85.
 Motuihi, 14.
 Motupiko Valley, 84.
 Moturoa, 57.
 Motutapu, 3.
Mountford, Mr., 96.
 Moutoa Island, 52, 72.
 Mud Crater, Great, Waio-tapu, 28.
 Mud Volcano, Waio-tapu, 28.
 Mud Volcanoes, Wairakei, 33.
 Mueller Glacier, 115, 110.
Mules, Bp., 82.
- Mulloky Gully Viaduct, 124.
 Mungatua Mts., 125.
 Murchison Glacier, 110.
 Murchison, Mt., 85.
 Murumutu Plain, 50, 53.
 Museum, Auckland, 3.
 Museum, Christchurch, 98, 94.
 Museum, Dunedin, 121.
 Museum, Invercargill, 138.
 Museum, Napier, 43.
 Museum, Oamaru, 107.
 Museum, Wellington, 77.
 Myers' track, 135.
- N.
- Nancy Sound, 156.
Nanto - Bordelaise Company, [55], 96, 102.
 Napier, [5], [7], [8], 42-44, 28, 35, 36, 37, 38, 40, 41, 73.
 Naseby, [63], 108, 125, 128.
 Native College, Te Aute, 45.
 Native Schools, Napier, 43.
Natives. See Maoris.
 Nelson, [5], [7], [8], [56], 81-83, 25, 79, 84, 85, 87, 92, 103, 118.
 Nelson, Port of, 82, 79.
 Nerger, Mt., 136.
Neville, Bp., 120.
 New Brighton, Christchurch, 100, 95.
New Edinburgh Settlement, The, 118.
 New Leinster, [55], 140.
 New Munster, [55], [56], 76.
 New Plymouth, [5], [7], [56], [57], 57-60, 25, 67, 68, 70, 82, 118. *See also* Mt. Egmont, and Taranaki.
 New River, 138.
 New Ulster, [55], [56], 2.
 Newcastle, 129.
 Newmarket, 1, 3, 10.
 Newton, 3.
 Ngahauranga, 47.
 Ngaire, 68, 60, 64, 65.
Ngaitahu, 88, 118, 122, 123, 124.
 Ngakawau, 86.
 Nga Mahanga, Wairakei, 32.
 Ngamotu, 57, 61.
 Ngapara, 108, 107.
 Ngaporo rapid, 52.
- Ngapuhi*, [51], 9, 14, 57.
 Nga roto, 53.
 Ngaruawahia, [57], 11.
 Ngaruhoe, Mt., 49, 63, 64, 65.
 Ngaruro R., 44.
 Ngaruro R., 44.
 Ngataps [59].
Ngatiawa, 57, 62.
Ngatimaoe, 88, 118, 122, 124, 148, 156.
Ngatimaru, [52], 14.
 Ngatirakawa, [52].
Ngatiruanui, 103.
Ngatitao, [52], 88.
Ngatoroirangi, 49.
 Ngatuku, Mt., 28.
Ngauruhoe, legend of, 49.
 Ngawapurua, 46.
 Nongotaka Mt., 23.
 Nicholas, Mt., 144, 145.
 Nicholl's Creek, Dunedin, 121.
 Nicholson, Port, 76.
 Nightcaps, 139, 142.
 Nihotapu Falls, 5.
 Nissen's Bluff, 137.
 'Nobody knows what,' 155.
 Normal Schools, Christchurch, 100.
 Normanby, New Plymouth, 68, 69.
 Normanby, Dunedin, 117.
 Norris's Gully, 84.
Northern S.S. Co., [5].
 North Fiord, Te Anau, 150.
 North Shore, Auckland, 4.
 Nugget Point, 154.
 Nuggets, 125.
 Nukumar, Wanganui, 70.
 Nukumar Lake, New Plymouth, 57.
N. Z. & Australian Land Co., 113, 126.
N. Z. & Australian S.S. Co., [2].
N. Z. Company, [53], [55], 76, 80, 96, 109, 118.
N. Z., Description of, [12], [13].
N. Z. Shipping Co., [3], [4].
- O.
- Oakura, [57], 68, 61.
 Oamaru, [7], 107, 104, 108, 109, 112, 117.
Oamaru Stone, 107, 116, 119.
 Oban, 140.
 Ocean Beach, Dunedin, 122, 117, 119, 154.

Ohacawai, 8.
 Ohakeho, 69.
 Ohakuni, 50, 56.
 Ohau, Wellington, 74.
 Ohau Channel, Rotorna,
 23.
 Ohau Hill, Marlborough,
 92.
 Ohau, Lake, Canterbury,
 114, 116.
 Ohau R., 116.
 Ohaupo, 53.
 Ohei rapid, 51.
 Ohinemuri, 14.
 Ohinemutu, 15, 22, 23, 26, 27.
 Ohiwa, 39.
 Ohura R., 51.
 Oil Bath, Whakarewa-
 rewa, 17.
 Oinetamatea Creek, 135.
 Okaihau, 8.
 Okarito, 133.
 Okarito R., 133.
 Okaro, Lake, 25.
 Okato, 68.
 Okoroire, 12.
 Okurawai Springs, Wai-
 rakei, 34.
 Okuru Mts., 136.
 Okuru R., 136.
 Omahu, 43.
 Omahu Road, Napier, 43.
 Omaio, 39.
 Omapiiri, 6, 9.
 Omapiiri Lake, 8.
 Omarama, [7], 116, 108, 110,
 112, 114, 128.
 Omaramutu R., 39.
 Omaranni, [58], 43.
 Omoeroa Bluff, 134.
 One Tree Hill, 3.
 Onehunga, [5], 5, 10, 56.
 Onetapu desert, 50.
 Ongarua R., 51, 56.
 Onoki, 9.
 Opahi R., Canterbury, 113.
 Opaki, Wellington, 46.
 Opaki Plain, Wellington,
 46.
 Opanaki, Auckland, 9, 6.
 Opawa, Christchurch, 100.
 Opawa R., Marlborough,
 80.
 Open Bay Islands, 136.
 Opepe, 36.
 Opoho, Dunedin, 123.
 Opotiki, [58], 39, 38.
 Opua, 6, 7.
 Opunaki, New Plymouth,
 69, 68.
 Orakau Pa, [57], 53.

Orakeikorako, 29, 27.
 Orari, 105.
 Orepuki, 140, 139, 142.
 Oreti R., 139, 142, 148.
Orient SS. Co., [2], [3].
 Ormondville, 45.
 Oropi, 14.
 Oroua Bridge, 74.
 Oroua Downs, 74.
 Orphan Home, Parnell, 4.
Orpheus, Wreck of The, 56.
 Oruanui, 29.
 Otago, 118, 79, 106, 109, 116,
 119, 138.
Otago Central Rly., 124, 108.
 Otago University, The, 121,
 118, 119.
 Otahuhu, 10.
 Otaki, Wellington, [53], 74.
 Otakou, Dunedin, 122, 118.
 Otamarakau, 38.
 Otamatata, 116.
 Otautau, 139, 148.
 Otira Gorge, [8], 90, 78, 88,
 89, 103.
 Otorohanga, 55.
 Ounuaora, 7.
Outfit, [11].
 Outram, 125.
 Overton, 73.
 Owaka, 125, 126.
 Owen, Mt., 85.
 Owen R., 85.
 Owhaoku, 44.
 Oxburn R., 146.
 Oxford, Auckland, 12, 10,
 14, 15.
 Oxford West, Canterbury,
 94, 95.

P.

P. and O. SS. Co. [2].
 Pack-horse Mud Geyser,
 Wairakei, 31.
 Paeroa Range, 28.
 Pahautanui, [56].
 Pahia, Auckland, 8.
 Pahia Flat, Southland, 140.
 Pahiatua, 46.
 Paikakariki, 74.
 Pairoa, 14.
 Pakarae, 41.
 Pakaraka, 8.
 Pakihi, 14.
 Palmerston, Otago, 108.
 Palmerston, North, Well-
 ington, 73, 46, 70, 78.
 Papakaio Plain, 117.
 Papanui, Christchurch, 95.
 Papanui, Dunedin, 122.
 Paparoa Mts., Westland,
 87.
 Paparoa Rapids, Wan-
 ganui R., 51.
 Paradise, 146.
 Parakino, 52.
 Paranihinihi, 62.
 Paranini Cliffs, 64.
 Parawai, 14.
 Parehaka, 60, 68.
 Pareheru hill, 27.
 Parakohuru, Whakarewa-
 rewa, 17.
 Paremata, 74.
 Pareora R., 106.
 Paringa Lake, 135.
 Paringa R., 135.
 Paritutu, 61.
 Park, Nelson, 82.
 Parks, Auckland, 3.
 Parks, Christchurch, 99,
 100.
 Parker's Creek, 133.
 Parliamentary Buildings,
 Wellington, 77.
 Parnassus, 93.
 Parnell, 4, 3.
 Parson's Rock, 116.
 Patea, Hawke's Bay, 43.
 Patea, New Plymouth, 60,
 57, 60.
 Paterson Inlet, 140.
 Patetere plain, 13.
Patterson, Bp., 4.
 Pearson, Lake, 91.
 Peel Forest, 105.
 Peel, Mt., 105.
 Pegasus Port, 141.
 Pelorus Sound, 81.
 Pembroke, Lake Wanaka,
 129, 127, 130, 144.
 Pembroke Peak, Milford
 Sound, 157.
 Peninsula, Dunedin, 122.
 Peninsula, Wanaka, 129.
 Penrose, 10.
 Petane R., Hawke's Bay,
 37, 41.
 Petone, Wellington, 47, 76.
 Petrifying Geyser, Wai-
 rakei, 31.
 Petroleum workings,
 Waiaapu, 40.
Phillip Laing, The, 118.
 Phoenix Mine, Skippers,
 144, 145.
Phormium tenax, [61].
 Piako R., 12.
 Piako Swamp, 11, 53.
 Pickersgill Harbour, 155.
 Picton, [7], 78, 79.

- Pigeon Bay, Banks' Peninsula, 101.
 Pigeon Island, Wakatipu, 145.
 Pigeon Island, Wanaka, 129.
 Pihangi, Mt., 49, 51.
 Pine Hill, Dunedin, 123.
 Pink Terrace, Rotomahana, 16, 24, 25.
 Pipiriki, [57], 50, 49, 51, 56.
 Pipitea, Wellington, 76.
 Pirongia Mts., 54.
 Pirorirori Lake, Wairakei, 33.
 Pisa Range, 128.
 Pitt Island, 103.
 Plantation Island, Wanaka, 129.
 Pleasant Point, 113.
 'Plymouth Company of N. Z.,' *The*, 59.
 Poawha, Mt., 57.
Poetry, Specimens of Maori, [47]-[49].
 Pohangina R., 46.
 Pohaturoa, Mt., 28.
 Pohui, 37.
 Pohutu Geyser, 17, 18.
Pomare, 7.
 Pomona Island, Manapouri, 150.
 Ponakai Ranges, 62, 64, 65.
 Ponsoby, Auckland, 1, 3.
 Ponui, 3, 14.
Population of N. Z., [59].
 Porewa R., 73.
 Porirua, [53], [56], 74, 47.
 Porotaroa, 56.
 Port Chalmers, 109, 153, 154.
 Port Nicholson, 76.
 Porter R., 91.
 Porter's Pass, 91.
 Portland Island, 42.
 Portobello, 122, 117, 123.
Potatau, King, [57], 54.
 Poteriteri Lake, 140.
 Potiki, Wanganui, 71.
 Poukawa, 49.
 Poverty Bay, 41.
Poverty Bay Massacre, [58].
Pratt, Gen., 61.
 Preservation Inlet, 154, 153.
 Priest's Bath, Rotorua, 17.
 Primrose Falls, Waiotapu, 27.
 Prince of Wales' Feathers, Wairakei, 32.
 Provincial Council Chamber, Christchurch, 97.
 Puarenga Creek, 17.
 Public Gardens, Christchurch, 99.
 Public Library, Christchurch, 100.
 Public Library, Wanganui, 72.
 Puhipuhi, 6.
 Pukaki, Lake, [7], 114, 110, 112, 116, 128.
 Pukaki R., 114.
 Pukearuhe, 62.
 Pukekohe, 10.
 Pukekura, 122.
 Pukerangiora, 57, 62.
 Pukerau, Otago, 126.
 Puketakuere, 60, 62.
 Puketapu, Otago, 108.
 Puketapu Road, Napier, 44.
 Puketeraki, 109.
 Pukeuri Junction, 107, 117.
 Pungarehu, 68.
 Punui R., 55.
 Purakanui, 109.
 Puriri, 14.
 Pyke's Creek, 137.
- Q
- Queen Charlotte's Sound, [54], 78.
 Queen's Drive, Dunedin, 122.
 Queenstown, [7], 143, 125, 128, 130, 142, 144, 145, 156.
- R
- Rabbit Island, Wakatipu, 145.
 Race Course, New Plymouth, 60.
 Race Courses, Wellington, 77.
 Bohotu, 69.
Railways in N. Z., [6].
 Rainbow, The, 84.
Rainfall in N. Z., [14].
 Rakaia R., 104.
 Rakiahua, Mt., 140.
 Rakiura, 140.
 Ranana, 52.
 Rangatana Lake, 57.
 Rangatira, 73.
 Ranges, Ponakai, 62, 64, 65.
 Rangihaeata, 74, 80.
 Rangiora, 94, 95.
 Rangipo Desert, 50.
Rangirarunga, 58.
 Rangiriri pa, [57], 11.
 Rangitai R., 36, 38.
 Rangitata R., 105.
 Rangitikei County, 73.
 Rangitikei R., 44, 73.
 Rangitoto Island, Auckland, 4, 3, 14.
 Rangitoto, Mt., Westland, 132.
Ranunculus Lyalli, 90, 112.
Raraoa, 9.
 Rarotonga Island, 154.
 Raukokore, 40.
 Raukumara Mts., 40.
Raumahora, Legend of, 58.
 Recreation Ground, New Plymouth, 60.
 Red Hills, Nelson, 85.
 Redcliffe, Napier, 43.
 Reefton, [63], 87.
 Rees River, 147, 146.
Refrigerating. See Freezing.
Religions of N. Z., [60].
Religion, Old, of the Maoris, [47], 54.
 Remarkable Mts., 130, 143, 144.
 Remuera, Auckland, 3, 4.
 Renwick, 81.
 Reporus, 40.
 Rere Lake, 145.
Rereanokea, 66.
 Reservoir, Dunedin, 121.
 Reservoir, Nelson, 83.
 Resolution Island, 155, 156.
Revi, 54.
 Rhoborough Downs Sta., 114.
 Riccarton, 95, 96, 100.
 Richardson Mts., 144, 145, 146.
 Richmond, Christchurch, 95.
 Richmond, Nelson, 83, 84.
 Rio de Janeiro, [3].
Rivers of N. Z., [15].
 Riversdale, 126.
 Riverton, 140, 141.
 Roaring Bay, Otago, 125.
 Roaring Billy Creek, Haast R., 137.
 Rock and Pillar Range, 124.
 Rolla Island, 155.
 Rolleston Junction, 91, 104.
 Rolleston, Mt., 90, 91.
 Rolleston, Mt., Glacier, 90, 91.
 Romahapa, 125.
 Rona Island, Manapouri, 150.
 Ross, Mt., 115, 116.
 Roslyn, 122, 117, 123, 124.
 Ross, 132, 89, 131.

- Rotherham, 94.
 Roto Aira, 51.
 Roto Iti, Auckland, 23, 16, 18, 22.
 Roto Iti, Nelson, 85.
 Rotoehu, 23.
 Rotokakahi, 26, 24.
 Rotokawa, Taupo, 36.
 Rotokawan, Rotorua, 23.
 Rotokino Flat, 132.
 Rotoma, 23.
 Rotomahana, 26, 23, 24, 25, 27.
 Rotomakariri, 24, 25.
 Rotoroa, Nelson, 88.
 Rotorua, Auckland, [7], [8], 15-28, 10, 12, 13, 35, 53.
 Rotorua R., Nelson, 85.
 Rototui, Wanaka, 129.
 Rough Creek, 133.
 Ruteburn Valley, 146.
 Routes to N. Z., [1]-[5].
 Roxburgh, [7], 127, 128.
 Ruahine Mts., Wellington, 45, 73.
 Ruahine, Southland, 140.
 Ruahine, Tikitere, 22.
 Ruakura, 12.
 Ruamahunga R., 46.
 Ruapehu, Mt., 13, 15, 24, 35, 44, 49, 50, 52, 57, 63, 64, 65, 71, 72.
 Ruapekapeka, [56], 6, 7.
 Ruapuke Island, 139, 154.
 Ruataniwha plain, 45.
 Ruawahia, 24, 25.
 Rugged Ranges Sta., 116.
 Rukuhia Swamp, 53.
 Runaway, Cape, 40.
 Rununga Plain, 36.
 Rurima Rocks, Matata, 38.
 Russell, 7, 6.
 Rye Valley, 81.
- S.
- Saddle Hill, 124.
 Safe Cove, Te Anau, 151.
 Saltwater Creek, 135.
 San Francisco, [1].
 Sanatorium, Rotorua, 16, 15.
 Sandhurst, 117.
 Sanson, 74.
 Saunders, Cape, 122, 154.
 Saunders, Sir Chas., 122.
 Sawyer's Bay, Dunedin, 109.
 Scandinavian Settlements, 45, 46.
 Scheelite Mine, 147.
 School of Art, Christchurch, 99.
 Seinde Island, 37.
 Scotch Colony, Association for Promoting, 118.
 Scott, Sir Gilbert, 97.
 Sea Cliff, 109.
 Seaward Bush, 139.
 Sebastopol, 114.
 Secretary Island, 155.
 Seeley Mts., 115.
 Sealey Pass, 133.
 Sefton, 94.
 Sefton, Mt., 114, 115.
 Selwyn, Bp., [56], 4, 8, 95, 97, 122.
 Selwyn R., 104.
 Sentinel Peak, 129.
 Sentry Hill, 67.
 Shag Point, 108.
 Shannon, 74.
 Shaw Savill and Albion S.S. Co., [3], [4].
 Sheep in N. Z., [60].
 Sheffield, 91.
 Ship Creek, 136.
 Shotover R., 144, 145.
 'Siberia', 47.
 Signal Hill, Dunedin, 123.
 Simon's Pass, 114.
 Sinter Slope, Okakeikorako, 29.
 Skippers, 144, 145.
 Skippers' Track, 144.
 Smart, Mt., 3.
 Smith Sound, 155, 153.
 Sodom, 18.
 Solander Islands, 140, 154.
 Somers Mts., 105.
 Sounds, The, 153-157.
 South Fiord, Te Anau, 150.
 Southbridge, 101, 104.
 Southern Alps, 64, 89, 110, 131, 133, 154.
 Southland, [57], 138, 119, 126.
 Southland Plain, 126.
 Spain, Mr. Commissioner, [56], 59, 80.
 Spencer Mts., 85.
 Spey R., 150.
 Spooner's Range, 84.
 Sport in N. Z., [11], [12].
 Spout Bath, Whakarewara, 17.
 Spring Creek, 80.
 Springfield, 91, 94, 95.
 Springs, The, 91.
 St. Andrews, 106.
 St. Arnaud Mts., 85.
 St. Clair, Dunedin, 122.
 St. John, Colonel, 36.
 St. John's Wood, Wanganui, 71.
 St. Paul's Arm, Manapouri, 150.
 St. Quentin Falls, 151.
 Stair Peak, 147.
 Stanley, Capt., 97, 102.
 Starvation Gully, 91.
 Steam Hammer, Wairakei, 30.
 Steam-Hole, The Great, Wairakei, 34.
 Steam Ship Co., Northern, [5], 6.
 Stewart, 102, 140.
 Stewart Island, 140, 138, 141.
 Stewart, Mr. Vesey, Special Settlements, 14, 38.
 Stirling, Otago, 125.
 Stirling Falls, Milford Sound, 157.
 Stocking Glacier, 115.
 Stoke, 83, 84.
 Stone Peak, 145, 147.
 Stoney Creek Stream, 37.
 Stony R., Mt. Egmont, 64.
 Stratford, 67, 65, 66.
 Strathtaieri Plain, 124.
 Stuart, Rev. Dr., 120, 121.
 Studholme Junction, 106.
 Sugarloaf Hill, Canterbury, 91.
 Sugarloaf Hill, Rotorua, 28.
 'Sugarloaves,' The, New Plymouth, 61, 63, 64.
 Sulphur Falls, Waiotapu, 27.
 Sulphur Point, Rotorua, 17, 16.
 Sulphur Pool, Wairakei, 31.
 Sulphur Springs, Wairakei, 34.
 Summit, 47.
 Sumner, 100, 95, 101.
 Supreme Court, Auckland, 2.
 Supreme Court, Christchurch, 98.
 Supreme Court, Dunedin, 119.
 Suter, Bp., 82, 83.
 Sutherland Falls, [7], 152, 148, 151, 153, 157.
 Sutherland Sound, 156.
 Sutton, 124.
 Swainson, Mr., 4.
 Sylvan Lake, 146.

- T.
- Taheke, Roto Iti, 23.
- Taiaroa Head, 122, 118, 123, 154.
- Taiaroa, The*, 92.
- Taieri Mouth, 124.
- Taieri Plain, 123, 124.
- Taieri R., 124, 125.
- Taieri, Upper, 124.
- Taimui*, 38.
- Taipu R., Westland, 90.
- Tairua, 25.
- Takaka Valley, 83.
- Takapau, 45.
- Takapuna, Lake, 4, 5.
- Takarangi*, 58.
- Takitimu Mts., 138, 148.
- Tamaki R., 3.
- Tamati Waka Neme*, 7, 57.
- Tangarakau, 52.
- Tangitiroria, 9.
- Taonga*, 109.
- Tapuae R., New Plymouth, 68.
- Tapusenuka, Mt., Marlborough, 92.
- Taputakinol, 118.
- Tapuwaharuru, Lake Taupo, 35.
- Tapuwaharuru, Roto Iti, 23.
- Taranaki Mt., 52, 57.
- Taranaki Province, 59, 82.
- See also Mt. Egmont and New Plymouth.
- Taranaki Wars*, [57], 60, 68.
- Tararu, Auckland, 14.
- Tararua Mts., Wellington, 47, 74.
- Tararua, The*, 127.
- Tarawera, Lake, 24, 26.
- Tarawera, Mt., 23, 24, 25, 26, 27.
- Tarawera Settlement, Hawke's Bay, 37, 36.
- Tarawera, The*, 153, 155, 157.
- Tarewai*, 122, 123.
- Tardale, 84.
- Tarras Station, 129.
- Tararua R., 44.
- Tasman*, [55].
- Tasman Glacier, 115, 110, 114, 116.
- Tasman, Mt., 134.
- Tasman R., 114.
- Tasman Sea, [3].
- Tasman Valley, 114, 116.
- Tataraimaka, 68.
- Tauhara, Mt., 35, 36.
- Taukupu R., 126.
- Taumaranni, 51, 49, 50, 55, 56.
- Taungatara, Mt., 9.
- Taupiri, 11.
- Taupo, Lake, [7], [8], 35, 10, 12, 27, 36, 42, 43, 48, 51, 52, 53, 57.
- Taurakopiere, 52.
- Tauranga, [51], 13, 14, 38.
- Tauranga-taupo, 48.
- Taurangaika Pa, 70.
- Taurarus, Auckland, 4.
- Tautuku Forest, 154.
- Tautuku R., 126.
- Tauwherikiti, Lake, 136.
- Tawa Flat, 75.
- Tauhiao, King*, [51], [58], 11, 54.
- Tayeto*, 42.
- Te Anau, Lake, [7], 148-152, 140, 142, 154, 156, 157.
- Te Arai, 61, 62.
- Te Arika, 24.
- Te Aro, Wellington, 76, 47.
- Te Aroha, 14, 12, 15.
- Te Aroha, Mt., 15, 12.
- Te Aute, 45.
- Te Awamutu, 53, 54, 55.
- Te Haroto, 37.
- Te Heu Heu*, [48], [56], 48.
- Te Horo, Whakarewarewa, 17.
- Te Kaha, 40.
- Te Kawakawa, 40.
- Te Kooti, [58], 39, 41, 103.
- Te Kopuru, 9.
- Te Kuiti, [7], 55, 11, 53, 56, 62, 73.
- Te Mari, Tongariro, 49.
- Te Mimiahomaiterangi, 29.
- Te Ngae, 22, 18.
- Te Puka, 38.
- Te Puna, 7.
- Te Puni*, 47, 59.
- Te Rangihaeata*, [53], 74, 80.
- Te Rauparaha*, [51], [53], [56], 47, 74, 80, 95, 102, 108, 126.
- Te Beinga Falls, 41.
- Te Rekereke Geysers, Wairakei, 30.
- Te Berenga-o-ko-Inaki, 51.
- Te Bonga, 80.
- Te Teko, 24.
- Te Ua*, [58].
- Te Wairakei Stream, 30.
- Te Wera, 109.
- Te Whero Whero*, [57], 54, 57. See *Potatau, King*.
- Te Whiti*, [58], 68, 69.
- Teira*, 59, 62.
- Tekapo, Lake, 114, 110, 112.
- Tekapo R., 114.
- Temple Burn, 147.
- Temple Peak, 147.
- Temuka, 105.
- Tenamu, 69.
- Tenariffe, Peak of, 57.
- Tengawai R., 113.
- Terata, Tikitere, 22.
- Teraumea R., 46.
- Terawhiti, Cape, 78.
- Teremakau R., 87, 88, 90, 110, 111.
- Terrace, Black, Taupo, 36.
- Terrace Geysers, Wairakei, 31.
- Terrace, New, Waiotapu, 27.
- Terrace, Old, Wairakei, 33.
- Terrace, Pink, Rotomahana, 24, 16.
- Terrace, White, Rotomahana, 24, 16.
- Teschmaker's, 108.
- Teviot, 127.
- Thames, [63], 14, 4, 12.
- Thames, Frith of, 3.
- Theological College, Nelson, 83.
- Theological College, Parrnell, 4.
- Thierry, Baron de*, [51], [55], 102.
- Thomas Bluff, 136.
- Thompson Sound, 155, 150.
- Thornbury, 139.
- Thorndon, Wellington, 76.
- Three Bridges, Nelson, 83.
- Three Kings Islands, 5.
- Thurlby Domain, 144.
- Thurloe Papers*, 2.
- Tikitapu Bush, 26, 23.
- Tikitapu Lake, 26.
- Tikitere, 22, 16, 18, 23.
- Tikorangi, 57, 62.
- Timaru, [7], [8], 105, 106, 107, 112.
- Tinwald, 105.
- Tiri Tiri, 3.
- Titio-kuru Saddle, 37.
- Tioko Waru*, 60, 68.
- Tohu*, 69.
- Tokaano, [48], 48, 24, 36, 49, 50.
- Tokaraki, 108.
- Tokatoka, Mt., 9.
- Tokomairoro Plain, 125.
- Tokomairoro R., 125, 127.
- Tokumarua, 40.
- Tokumarua Canoe*, 57.
- Tolago, 41.

Tomocana, 45, 43.
 Tongaporutu R., 62.
 Tongariro Mt., [49], 13, 35,
 49, 57, 63, 64, 65.
 Tooth Peaks, 145, 146.
 Top House, 84.
 Torlesse, Mt., 91, 104.
 Tory Channel, 78.
Tory, The, [55].
 Totara, Auckland, [52], 14.
 Totara, Otago, 108.
 Totara Flat, Westland, 87.
 Totara R., Westland, 133.
 Town Belt, Dunedin, 122,
 119.
 Town Hall, Dunedin, 120.
 Travers, Mt., 85.
Trees in N. Z., [35]-[44].
 Trigonometrical Survey
 Station, 23, 124.
Trollope, Anthony, 145.
 Turakina, 72.
 Tuakitito, Lake, 125.
 Tuamarina, 80, 79.
 Tuapeka, 119.
 Tuhatahi, Wairakei, 30,
 33.
Tukiauau, 124.
 Tupurupuru, Mt., 37.
 Turanga (Gisborne), 38, 41.
 Turanga - kumu hill,
 Hawke's Bay, 37.
 Turangiriri, 44, 53, 56.
 Turere, 39.
 Turikore Bath, Whaka-
 rewarewa, 17.
 Turnbull, Mt., 144.
 Turnbull R., 136.
 Turret Peaks, 129.
 Tutaikuri Valley, 44.
Tutanekai, 19, 20, 21.
 Tutoko Mt., 146, 157.
Tuairiroa, 124.
 Twin Peaks, 129.
 Twins, The, Wairakei, 32.

U.

Union SS. Co., [2], [5], [6],
 101, 152, 153, 157.
 University College, Auck-
 land, 2.
University of N. Z., [60].
 University of Otago, The,
 121, 118, 119.
 Upokongaro, 53.
 Upper Hutt, 47.
 Upukerora R., 149.
 Urenui, 62, 63.
Urutera, 39.
 Utapu, 52.

V.

Vancouver, Breaksea
 Sound, 155.
Vegetation in N. Z., [28]-[44].
 Victor, Mt., 136.
 Victoria, Mt., Auckland, 3.
 Victoria, Mt., Wellington,
 77.
 View Point, Mt. Cook, 115.
Vogel, Sir Julius, [58].
Volkner, Rev. C., [57], 39.
 Von R., 145.

W.

Wahanga, Mt., 24, 25.
Wahamui, 55.
 Wahapo, Lake, 133.
 Waiapu, 40, 25.
 Waiaroa R., [52].
 Waiau, Nelson, 93, 94.
 Waiau Gorge, Nelson, 94.
 Waiau R., Nelson, 93, 94.
 Waiau R., Southland, 139,
 148, 149, 150, 154.
 Waiau-toa (Clarence) R.,
 Marlborough, 92.
 Waihao Downs, Canter-
 bury, 106.
 Waiheke Island, 3, 14.
 Waihemo, 108.
 Waihi Fall, Taupo, 49.
 Waihi goldfield, Auck-
 land, 14.
 Waiho Bluff, Westland,
 134.
 Waiho R., Westland, 133,
 134.
 Waiholo, Lake, Otago, 125,
 124.
 Waihou, Lakes, Gisborne,
 41.
 Waihou R., Thames, 14.
 Waikahako, 79.
 Waikaneī, [53], 74.
 Waikaremoana, Lake, 41.
 Waikari, Canterbury, 94.
 Waikari Lake, Auckland,
 11.
 Waikato R., [52], 11, 12, 28,
 29, 34, 35, 50.
Waikato Tribe, 57, 62.
Waikato War, 10, 11, 54.
 Waikite Geyser, Whaka-
 rewarewa, 18.
 Waikohai Stream, West-
 land, 134.
 Waikohu, Hicks' Bay, 40.
 Waikomiti, 5.
 Waikorohihi Geyser,
 Whakarewarewa, 17.

Waikouaiti, 108, 109, 118.
 Waikukupu, 134.
 Waimakariri R., 91, 94, 104.
 Waimamuku R., 9.
 Waimangaroa, 86.
 Waimarino, 51, 56.
 Waimate, Canterbury, 106.
 Waimate Mission Station,
 Auckland, 8.
 Waimate Plain, Hawera,
 69.
 Waimatuku R., 139.
 Waimaea Plain, Nelson, 83,
 84.
 Waimaea Plain, Southland,
 126, 142.
 Waimaea Valley, Nelson,
 82.
 Waingawa Valley, 47.
 Wainuiomata R., 77.
 Wai-o-hike, Napier, 43.
 Waiongona Bridge, New
 Plymouth, 61.
 Waiouru, 53.
 Waiotahi Ford, 39.
 Waiotapu, 27, 28, 29.
 Waipa R., Auckland, 11,
 54, 55.
 Waipahi, Otago, 126.
 Waipahi R., Otago, 119.
 Waipahihi, Taupo, 35, 36,
 48.
 Waipapa Point, Marl-
 borough, 92.
 Waipapa Point, South-
 land, 127, 154.
 Waipara R., Canterbury,
 94.
 Waipawa R., Hawke's
 Bay, 45.
 Waipiro, 40.
 Waipukurau, Hawke's
 Bay, 45, 43.
 Waipuna, Rotorua, 13.
 Waipuna Stream, Taupo,
 36.
 Waipunga R., Hawke's
 Bay, 37.
 Wairakei, 29-35, 12, 28.
 Wairakei Geyser, Great,
 31, 33.
 Wairakei, Little, 31.
 Wairarapa, Lake, 47.
 Wairarapa Plain, 47.
 Wairau Gorge, 84.
Wairau Massacre, [53], [56],
 80, 82.
 Wairau Plain, 80.
 Wairat R., 81, 85.
 Waireka, New Plymouth,
 [57], 68, 60, 61.

- Waireka Junction, Oamaru, 107.
 Wairoa (Clyde), 41, 42, 43.
 Wairoa, Tarawera Lake, 26, 25.
 Wairoa Falls, Tarawera Lake, 26.
 Wairoa Geyser, Whakarewarewa, 18.
 Wairoa Lake, Rotorua, 23.
 Wairoa Redoubt, Waverley, 69.
 Wairoa R., Hawke's Bay, 41.
 Wairoa R., Northern, 9.
 Wairua Fall, Whangarei, 6.
 Waita Lagoon, Westland, 136.
 Waita R., Westland, 136.
 Waitahuna, 127.
 Waitaka R., Westland, 132.
 Waitaka R., Little, Westland, 132.
 Waitakerei Falls, Auckland, 5.
 Waitakerei Mts., Auckland, 4.
 Waitaki County, 107.
 Waitaki, North, Canterbury, 106.
 Waitaki R., Canterbury, 106, 116, 117, 119.
 Waitaki, South, Otago, 107.
 Waitangi, Chatham Islands, 103.
 Waitangi, Treaty of, [50], 7, 8.
 Waitangi, Westland, 133.
 Waitangi Falls, Auckland, 8.
 Waitangi Ford, Rotorua, 23.
 Waitangi Hall, Auckland, 8.
 Waitangi Taona R., Westland, 133.
 Waitara, [57], 62, 56, 57, 59, 61, 63, 64, 67.
 Waitara R., 62.
 Waitara Road Station, 61.
 Waitāiti, Otago, 109, 123.
 Waiteti Valley, Auckland, 55.
 Waitoa R., Auckland, 12.
 Waitotara, Wanganui, 69.
 Waiwakaiho R., 61, 63.
 Waiwera, 5, 6.
 Wakamarina, 79.
 Waka Nene, 7, 57.
 Wakapohai Saddle, 136.
 Wakapuaka Road, Nelson, 81, 83.
 Wakatipu, Lake, [7], [8], [63], 142-147, 125, 126, 127, 128, 129, 130, 140, 148, 149.
 Wakatū, Nelson, 82.
 Wakefield, Nelson, 84.
 Wakefield, Capt., 80, 82.
 Wakefield, Col., [55], 59.
 Wakefield, Gibbon, [55], 76, 118.
 Wakefield, Mt., 116.
 Wallacetown, 138.
 Walter Peak, 144, 145.
 Wanaka, Lake, [7], 129, 88, 110, 112, 127, 128, 131, 137, 142.
 Wandel R., 93.
 Wangaehu R., 72.
 Wangamoa Valley, 81.
 Wanganui, Wellington, [7], [56], [58], 70-72, 53, 60, 61, 67.
 Wanganui, Westland, 132.
 Wanganui Heads, Wellington, 72.
 Wanganui R., Wellington, 50-53, 48, 56, 57, 70.
 Wanganui R., Big, Westland, 132.
 Wanganui R., Little, Westland, 132.
 Wanganui tribe, 35.
 Washdyke, 113.
 Wataroa Flat, Westland, 132, 133.
 Wataroa R., Westland, 132, 133.
 Water of Leith, Dunedin, 121, 123.
 Waverley, Dunedin, 117.
 Waverley, Wanganui, 69.
 Weka Island, Wanaka, 129.
 Weka Pass, Canterbury, 94.
 Wellington, [5], [7], [8], [56], [57], 75-78, 10, 25, 42, 44, 45, 47, 61, 67, 68, 70, 82, 118.
 Wellington, Mt., Auckland, [52].
 Wereroa, [57], 69, 50.
 West Dome Mt., 148.
 Westland, [58], 89, 79, 87, 90, 131.
 Westport, 86, 84, 85, 87.
 Westport Coal Co., 86.
 Wet Jacket Arm, 155, 153.
 Weydon Burn, 149.
 Whakapūnaki Mts., 41.
 Whakarewa Pa, New Plymouth, 58.
 Whakarewarewa, 17, 15, 16, 18, 27, 28.
 Whakari, Mt., Marlborough, 93.
 Whaka-taka-aneheha, 122.
 Whakatanze R., 39.
 Whale Island, 38.
 Whale's Back, The, 93.
 Whangaparaoa R., 40.
 Whangarei 6, 9, 25.
 Whangaroa, [52], 8.
 Whatiwhatiho e, 54.
 Whistler, The, Wairakei, 32.
 'White Cliffs' Massacre, 62.
 White Horse Hill, Mt. Cook, 115.
 White Island, 15, 38, 40.
 White Springs, Wairakei, 33.
 White Stone Creek, 149.
 White Terrace, Rotomahana, 24, 16.
 Whitecliffs, Canterbury, 104.
Wi Kingi, 59, 62.
 Wills R., 137.
 Wilson R., 154.
 Winchester, 105.
 Windsor Junction, 108.
 Wingatui Junction, 124.
 Winslow, 105.
 Winton, 142.
Wiremu Kingi, 54.
Wohlers, Rev. Mr., 139.
 Woodend, Southland, 139.
 Woodlands, Southland, 127.
 Woodside, Wellington, 47.
 Woodstock, Westland, 132.
 Woodville, Hawke's Bay, 45, 42, 43, 44, 46, 73, 78.
 Woollen Factory, Kaiapoi, 94.
 Woollen Factory, Mosgiel, 123, 125.
 Woollen Factory, Petone, 47.
 Woollen Factory, Roslyn, 122, 124.
 Woolston, 100.
 Worsley R., 151.
 Wyndham, 126.
- Y.
- Young, Nicholas, 41.
 Young Nick's Head, 41

UNION STEAM-SHIP COMPANY OF NEW ZEALAND, LIMITED.

HEAD OFFICE—DUNEDIN, NEW ZEALAND.
JAMES MILLS, Esq., *Managing Director.*

FLEET OF 52 STEAMERS FROM 3,500 TONS UPWARDS.

Intercolonial Services.

Australia and New Zealand.

The steamers of the Company leave Melbourne weekly for all New Zealand Ports, *via* Hobart, and *vice versa*. They also make weekly departures from Sydney for New Zealand, *via* Auckland and East Coast Ports; and fortnightly, *via* Cook Strait and Wellington, and *vice versa*.

Australia and Tasmania.

Steamers leave Melbourne thrice weekly for Launceston, weekly for Hobart, and weekly for North-west Ports, and *vice versa*. They also leave Sydney for Launceston, *via* Eden, every ten days; and for Hobart, *via* Eden, twice weekly, and *vice versa*.

South Sea Islands.

A steamer is despatched from Melbourne once a month for Sava and Levuka (Fiji), and another from Auckland (New Zealand) for the same ports; while one of the Company's steamers plies regularly between the principal islands of the Fiji Group. There is also a monthly service between Auckland and the Samoan and Tongan Groups.

Coastal Services.

On the Coast of New Zealand there are frequent and regular services between the various ports; while between the principal ports there is almost daily communication.

San Francisco (Trans-Pacific) Royal Mail Service.

In conjunction with the Oceanic Steam-ship Company, and under contract with the Governments of New Zealand, New South Wales, and the United States of America, the Company run a regular four-weekly mail service between Sydney and San Francisco, *via* Auckland, Apia (Samoa), and Honolulu, and *vice versa*.

This is undoubtedly *the* passenger route to and from England, avoiding alike the heat of the Red Sea and the cold of Cape Horn, and giving passengers the opportunity of travelling in luxury and comfort through the most interesting country in the world; while it is also the quickest route Home, the trip occupying only thirty-one days from Auckland.

Round the World Tours.

The Company issues 'Round the World' Tickets, giving passengers the choice of proceeding from Europe by any of the magnificent steamers of the Peninsular and Oriental, Orient, North German Lloyd, and Messageries Maritimes Lines to Australia, thence to New Zealand by the Company's fine Inter-Colonial steamers, and Home *via* their mail steamers to San Francisco, thence by any of the various trunk-line routes across the American Continent, and from the Atlantic sea-board to Europe by any of the unrivalled steam-ships of the Cunard, White Star, American, North German Lloyd, &c. Lines. It is at the option of the passenger to make the trip in the opposite direction, commencing *via* the Atlantic.

For further particulars and full information apply at Head Office of the Company, Dunedin, or at the Company's Branches and Agencies throughout New Zealand, Australia, and Tasmania, and in San Francisco at Messrs. J. D. SPRECKELS & BROS. Co., or at the London Office, 18, WALBROOK, E.C.

**THE BEST ROUTE TO AND FROM
NEW ZEALAND, TASMANIA, AND AUSTRALIA.**

Magnificent full-powered Royal Mail Steamers of the

Shaw, Savill, and Albion Co.'s Line

Leave LONDON (Royal Albert Docks)

EVERY FOUR WEEKS, calling at PLYMOUTH, TENERIFFE,
CAPE TOWN and HOBART.

No Red Sea Heat. Superb Accommodation. Electric Light.
Patent Refrigerators for Fresh Meat, Vegetables, &c. Unsurpassed Cuisine.
Experienced Surgeons carried.

**Reduced Fares. Cheap Return Tickets.
Special Round the World Rates.**

For full particulars apply to the HEAD OFFICE—

SHAW, SAVILL, AND ALBION CO., LIMITED,

34, LEADENHALL STREET, LONDON, E.C.,

Or to any of the Agents of the Company. Agents and Correspondents throughout the World.

BANK OF NEW ZEALAND

(Incorporated by Act of General Assembly, July 29, 1861).

BANKERS TO THE NEW ZEALAND GOVERNMENT.

CAPITAL - - £900,000.

Reserve Fund, £35,000. Reserve Liability of Shareholders, £1,500,000.

HEAD OFFICE: 1, QUEEN VICTORIA STREET, LONDON, E.C.

Directors—RICHARD H. GLYN, Esq., President; Colonel ROBERT BARING; JOHN A. EWEN, Esq. (of Messrs Sargood, Son, & Ewen); The Right Hon. Sir J. FERGUSSON, Bart., G.C.S.I., K.C.M.G., M.P.; E. HERBERT FISON, Esq.

Manager—C. G. TEGETMEIER.

Auditors—Messrs. PRICE, WATERHOUSE & CO.

London Bankers—THE BANK OF ENGLAND; Messrs. GLYN, MILLS, CURRIE & CO.

Chief Office in Colonies—AUCKLAND, NEW ZEALAND.

General Manager—WILLIAM TURTON HOLMES.

BRANCHES.

In Australia—Adelaide, S.A.; Melbourne, Victoria; Newcastle and Sydney, N.S.W.

In New Zealand—Auckland, Ashburton, Blenheim, Christchurch, Dunedin, Gisborne, Greymouth, Hamilton, Hokitika, Invercargill, Lyttelton, Milton, Napier, Nelson, New Plymouth, Oamaru, Thames, Timaru, Wanganui, Wellington, Westport, and at Ninety-four other Towns and places throughout the Colony.

In Fiji—Suva and Levuka.

The Bank of New Zealand, London, Grants Drafts on any of the above-named places in New Zealand, Australia, and Fiji; Receives Fixed Deposits of £50 and upwards, rates and particulars of which can be ascertained on application; Opens Current Accounts for the convenience of its Colonial constituents; Negotiates and Collects Bills payable in any part of the Australasian Colonies and Fiji; Undertakes the Agency of Persons connected with the Colonies; and receives for safe custody Colonial Securities, Shares, &c., drawing Interest and Dividends on the same as they fall due.

ADVERTISEMENTS.

The Argus.

Published Daily in Melbourne, Australia. Price, One Penny.

The ARGUS is the leading Paper in the Colonies, the oldest in Victoria, has a large circulation, and consists of eighty columns daily, 128 columns on Saturday. There are few houses of business of any note in any of the Australasian Colonies in which it is not found.

The Australasian (Illustrated).

Published Weekly in Melbourne.

The Largest Journal in the Australasian Colonies. Price Sixpence.

It consists of 260 columns, and contains Literary, Scientific, Rural, and Sporting subjects, particularly adapted to country readers.

It circulates extensively through the various Colonies of Australia, is read on the most remote stations in the newly-settled country on the Gulf of Carpentaria, and in the most secluded gold fields of New Zealand.

The AUSTRALASIAN thus offers to Manufacturers, Shippers, Hotel Keepers, Publishers, and others, a medium of unequalled extent and variety for their Advertisements.

The South Australian Register.

Established 1836. A first-class, eight-page, Daily Paper (sixty-four columns). Published in Adelaide, and contains the most complete Political, Commercial, Mining, and General intelligence. Price, One Penny.

The Adelaide Observer.

Established 1843. A first-class Weekly Paper, circulating largely in South Australia and the other Colonies, comprising forty-eight pages. A large portion of its space is specially devoted to Agriculture and Pastoral Interest, Sporting, General Literature, &c. Price, Sixpence.

The Evening Journal.

Established 1869. Published in Adelaide. A cheap Evening Paper, with a large circulation. Price, One Penny.

LONDON OFFICES OF THE ABOVE, 80, FLEET STREET, E.C.

London Office for Australian Press Telegrams : 80, FLEET STREET, E.C.

The only Daily Morning Newspaper in Auckland.

The New Zealand Herald,

Containing sixty-four long columns daily, and ninety-six columns on Saturday,

is published in Auckland every morning, and is universally recognized as the leading and most influential Newspaper in New Zealand, and is consequently

The Best Daily Advertising Medium in the Colony.

The New Zealand Herald is the only Newspaper in the Colony which regularly consists of eight pages daily, and twelve pages on Saturday; and is the only daily eight-paged Newspaper circulating in the North Island, which contains a population, still rapidly increasing, of 300,000 souls. A large special Monthly Summary is prepared for the outgoing English Mail.

The Machinery by which the New Zealand Herald is printed and folded is unequalled in the Colony, the Proprietors having had two of Messrs. Hoe & Co.'s celebrated Web Printing Machines specially constructed for its production.

The London Office is at 30, FLEET STREET, E.C., where Advertisements are received.

The Best Weekly Advertising Medium in New Zealand.

The Auckland Weekly News

Has the Largest Circulation of any Weekly Newspaper in the Colony,

And is the only Weekly Newspaper of its kind published in the Provincial District of Auckland, and consists of forty-eight pages, or two hundred and forty columns, every week. It circulates especially amongst Farmers, Squatters, Settlers, Storekeepers, and in the country districts where a Daily Newspaper is not taken.

Considering the class of its readers throughout New Zealand, it is, as an Advertising Medium for AGRICULTURAL IMPLEMENTS and the various necessities of a farming and rural population, *without an equal.*

Advertisements received at the London Office, 30, FLEET STREET, E.C.

The Australian Irrigation Colonies,

CHAFFEY BROTHERS, Limited,

Established by Special Acts of the Colonial Parliaments, and regulated by the respective Governments,

Offer a pleasant occupation—a healthy life—a cheerful home—a Soil of unequalled fertility—producing by Irrigation results unparalleled in the annals of Horticulture—comfort, civilization, and material prosperity combined.

GOLD MEDAL, PARIS EXHIBITION, 1889. DIPLOMA OF HONOUR, EDINBURGH, 1890, ETC.

HALF-A-MILLION ACRES in the sunny and salubrious climate of Victoria and South Australia, on the great River Murray, which affords an abundant supply of fertilizing water for the irrigation of **Vineyards and Fruit Farms**, and for the production, in assured quantity and excellence, of **Grapes, Oranges, Lemons, Olives, Apricots, Figs**, and other **Fruits** (already so successfully grown in Australia) by Cultivators with large or small capital (easy terms of purchase being afforded to the latter), holding from **Ten to Eighty Acres** and upwards. The Wines and Fruits of Australia are now in extensive demand in **British and Colonial Markets**, and there is a practically unlimited field for such production, under most profitable conditions to Settlers.

From the speech of His Excellency the GOVERNOR OF VICTORIA (Lord Hopetoun) in Laying the Foundation-stone of the Chaffey College of Agriculture, at Mildura, in April, 1891:—'I have long looked forward to the opportunity of seeing the Settlement, which has so recently sprung into existence, and which seems to be growing in importance day by day. I congratulate you upon the satisfactory report of the local health officer, and on the fertility of your soil, so suitable alike for the growing of the orange, the vine, and other fruit trees. I have been very much pleased with Mildura, and I think the success of the enterprise will be a grand thing, not only for Victoria, but for the whole of Australia.'

Sir HERBERT MAXWELL, Bart., M.P., writes:—'From time to time the door opens and the way is pointed to exceptionally promising fields of enterprise. Such seems to be the case at the present time in the Irrigation Colonies on the River Murray.'

The BISHOP OF MANCHESTER (Dr. Moorhouse), late Bishop of Melbourne, speaking at Salford, England, in 1888, remarked:—'The Murray, by means of irrigation, would maintain an immense population, and lead to the accumulation of untold wealth.'

The Rev. W. J. HEDLEY, Wesleyan Minister, Market Harboro', Proprietor of forty acres at Mildura, where he has placed two of his sons, writes, April 11, 1893:—'I have just received some canned fruit—peaches, &c.—from Mildura, "Mallee Brand." I find they are in flavour unapproached by anything in the English market. They have, as no others have, the flavour of the fresh fruit, and are, besides, a fine sample.'

Mr. RICHARD TANGYE, of Birmingham, and others, write to the same effect, with reference to the sun-dried apricots and other fruits received from the Irrigation Settlements, which are declared to be of 'excellent quality' and likely to be in very extensive demand in the future.

The BISHOP OF BALLARAT (Dr. Thornton), visiting the Mildura Settlement in 1891, wrote:—'In this wonderful place . . . I think an early prosperity, large in scale and most satisfactory in kind, awaits the enterprising population.'

'AN EXTRAORDINARY ACHIEVEMENT IN AUSTRALIAN COLONIZATION.'

'It is a noteworthy, if not unprecedented, fact in the history of British colonization, having regard to the remarkable extent and productive value of the work which has been so rapidly accomplished, that since the commencement of the Irrigation Colonies on the river Murray, by the well-known Company of Chaffey Brothers, Limited, about five years ago, no fewer than five thousand persons, consisting of all ranks and conditions, including noblemen, sons of gentlemen, retired naval and military officers, professional men, &c., chiefly from Great Britain, have become settled at the Irrigation Colony of Mildura in Victoria, or have acquired property there.'—*Financier*, June, 1893.

* * Samples of this Season's Products may be seen at the Imperial Institute and the Crystal Palace, Sydenham; also at the Kiosk of the Australian Irrigation Colonies, Earl's Court Gardening and Forestry Exhibition. *Pamphlets, &c., Free.*

LONDON OFFICE: CORNWALL BUILDINGS, 35, QUEEN VICTORIA STREET, E.C.

Chief Commissioner: Mr. J. E. MATTHEW VINCENT, F.R.G.S.

ADVERTISEMENTS.

MR. MURRAY'S FOREIGN HANDBOOKS.

'The general quality of Murray, the scientific character of the information, the accuracy and interest of the historical particulars, to say nothing of the lowness of the price, place his guides far ahead of any competitors.'—*Saturday Review*.

- INDIA & CEYLON** Including BENGAL, BOMBAY, AND MADRAS, THE PANJAB, NORTH-WEST PROVINCES, RAJPUTANA, THE CENTRAL PROVINCES, MYSORE, &c., THE NATIVE STATES AND ASSAM. With 55 Maps and Plans of Towns and Buildings. 75s.
- 'A perfect mine of information.'—*Saturday Review*.
'Far and away the best book of its kind.'—*Scotsman*.
- JAPAN** By BASIL HALL CHAMBERLAIN and W. B. MASON With Maps and Plan. 75s. net.
- 'Few people know Japan as well as Mr. Chamberlain, and it would be impossible to get a better guide.'—*Times*.
- CONSTANTINOPLE** BRUSA AND THE TROAD. Edited by General Sir CHAS. WILSON, R.E., G.C.B. With Maps and Plans. 75. 6d.
- 'Sir Charles Wilson, the editor, has availed himself of the best local talent, and brought the new volume thoroughly up to date.'—*Oxford Magazine*.
- NORTH ITALY & VENICE** .. TURIN, MILAN, THE ITALIAN LAKES, VERONA, PADUA, VENICE, BOLOGNA, RAVENNA, PARMA, MODENA, GENOA, &c. Edited by H. W. PULLEN, M.A., Author of 'Dame Europa's School.' With 34 Maps and Plans. 10s.
- CENTRAL ITALY & FLORENCE** .. TUSCANY, UMBRIA, THE MARCHES, &c. In 2 Parts. Edited by H. W. PULLEN, M.A., Author of 'Dame Europa's School.' With 24 Maps and Plans. 6s.
- ROME & ENVIRONS** Maps and Plans. Post 8vo, 10s.
- SOUTH ITALY & SICILY** .. NAPLES, POMPEII, HERCULANEUM, VESUVIUS, CAPRI, AMALFI, BRINDISI, MESSINA, &c., &c. In 2 Parts. With Maps and Plans. 12s.
- SPAIN** MADRID, THE CASTILES, THE BASQUE PROVINCES, LEON, THE ASTURIAS, GALICIA, ESTREMADURA, ANDALUSIA, RONDA, GRANADA, MURCIA, VALENCIA, CATALONIA, ARAGON, NAVARRE, THE BALEARIC ISLANDS, &c., &c. In 2 Parts, with 43 Maps and Plans. 20s.
- PORTUGAL** LISBON, OPORTO, CINTRA, MAFRA, with an Account of Madeira, the Azores, and Canary Islands. 12s.
- SWITZERLAND & THE ITALIAN LAKES.** In 2 Parts. Edited by W. A. B. COOLIDGE, M.A. Containing 9 new Maps, expressly engraved, on a large scale (1-100,000), and based on the surveys of General DUFOUR and Colonel SIEGFKIED. 10s.
- NORTH GERMANY & THE RHINE** THE BLACK FOREST, THE HARTZ, THÜRINGERWALD, SAXON SWITZERLAND, TAUNUS, &c. With 42 Maps and Plans. 10s.
- SOUTH GERMANY & THE TYROL** WÜRTEMBERG, BAVARIA, AUSTRIA, SALZBURG, STYRIA, HUNGARY, AND THE DANUBE. In 2 Parts. With 34 Maps and Plans. 12s.
- 'Without doubt the best guides published are those issued by Mr. John Murray.'—*Newsagent*.
- FRANCE, PART I.** NORMANDY, BRITANNY, TOURAINE. BORDEAUX, LIMOUSIN, THE PYRENEES, &c. With 36 Maps and Plans. 75. 6d.
- FRANCE, PART II.** CENTRAL FRANCE, AUVERGNE, THE CEVENNES, BURGUNDY, PROVENCE, THE FRENCH ALPS, ALSACE, LORRAINE, CHAMPAGNE, &c. With 23 Maps and Plans. 75. 6d.
- BELGIUM & HOLLAND** With 18 Maps and Plans. 6s.

JOHN MURRAY, ALBEMARLE STREET, LONDON.

DARWIN'S VOYAGE ILLUSTRATED.

A Naturalist's Voyage Round the World.

By **CHARLES DARWIN, F.R.S.**

With Maps and upwards of 100 Illustrations of the places visited and described, Chiefly from sketches taken on the spot by **ROBERT TAYLOR PRITCHETT.**
Medium 8vo. 21s.

* * * The object of this edition is to aid the author's description by actual representations of the most interesting places and objects of Natural History referred to in them. This has been effected by securing the service of an artist who has visited the countries which Darwin describes.

Records of a Naturalist on the Amazons

DURING ELEVEN YEARS OF ADVENTURE AND TRAVEL.

By **HENRY WALTER BATES,**

Late Assistant Secretary to the Royal Geographical Society.

A New Edition of the Unabridged Work. With a Memoir of the Author by
EDWARD CLODD.

With Portrait, Coloured Plates, Illustrations, and Map. Medium 8vo. 18s.

Among Cannibals :

FOUR YEARS' TRAVELS IN AUSTRALIA, AND CAMP LIFE
WITH THE AEORIGINES OF QUEENSLAND.

By **CARL LUMHOLTZ, M.A.,**

Member of the Royal Society of Science of Norway.

With Maps, Coloured Plates, and 120 Illustrations. Medium 8vo. 24s.

'I have read the book with immense interest and delight. It is a work which will have a very long life, for it is full of useful knowledge. The reader forgets that he is reading a mere description, and thinks that he is at the author's side, in the wilderness of Australia. The whole civilized world must be grateful for this really wonderful work.'—
Dr. Schliemann.

Voyage of the 'Marchesa'

TO KAMCHATKA AND NEW GUINEA.

With Notices of Formosa, Liu-Kiu, and the Islands of the Malay Archipelago.

By **F. H. H. GUILLEMBARD, F.L.S.**

Second and Cheaper Edition. Maps and Illustrations. Medium 8vo. 21s.

JOHN MURRAY, ALBEMARLE STREET, LONDON.

My Canadian Journal, 1872-1878.

EXTRACTS FROM HOME LETTERS
WRITTEN WHILE LORD DUFFERIN WAS GOVERNOR-GENERAL.

By the **MARCHIONESS OF DUFFERIN AND AVA.**

With Portraits, Map, and Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 12s.

Our Viceregal Life in India.

BEING A SELECTION FROM MY JOURNAL DURING THE
YEARS 1884-8.

By the **MARCHIONESS OF DUFFERIN AND AVA.**

With Portrait and Map. Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

'Lady Dufferin's Journal should be read, if only for the account it gives of the truly noble work with which her name will always be connected. She was keenly interested in everything that concerns the women of the country, and never missed an opportunity of showing her warm sympathy with those who are working for their welfare.'—*Academy*.

Notes by a Naturalist on H.M.S. 'Challenger.'

A Record of Observations made during the Voyage of H.M.S. 'Challenger' round the World in the years 1872-76, under the command of Captain Sir G. S. Nares, R.N., K.C.B., F.R.S., and Captain F. T. Thomson, R.N.

By **H. N. MOSLEY, M.A., F.R.S.,**

Late Fellow of Exeter College, Oxford.

A New and Cheaper Edition, with a Memoir of the Author. With Portrait, Map, and numerous Woodcuts. Crown 8vo. 9s.

'Crammed with good things for the student of manners and customs.'—*Illustrated London News*.

'A famous book which occupies a high place among records of exploring naturalists.'—*Scottish Geographical Magazine*.

JOHN MURRAY, ALBEMARLE STREET, LONDON.

NEW ZEALAND, TASMANIA, AUSTRALIA.

THE NEW ZEALAND SHIPPING COMPANY'S ROYAL MAIL STEAMERS leave London (Royal Albert Docks) every fourth Thursday, Plymouth two days later, calling at Tenerife, Cape Town and Hobart.

Accommodation amidships. Music and smoking rooms, electric light, and every comfort for a long voyage. Low fares, single and return. Intending settlers going out under arrangement with the Agent-General for New Zealand, special advantages. Government emigrants not carried.

Exceptional terms for Round the World Tours.

Apply to Gray, Dawes & Co., 4, Pall Mall East, S.W.; or to J. B. Westray & Co., 138, Leadenhall Street, E.C.

STEAMERS.

Ruahine, 6,127; Kaikoura, 4,474; Rimutaka, 4,473; Aorangi, 4,163; Tongariro, 4,163; Ruapehu, 4,163; Tekoa, 4,050; Otarama, 3,808; Waikato, 4,766.

ORIENT LINE

FORTNIGHTLY MAIL SERVICE
BETWEEN
ENGLAND AND AUSTRALIA.

STEAM-SHIPS.

'AUSTRAL,'
5524 Reg., 7000 horse-power.

'CUZCO,'
3898 Reg., 4000 horse power.

'ORIENT,'
5365 Reg., 6000 horse-power.

'ORIZABA,'
6077 Reg., 7000 horse-power.

'ORMUZ,'
6031 Reg., 8500 horse-power.

'OROYA,'
6057 Reg., 7000 horse-power.

'OROTAVA,'
5552 Reg., 7000 horse-power.

'ORUBA,'
5552 Reg., 7000 horse-power.

'OPHIR' (TWIN SCREW), 6910 Reg., 10,000 horse-power.

Calling, to Land and Embark Passengers, at

**GIBRALTAR, NAPLES, PORT SAID, ISMAILIA, SUEZ, COLOMBO
ALBANY, ADELAIDE, MELBOURNE & SYDNEY,**

AND BOOKING PASSENGERS ON

**Through Tickets for all Ports in Australia, Tasmania,
and New Zealand.**

 *Steamers among the Largest and Fastest afloat; First-class Cuisine,
Electric Lighting, Hot and Cold Baths, Good Ventilation,
and every Comfort.*

~~~~~  
**CHEAP SINGLE AND RETURN TICKETS.**  
~~~~~

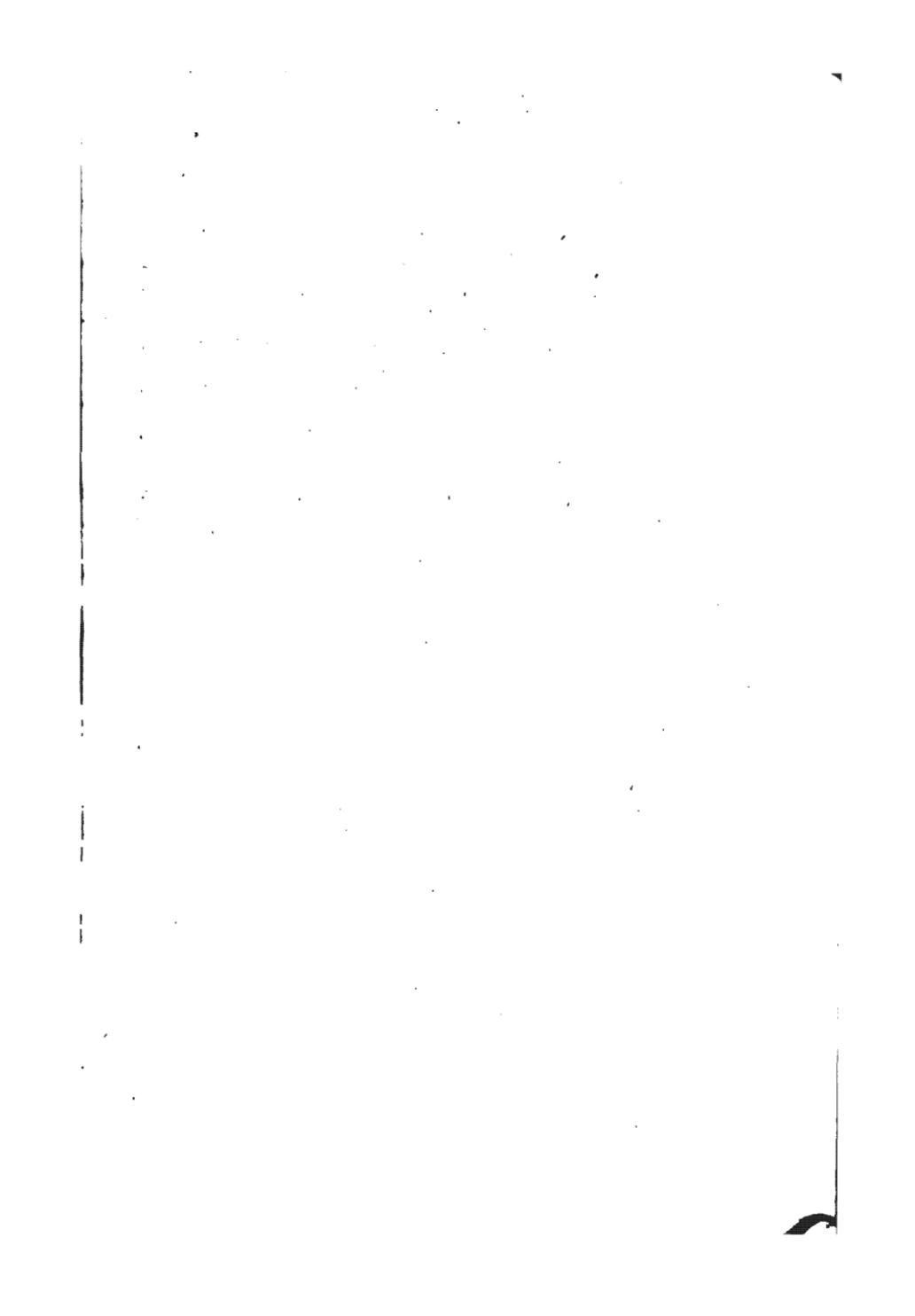
Managers—

F. GREEN & Co., 13, FENCHURCH AVENUE;

ANDERSON, ANDERSON & Co.,

5, FENCHURCH AVENUE, LONDON, E.C.

For Passage apply to the latter Firm at **5, Fenchurch Avenue, E.C.,**
or to the Branch Office, **16, Cockspur Street, S.W.**



MURRAY'S ENGLISH HANDBOOKS.

- HANDBOOK—ENVIRONS OF LONDON**—Including 20 miles round the METROPOLIS. Two Volumes. Post 8vo. 21s.
- HANDBOOK—ENGLAND AND WALES.** Arranged alphabetically. Map. One Volume. Post 8vo. 12s.
- HANDBOOK—EASTERN COUNTIES—CHELMSFORD, HARWICH, COLCHESTER, MALDON, CAMBRIDGE, ELY, NEWMARKET, BURY ST. EDMUNDS, IPSWICH, WOODBRIDGE, FELIXSTOWE, LOWESTOFT, NORWICH, YARMOUTH, CROMER, &c.** Maps and Plans. Post 8vo. 12s.
- HANDBOOK—KENT—CANTERBURY, DOVER, RAMSGATE, ROCHESTER, CHATHAM.** Map and Plans. Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.
- HANDBOOK—SUSSEX—BRIGHTON, CHICHESTER, WORTHING, HASTINGS, LEWES, ARUNDEL.** Map and Plan. Post 8vo. 6s.
- HANDBOOK—SURREY AND HANTS—KINGSTON, CROYDON, REIGATY, GUILDFORD, DORKING, BOXHILL, WINCHESTER, SOUTHAMPTON, NEW FOREST, PORTSMOUTH, AND THE ISLE OF WIGHT.** Maps and Plans. Post 8vo. 10s.
- HANDBOOK—HERTS, BEDS, AND HUNTINGDON.** Map and Plans. Post 8vo.
- HANDBOOK—OXFORDSHIRE—HENLEY, OXFORD, BLENHEIM, AND THE THAMES.** Map and Plans. Post 8vo. 6s.
- HANDBOOK—WILTS, DORSET, AND SOMERSET—SALISBURY, CHIPPENHAM, WEYMOUTH, SHERBORNE, WELLS, BATH, BRISTOL, TAUNTON, &c.** Map and Plans. Post 8vo. 12s.
- HANDBOOK—DEVON—EXETER, ILFRACOMBE, LINTON, SIDMOUTH, DAWLISH, TEIGNMOUTH, PLYMOUTH, DEVONPORT, TORQUAY.** Maps and Plans. Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.
- HANDBOOK—CORNWALL—LAUNCESTON, PENZANCE, FALMOUTH, THE LIZARD, LAND'S END, &c.** Maps and Plans. Post 8vo. 6s.
- HANDBOOK—HEREFORD AND WORCESTER—LEOMINSTER, ROSS, MALVERN, KIDDERMINSTER, DUDLEY, BROMSGROVE, EYESHAM.** Map and Plans. Post 8vo. 6s.
- HANDBOOK—NORTH WALES—LLANGOLLEN, BANGOR, CARNARVON, BEAUMARIS, SNOWDON, LLANBERIS, DOLGELLY, CADER IDRIS, BETTWS-Y-COED, CONWAY, &c.** Map. Post 8vo. 6s.
- HANDBOOK—SOUTH WALES—MONMOUTH, LLANDAFF, MERTHYR, VALE OF NEATH, PEMBROKE, CARMARTHEN, TENBY, SWANSEA, AND THE WYE, &c.** Map. Post 8vo. 6s.
- HANDBOOK—NORTHAMPTONSHIRE AND RUTLAND—NORTHAMPTON, PETERBOROUGH, TOWCESTER, DAVENTRY, MARKET HARBOURGH, KETTERING, WELLINGBOROUGH, THRAPSTON, STAMFORD, UPPINGHAM, OAKHAM, &c.** Maps. Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.
- HANDBOOK—DERBY, NOTTS, LEICESTER, & STAFFORD—MATLOCK, BAKEWELL, CHATSWORTH, THE PEAK, BUXTON, HARDWICK, DOVEDALE, ASH-BORNE, SOUTHWELL, MANSFIELD, RETFORD, BURTON, BELVOIR, MELTON MOWBRAY, WOLVERHAMPTON, LICHFIELD, WALSALL, TAMWORTH.** Maps and Plans. Post 8vo. 9s.
- HANDBOOK—SHROPSHIRE AND CHESHIRE—SHREWSBURY, LUDLOW, BRIDGNORTH, OSWESTRY, CHESTER, CREWE, ALDERLEY, STOCKPORT, BIRKENHEAD.** Map. Post 8vo. 6s.

May, 1894.

[Continued.]

MURRAY'S ENGLISH HANDBOOKS—(continued)

- HANDBOOK—LANCASHIRE—WARRINGTON, BURY, MANCHESTER, LIVERPOOL, BURNLEY, CLITHEROE, BOLTON, BLACKBURN, WIGAN, PRESTON, ROCHDALE, LANCASTER, SOUTHPORT, BLACKPOOL, &c. Map. Post 8vo. 6s.
- HANDBOOK—YORKSHIRE—DONCASTER, HULL, SELBY, BEVERLEY, SCARBOROUGH, WHITBY, HARROGATE, RIPON, LEEDS, WAKEFIELD, BRADFORD, HALIFAX, HUDDERSFIELD, SHEFFIELD, CRAVEN AND THE CAVES, WENSLEYDALE. Maps and Plans. Post 8vo. 12s.
- HANDBOOK—LINCOLNSHIRE—GRANTHAM, LINCOLN, STAMFORD, SLEAFORD, SPALDING, GAINSBOROUGH, GRIMSBY, BOSTON. Maps and Plans. Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.
- HANDBOOK—DURHAM AND NORTHUMBERLAND—NEWCASTLE, DARLINGTON, BISHOP AUCKLAND, STOCKTON, HARTLEPOOL, SUNDERLAND, SHIELDS, BERWICK, TYNEMOUTH, ALNWICK. Maps and Plans. Post 8vo. 10s.
- HANDBOOK—WESTMORELAND AND CUMBERLAND—LANCASTER, RIBblesdale ABBEY, AMBLESIDE, KENDAL, WINDERMERE, CONISTON, KESWICK, GILFINGHEAD, ULSWATER, CARLISLE, COCKERMOUTH, PENRITH, APPLEBY. Maps. Post 8vo. 3s.

SCOTLAND.

- HANDBOOK—SCOTLAND—EDINBURGH, MELROSE, ABBOTSFORD, GLASGOW, DUMFRIES, GALLOWAY, Ayr, STIRLING, ARRAN, THE CLYDE, OBAN, INVERARY, LOCH LOMOND, LOCH KATRINE AND TROSACHS, CALEDONIAN CANAL, INVERNESS, PERTH, DUNDEE, ABERDEEN, BRAEMAR, SKYE, CAITHNESS, ROSS, AND SUTHERLAND. Maps and Plans. Post 8vo.

IRELAND.

- HANDBOOK—IRELAND—DUBLIN, BELFAST, DUNFALGAL, GALWAY, WEXFORD, CORK, LIMERICK, WATERFORD, KILLARNEY, GLENGARIFF, BANTRY. Maps and Plans. Post 8vo. 10s.

[In Preparation.]

- HANDBOOK—WARWICKSHIRE. Map. Post 8vo.

ENGLISH CATHEDRALS.

- HANDBOOK—SOUTHERN CATHEDRALS—WINCHESTER, SALISBURY, EXETER, WELLS, ROCHESTER, CANTERBURY, CHICHESTER, AND ST. ALBANS. With 180 Illustrations. 2 vols. Crown 8vo. 36s.

* * St. ALBANS may be had separately. 6s.

- HANDBOOK—EASTERN CATHEDRALS—OXFORD, PETERBOROUGH, ELY, NORWICH, AND LINCOLN. With 90 Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 21s.
- HANDBOOK—WESTERN CATHEDRALS—BRISTOL, GLOUCESTER, HEREFORD, WORCESTER, AND LICHFIELD. With 50 Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 16s.
- HANDBOOK—NORTHERN CATHEDRALS—YORK, RIPON, DURHAM, CARLISLE, CHESTER, AND MANCHESTER. With 60 Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 2 vols. 21s.
- HANDBOOK—WELSH CATHEDRALS—LLANDAFF, ST. DAVID'S, BANGOR, AND ST. ASAPH'S. With Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 15s.
- HANDBOOK—ST. ... cuts. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

JOHN

E STREET.

May, 1894.

